

THE · 80386 · BOOK



By Ross P. Nelson

Microsoft

P R E S S

®

THE · 80386 · BOOK

80386

By Ross P. Nelson



PUBLISHED BY

Microsoft Press

A Division of Microsoft Corporation

16011 NE 36th Way, Box 97017, Redmond, Washington 98073-9717

Copyright © 1988 by Ross P. Nelson

All rights reserved. No part of the contents of this book may
be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without
the written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Nelson, Ross P., 1957-

The 80386 book: assembly language programmer's guide for the 80386/
Ross P. Nelson.

p. cm.

Includes index.

1. Intel 80386 (Microprocessor)—Programming. 2. Assembler language
(Computer program language) I. Title.

QA76.8.I2928N45 1988 88-21106

005.265—dc19 CIP

ISBN 1-55615-138-1

Printed and bound in the United States of America.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 MLML 3 2 1 0 9 8

Distributed to the book trade in the United States by Harper & Row.

Distributed to the book trade in Canada by General Publishing Company, Ltd.

Distributed to the book trade outside the United States and Canada by Penguin Books Ltd.

Penguin Books Ltd., Harmondsworth, Middlesex, England

Penguin Books Australia Ltd., Ringwood, Victoria, Australia

Penguin Books N.Z. Ltd., 182-190 Wairau Road, Auckland 10, New Zealand

British Cataloging in Publication Data available

IBM® is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation, Incorporated. Intel® is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. Microsoft® and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. All mnemonics copyright Intel Corporation 1986, 1987.

To Robert and Ardell Nelson

Contents

Introduction	<i>xi</i>
1 Evolution of the 80386 Architecture	1
2 The 80386 Architecture	13
3 Memory Architecture: Segmentation	43
4 The 80386 Instruction Set	63
5 The 80386 Protection Mechanism	93
6 Memory Architecture: Paging	125
7 Three in One	135
8 The 80386/80387 Instruction Set Reference	147
Appendix A Powers of Two	381
Appendix B ASCII Character Set	383
Appendix C Opcode Table	385
Appendix D Instruction Format and Timing	397
Appendix E Instruction Disassembly Table	433
Appendix F 8086-Family Processor Differences	441
Index	445

Acknowledgments

A number of people deserve credit for helping make this book a reality. Some I have spoken with and worked with directly; others have worked behind the scenes, doing a wonderful job nonetheless. Working with the people at Microsoft Press was a positive experience, and I sincerely thank them all for their support and encouragement. In addition, my thanks to Ray Duncan for getting the ball rolling, to Intel Corporation for its cooperation, to Matt Trask for his technical review, to my coworkers at Answer Software for their support, and especially to Pam for always believing in me.

This is a book about microprocessor technology, so of course it was written with the assistance of microprocessor technology: I completed a large portion of the manuscript using a Toshiba T1000 portable computer while riding Santa Clara County Transit.

Ross Nelson
June 1988

INTRODUCTION

The Intel 80386 microprocessor is probably the most widely discussed central processing unit (CPU) chip since the introduction of the 8080 in the early days of personal computing. This book lets you know what all the shouting is about.

After presenting a history of the 8086 microprocessor family in Chapter 1, each subsequent chapter discusses a portion of the 80386 design. The organization of the CPU is presented in Chapter 2. The basic memory architecture is discussed in Chapter 3. Chapter 4 introduces the instruction set of both the 80386 processor and the 80387 numeric coprocessor. Chapter 5 is an explanation of protected-mode operation. Chapter 6 explains how paging extends the memory system. Compatibility with previous processors via real mode, virtual 8086 mode, and the 80286 is covered in Chapter 7. Finally, Chapter 8 provides a full instruction set reference.

This book focuses entirely on programming. It does not discuss the hardware features of the processor unless those features relate to specific instructions. If you are interested in the hardware characteristics of the 80386, refer to the *80386 Data Sheet* and the *80386 Hardware Reference Manual*, both published by Intel Corporation.

To get the most from this book, you should be familiar with computer systems. In particular, an understanding of binary and hexadecimal arithmetic and machine-language programming for some other processor(s) will be helpful.

A large portion of the book is devoted to the 80386's protected mode. Although you do not need to understand this feature to program the 80386, it is important to understand protected mode to grasp why system designers have made the choices they have in implementing the OS/2, Windows/386, PC-MOS/386, and UNIX operating environments.

The conventions throughout this book are summarized on the following pages. If you are familiar with other Intel microprocessors, you are probably already familiar with these concepts.

Number Formats

I use numbers in three different bases: binary (base 2), decimal (base 10), and hexadecimal (base 16). You can assume that all numbers are base 10 unless they are followed by the suffix "B" (for binary) or "H" (for hexadecimal). For example,

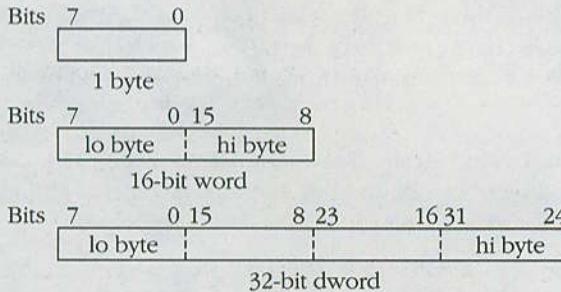
$$1AH = 26 = 00011010B$$

Data Types

The 80386 can operate on a variety of data types. The most common are 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit quantities. In this book, an 8-bit quantity is called a byte, a 16-bit quantity is called a word, and a 32-bit quantity is called a doubleword, or dword. This nomenclature is unusual because the standard data item size of a computer is commonly called a word. In the Digital Equipment VAX computers, for example, a 32-bit quantity is a word, and a 16-bit quantity is a halfword. The same is true for the Motorola 68000 family and the IBM 370 mainframes.

Although the standard 80386 operand size is 32-bits, Intel retained the naming conventions of its earlier processors because the 80386 is a descendant of the 8086 and the 80286 (16-bit processors). This simplifies running software from the 8086 or the 80286 and lets you use the same assembler to generate code for any of the three processors.

The smallest addressable data item on the 80386 is the byte. All other data items can be broken down into bytes. The 80386 stores larger data items in memory low-order byte first, as the following diagram shows:



Assume that the 32-bit value 100F755DH is stored in memory, beginning at location 10. The individual memory bytes are:

Address:	10	11	12	13
Contents:	5DH	75H	0FH	10H

It is unnecessarily complex, however, to show words and doublewords broken down in byte order, and illustrations in this book treat the quantity as a unit. For example, the book would present the previous value as:

31	100F755DH	0
----	-----------	---

The 80386 can perform operations on items smaller than a single byte, for example, on a single bit or on a bit field. However, the processor always fetches at least one byte from memory when performing these operations.

Assembler Notation

An 80386 instruction is a binary pattern that is decoded by the logic inside the CPU. An instruction can be from 8 to 120 bits in length. Because coding a program using binary patterns would be tedious, programmers use a type of program called an assembler. The simplest type of assembler takes a set of keywords and symbols and translates them into an instruction. The set of keywords and symbols is called the assembler language. Typically, there is a one-to-one mapping between an instruction in assembly language and an actual machine instruction. The assembler would take an instruction such as:

ADD EBX, 5

meaning, “Add 5 to the value in register EBX and store the result in EBX,” and would translate it into the bit pattern:

0001011010101010101010101001111111011111B

The names of the instructions are called mnemonics, and they usually occupy the first field in an instruction line. The subsequent fields are the operands of the instruction and can take a number of forms. The simplest is a numeric value, such as the 5 in the previous example. A register name is another form of operand. An expression within brackets, such as [EBP+2], signifies an operand that is a memory reference.

Throughout the book, I use standard Intel mnemonics. Note, however, that a mnemonic does not necessarily specify the exact encoding of an instruction. For example, the “increment” instruction has a general form in which any operand may be encoded, and the instruction INC EAX would be encoded as FFH 00H. There is also a single-byte instruction for incrementing a general register. In this form, 40H encodes the INC EAX instruction. An assembler will generally choose the most compact form of instruction for any given mnemonic, but the effect of executing either form is the same.

I also use a common convention in discussions about setting bits. I use the term “set” when assigning the value of 1 to a bit, and the term “reset” when assigning the value of 0 to a bit.

Syntax

This book uses the following syntax:

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
×	Multiplication
/	Division
~	Not
=	Equal to
!=	Not equal to
|	Or
^	Exclusive OR
&	Boolean AND
>	Greater than
<	Less than
>>	Shift right
<<	Shift left
≤	Less than or equal to
≥	Greater than or equal to
←	Assignment

32-bit Instruction Set

The 80386 supports several modes that are compatible with previous Intel processors (the 16-bit 8086 and 80286). However, this book focuses on the 80386's new features and does not discuss the 16-bit architectures of the 8086 and the 80286, even though they are a subset of the 80386's capabilities. Programmers using the 80386 as a replacement for previous processors should be able to do so with reference materials for the 8086 and the 80286.

Operating System Services

The 80386 implements a complex computer architecture, and it is not reasonable to expect a stand-alone program to take advantage of all the CPU's capabilities. At various times I make statements such as "The operating system will..." or "At this point, the operating system...." In these cases I am not referring to any particular operating system. Instead, I am highlighting a feature of the 80386 that will be implemented by the operating system software and not by an application.

EVOLUTION OF THE 80386 ARCHITECTURE

Even though I have spent the last eight years working with microcomputers, the phrase "computer system" still brings to mind images of the installation in the basement of the campus library at Montana State University. There, in air-conditioned comfort, behind glass walls, lived Siggie, the university computer system (a Xerox Sigma 7). Housed in several refrigerator-size units, Siggie served the computing needs of the entire university.

Now, the 80386 microprocessor, born of a technology that was first realized while Siggie was still considered state-of-the-art, can serve as the heart of a desktop microcomputer, which has greater computing power than Siggie.

The First Components

The 80386 is the latest member of a line of microprocessors built by Intel Corporation. Intel claims to have invented the microprocessor in 1971, when it was approached by a (now defunct) Japanese corporation to build a custom circuit to serve as the "brains" for a new calculator. Intel designer Ted Hoff proposed that a programmable, general-purpose computing circuit be built instead, and the 4004 became reality. The 4040 and the 8008 chips soon followed, but these chips lacked many characteristics of microprocessors as we know them today.

The 8080

The chip that, by most accounts, led to the birth of the microcomputer industry was the 8080, which Intel introduced in 1974. An article in the September 1975 issue of *Popular Electronics* brought the idea of a "personal" computer to the mass market, and, as they say, the rest is history. The 8080 was the CPU (central processing unit)

in such pioneering systems as the Altair and the IMSAI. Intel did not enjoy a monopoly on the market for long, however; Motorola introduced the 6800, MOS Technology responded with the 6502, and two designers of the 8080 left Intel for Zilog Corporation, which soon produced the Z80. Unlike the 6800 and the 6502, which had completely different architectures, the Z80 was compatible with the 8080 but had an expanded instruction set and ran twice as fast. The battle for CPU supremacy was on.

The 8080 was an 8-bit machine; that is, it processed data 8 bits at a time. It had a single accumulator (the A register) and six secondary registers (B, C, D, E, H, and L, shown in Figure 1-1). These six registers could be used in 8-bit arithmetic operations or combined as pairs (BC, HL) to hold 16-bit memory addresses. A 16-bit address allowed the 8080 to access 2^{16} , or 64 KB, of memory.

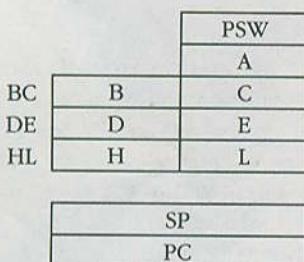


Figure 1-1. The 8080 register set.

Intel also developed a refinement of the 8080 called the 8085, an 8080-compatible processor that featured better performance and a simpler hardware interface.

The 8086

In 1978, under pressure from other manufacturers' faster, more powerful microprocessors, Intel moved to a 16-bit architecture. The 8086 was touted as the successor to the 8080 microprocessor, and, although the instruction set was new, it retained compatibility with the 8080's instruction set. Figure 1-2 shows how the new registers of the 8086 could be mapped into the set of 8080 registers.

Programs that were written for the 8080 could not be run on the 8086; however, almost every 8086 instruction corresponded to an 8080 instruction. At worst, an 8080 instruction could be simulated by two or three 8086 operations. An Intel translator program could convert 8080 assembler programs into 8086 assembler programs, and the first versions of Microsoft's BASIC and MicroPro's WordStar for the 8086 were ported from 8080 systems via the Intel translator. This concern for compatibility has characterized Intel's presence in the microcomputer market. Every new generation of microprocessor has been able to run software written for the previous generation.

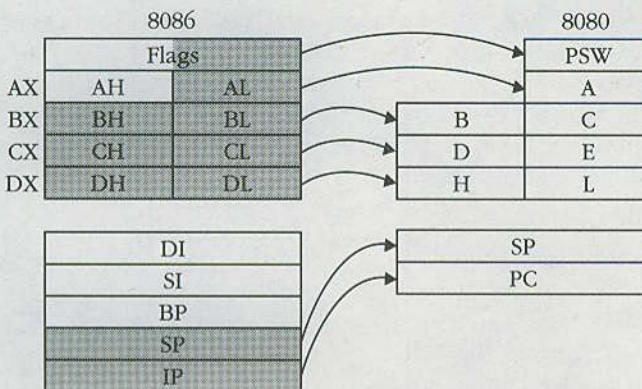


Figure 1-2. The 8080-8086 register set map.

In addition to providing software compatibility, Intel was interested in supporting high-level languages. At Intel, almost all programming was done in an Algol-like language called PL/M. Intel believed that a language such as PL/M or Pascal would become the dominant microcomputer development language, so Intel dedicated many 8086 registers to specific purposes, as shown in Figure 1-3.

Flags		
AX	AH	Accumulator
BX	BH	Base pointer
CX	CH	Count register
DX	DH	Data register
DI		Destination index register
SI		Source index register
BP		Stack frame base pointer
SP		Stack pointer
IP		Instruction pointer
CS		Code segment
DS		Data segment
SS		Stack segment
ES		Extra segment

Figure 1-3. The 8086 register set.

The next two examples show dedicated registers in use. Figure 1-4 shows how high-level languages such as Pascal use the stack pointer (SP) and base pointer (BP) registers.

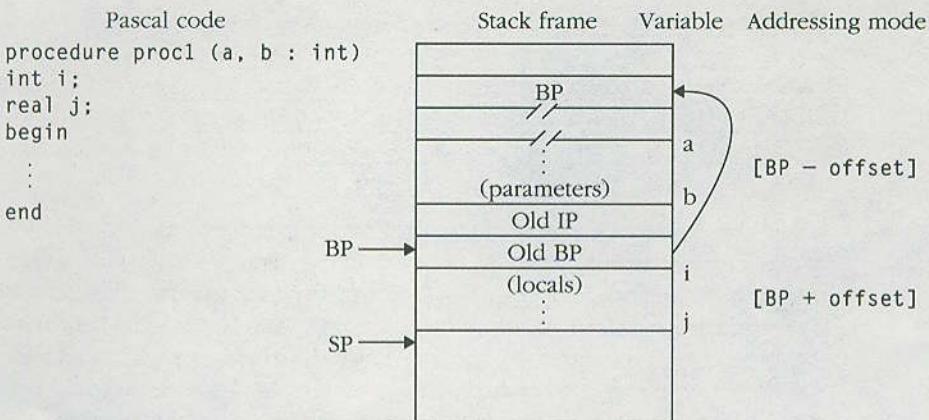


Figure 1-4. Subroutine context.

In a Pascal program, the context of the currently executing subroutine is maintained on the stack. The values (parameters) provided to the subroutine by the calling routine are first on the stack, then the saved IP of the calling routine, and finally the saved BP of the calling routine. The context also contains stack space for any temporary or local variables that the subroutine uses. Access to either the parameters or local variables is relative to the current value of BP.

Consider the Pascal assignment statement in Figure 1-5. Because an entire record must be copied, the compiler generates a block move instruction that uses the SI, DI, and CX registers.

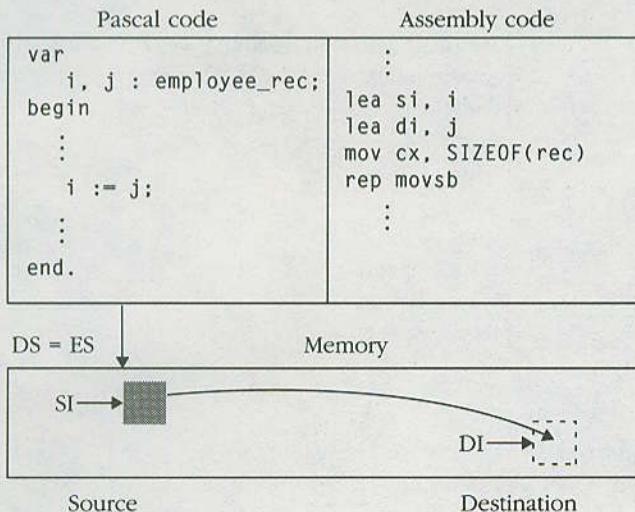


Figure 1-5. Block move.

The advantage of dedicating registers is that it allowed Intel to encode the instructions in a compact, memory-efficient manner. The opcode specifies exactly what is to take place; for example, in the MOVS B instruction, specifying the three operands (source, destination, and count) is unnecessary. As a result, the MOVS B opcode is only 1 byte. The disadvantage of dedicated registers is that if you are using SI or DI and want to do a MOVS B instruction, you can't use another register.

The 8086 also introduced segmentation to the microprocessor world. A segment is a block of memory beginning at a fixed address that is determined by the value in the appropriate segment register. This concept, probably the most despised feature of the 8086 because of the restrictions it imposes, was incorporated for compatibility with the 8080; each segment was 64 KB, equivalent to one 8080 address space. Using segmentation, software can maintain the 16-bit addressing used in the 8080 while expanding (through the use of multiple segments) the memory that the chip can address. The 8086 provides four segment registers that can point anywhere in the 1 MB address space. They are defined as follows:

CS—The code segment register: All calls and jumps refer to locations within the code segment.

DS—The data segment register: Most memory reference instructions refer to an offset within the data segment.

SS—The stack segment register: All PUSH and POP instructions access data in the stack segment. Additionally, any memory reference done relative to the BP register is also directed to the stack segment.

ES—The extra segment register: This segment specifies the destination segment in certain string processing instructions.

The way an application manages memory (the memory model) is usually consistent throughout a program. When Intel introduced the 8086, three memory models were postulated, which are shown in Figure 1-6.

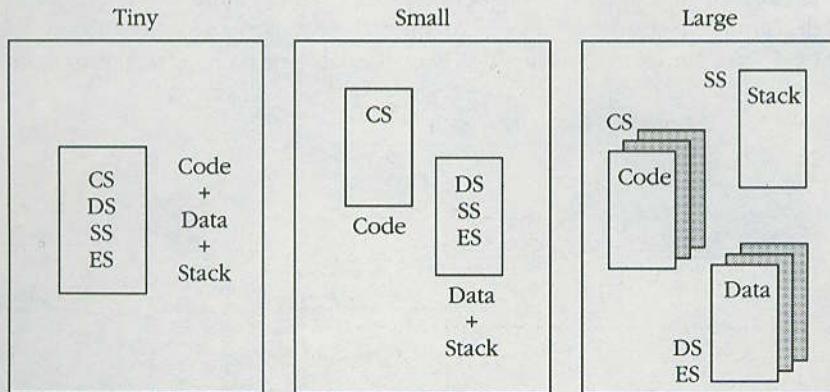


Figure 1-6. Memory models.

The tiny model mimicked the 8080 address space. The code segment and data segment were in the same area of memory, and the program was limited to 64 KB. The small model was expected to be prevalent because it allowed programs to double in size. By having separate code and data segments, programs could expand to 128 KB and still retain 16-bit addressing. The large memory model allowed the use of multiple code and data segments. In this model, the entire 1 MB address space of the processor could be used.

When the 8086 was introduced in 1978, most microcomputers were limited to 64 KB; almost no one realized how quickly the 64 KB segment limit would become a serious problem. Although the large model allowed programs to fill the entire 1 MB of 8086 address space, using the large model meant using 32-bit pointers. On a 16-bit machine, 32-bit pointers exacted a size and performance penalty that most programmers were unwilling to pay. By the early 1980s, even the 1 MB limit became confining. Additional memory models with names such as "compact" and "medium" were introduced to optimize performance for special programming needs.

Other processors in the 8086 family were the 8088, the 80186, and the 80188. The 8088, introduced a year after the 8086, had the same 16-bit internal architecture but a restricted 8-bit external bus. The 8088 could run the same programs as the 8086, but typically 30 percent slower. The 8088 became wildly successful when IBM chose it for the PC and the PC/XT. The 80186 and 80188 were announced much later, in 1982. These processors kept the same base architecture but included features such as direct memory access (DMA) controllers, on-chip counter/timers, and a simplified hardware interface. They also operated more quickly than did the 8086/8088 and became popular in controller applications.

The 8087

An innovative part of the 8086 family of CPUs is the coprocessor. The ESC or coprocessor escape class of instructions only generated a memory address on the 8086. Additional, special-purpose CPUs could be created to monitor the instruction stream and watch for ESC sequences, as shown in Figure 1-7. Whenever an ESC was detected, the coprocessor could decode the escape as an instruction for itself and perform a function that the 8086 was incapable of doing efficiently on its own.

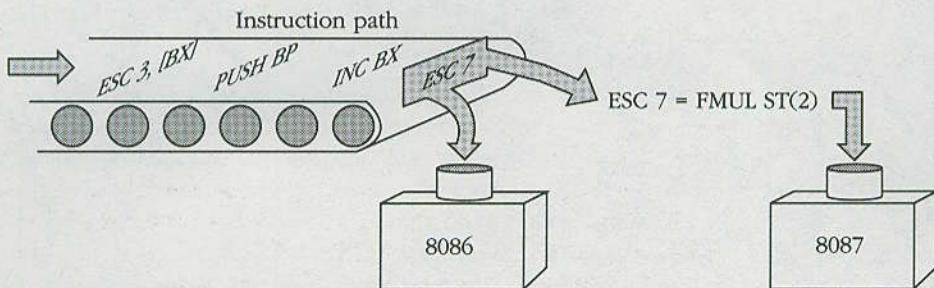


Figure 1-7. 8086 coprocessor interface.

The first (and only) coprocessor developed for the 8086 was the 8087. The 8087 implemented a floating-point instruction set, capable of as much as 80 bits of precision. Intel worked closely with the IEEE and professors at the University of California, Berkeley, to create a floating-point representation that was flexible and accurate. This representation and its numeric properties have since been formalized as IEEE Standard IEEE-754.

The 8087 contributed to the popularity of the 8086. A desktop computer that contained both an 8086 and an 8087 could do serious scientific work. Implementing floating-point functions in hardware improved the performance of mathematical calculations over existing software routines. However, the 8087 pointed out the problems of the 64 KB segment size. Once scientists and engineers had the computing power to handle real-world problems, they often needed to deal with large arrays of numbers. The 64 KB segment limit restricted a vector of double-precision floating-point numbers to no more than 1024 elements. Software capable of getting around the restriction was soon available, but the "large" memory model was difficult to program in and was slow.

The 80286

The next major introduction from Intel, the 80286, came in 1982. The 80286 is compatible with the 8086 family, but it also provides a significant performance improvement. It boasts two operating modes: real mode and protected mode. Real mode, which emulates the 8086, is the default mode. The new mode is called protected mode. In protected mode, the 80286 supports the 8086 instruction set but places a new interpretation on the contents of the segment registers that control how memory is accessed.

Although operating systems that are implemented under protected mode are different from those that are designed for real mode, applications can be developed that run in either mode. The design of these dual-mode applications requires that the application observe certain memory restrictions.

Unfortunately, MS-DOS, which is the dominating operating system for 8086-based machines, places no restrictions on how an application addresses memory, and protected mode proved incompatible with a majority of MS-DOS applications. As a result, for a number of years the 80286 was generally treated as a fast 8086 because no one knew how to use protected mode.

This was unfortunate because the 80286 offered a beneficial new feature—protected mode. Protected mode expands the amount of physically addressable memory from 1 MB to 16 MB, allows the implementation of virtual memory, and provides for the separation of tasks in a multitasking or multiuser environment. Versions of UNIX run in protected mode, but UNIX has not been successful on the 80286 because competitive products usually run on more powerful 32-bit computers. More recently, Microsoft introduced OS/2, which uses almost all protected-mode features.

The 80286 is the first Intel microprocessor designed for “serious” computing. Considerations were made for multitasking, data integrity, and security. The designers examined the architecture of minicomputers and mainframes as they developed the 80286. In addition, two of the main influences on the 80286 designers were the Multics project and a continued belief in Pascal.

Reading the conference papers about the Multics project will enlighten anyone who thinks that protected mode is the product of some Intel designer’s fevered imagination. Multics began in the mid-1960s as a joint research project among MIT, Bell Labs, and General Electric. The project combined hardware and software and was based on the GE 645. The following is a partial list of architectural features that the Multics group pioneered:

- Virtual memory*
- Protection rings
- Segmented addressing*
- Descriptor access rights
- Call gates
- Conforming code segments

Some features of Multics also made their way into existing 80286-based software systems. Microsoft’s OS/2, for example, uses dynamic linking, another Multics innovation.

The influence of Pascal on the design of the 80286 is shown by the addition of the ENTER instruction to the 80286 instruction set. The ENTER instruction simplifies creating a stack frame such as the one shown in the subroutine context illustration in Figure 1-4. ENTER can also copy the context or stack frame of the previous subroutine. This ability is not necessary in languages such as FORTRAN or C, but it is useful in languages such as Pascal and Ada that allow nested procedure declarations.

The 80287

Intel also introduced a new coprocessor for the 80286, but the 80287 was a bit of a disappointment. Although the 80286 executes programs two to three times faster than the 8086, the performance of the 80287 is about the same as the 8087. Intel did not really modify the computational engine of the 8087 in creating the 80287, so the new coprocessor does not run any faster. Intel did change the interface between the CPU and the coprocessor, however, eliminating the need for the coprocessor to monitor the instruction stream of the main CPU.

In this new interface method, illustrated in Figure 1-8, the main CPU decodes the ESC instructions and then passes the information to the coprocessor via the I/O

*The Multics group did not invent these features, but they were an integral part of the system.

channel. Because addressing is treated differently in real mode than it is in protected mode, the coprocessor would have had to operate in different modes as well, using the old interface method. Instead, the new interface requires the 80286 to validate all addresses before signaling the 80287. This interface allows the coprocessor to run at a clock rate different from that of the main CPU, and it also allows the 80287 to be used with CPUs other than the 80286.

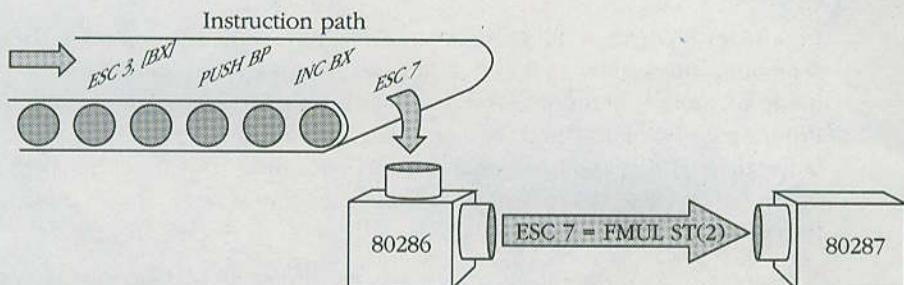


Figure 1-8. 80286 coprocessor interface.

Competitive Pressures

Between the introduction of the 8086 and the 80286, Motorola developed what became the strongest competition to Intel's dominance of the microprocessor market, the 68000 family. Several features of the Motorola microprocessors were attractive to the development community. The 68000 family incorporates a 32-bit internal register file for data and addressing. This allows a large application address space without the limitation of 64 KB segments. This 32-bit capability also makes it easy to port operating systems (such as UNIX) and minicomputer applications to the 68000-family processors.

Motorola also boasted about the "orthogonality" of the 68000 instruction set. Unlike the 8086 and the 80286, with their special-purpose registers, the 68000 allowed programmers to specify any register for a given instruction. Although all 68000 microprocessors had 32-bit register files, the first two CPUs (68000 and 68010) were limited to 24-bit addresses and a 16-bit memory interface. In 1985, however, Motorola began sampling the 68020, which had a full 32-bit address bus and a 32-bit data bus. Although Intel had most of the business microcomputer market, makers of scientific and engineering workstations almost unanimously chose Motorola CPUs for their products.

Intel's 32-Bit Microprocessor

Intel's design engineers faced two problems: compatibility and performance. They needed to maintain compatibility with the previous generation of processors to retain their share of the PC business market; Intel's marketing force frequently referred to the "billions and billions" of bytes of code (applications) that the 80386

had to be able to run. At the same time, they needed a product that would address the shortcomings of the 8086 family architecture, which gave Motorola an edge in scientific and engineering markets. The resulting product, the 80386, addresses these issues by operating in a number of modes. At boot time, it operates in real mode like the 80286 and is nothing more than a very fast 8086. It uses 16-bit registers and the 8086 segmentation scheme, and it is subject to the 1 MB memory limitation.

But the 80386 can also be switched to protected mode. In protected mode, each segment is marked by a bit that designates whether the segment is a protected-mode segment containing 16-bit 80286 code or a 32-bit protected-mode segment. Programs residing in 32-bit segments can use the extended address space (segments larger than 64 KB) and additional features, including array indexing, orthogonal use of the register set, and special debugging capabilities not found in previous processors.

A protected-mode operating system can also create a task that runs in virtual 8086 mode. An application running in this mode believes that it is running in real mode or on an 8086. However, the operating system can designate certain classes of input/output (I/O) operations that it will not allow. If the application attempts to violate any operating system rules, an interrupt is generated that transfers control from the application to the operating system. By examining the instruction that the application was trying to execute, the operating system can choose to block the application from running, simulate the operation, or ignore it and let the application continue. The operating system also maps the 1 MB 8086 address space that the application believes it is running under to the actual memory space that the operating system wants the application to use. A protected-mode operating system can establish multiple virtual 8086 tasks.

The 80386 also extends the similarities between the Intel architecture and the Multics system. Like Multics, the 80386 integrates the ability to perform demand paging (a virtual-memory technique used in minicomputers and mainframes) with segmentation.

The 80387

The most recent microprocessor line from Intel also boasts a new coprocessor, the 80387. The interface between the CPU and the coprocessor is the same one defined for the 80286 and the 80287. The 80386 can be coupled with the 80287 to provide a lower-cost floating-point environment. The 80387 provides a significant performance improvement over its predecessor, executing floating-point benchmarks about five times faster.

80386 Family Extensions

Intel has indicated that the 80386 product line will continue to evolve. The next generation processor will be called the 80486 and will include capabilities beyond those of the 80386. However, Intel has committed to broadening support for the

80386 as well. Intel recently introduced the 80386SX and the 80387SX, which are fully compatible with the 80386/80387 but support only a 16-bit external data bus and a 24-bit external address bus. Intel plans to introduce other processors that use the 80386 native mode instruction set but that do not support compatibility features such as real mode or V86 mode.

Summary

As you can see from the following table, the 80386 technology has significantly advanced beyond that of its predecessors; however, the road to 32-bit computing was not necessarily straight and narrow. The 80386 has been shaped by a number of forces: the ideals of the designers, the limits of compatibility (some stemming from the early days of the 8080), threats from the competition (both real and perceived), and other factors such as Pascal, Multics, and UNIX. Now that I've shown the origins of the 80386, the remainder of the book will show what the 80386 is and what it does.

Relative Performance

	8086/87	80286/287	80386/387
<i>Integer</i>	1.0	2.7	6.7
<i>Floating point</i>	1.0	1.7	10.0

If the 8086/87 performance is 1.0, the 80386/387 is approximately 6.7 times faster performing integer calculations and approximately 10 times faster performing floating-point calculations.

THE 80386 ARCHITECTURE

Back in 1837, when Charles Babbage was musing over the idea of computation automata, he referred to his grandest scheme as an "analytical engine." At that time, especially considering the mechanical aspects of Babbage's idea, an engine was an apt metaphor for a computing device: fuel, combustion, and power *vs* input, computation, and output.

A Data-Processing Factory

In recent years, however, this machinelike cycle led to limitations on the amount of work that could be accomplished. A modern microprocessor such as the 80386 might be more successfully compared with a factory than with an engine. At the heart of this data-processing factory, the computational engine remains, but it is surrounded by a bevy of supporting departments.

Figure 2-1 on the following page illustrates our imaginary widget factory. It is composed of three departments: Shipping and Receiving, Materials, and Manufacturing. The Shipping and Receiving department deals with the world outside the factory. It orders truckloads of raw materials from suppliers and passes them to the Materials department. The goods are sorted here and warehoused until needed. The Manufacturing department, the "engine" of the factory, forges the finished widgets from the raw materials and routes them to Shipping and Receiving, where they are sent to the outside world.

The efficiency of this model lies in the parallel nature of the different activities. At the same time as the Materials department requests the raw goods necessary to build widgets, Manufacturing builds the current supply of widgets, and Shipping and Receiving deals with the outside world, buys unfinished goods, and ships the newly finished widgets.

Conventional computers receive two classes of data: instructions and operands. The instructions tell the computer which operations to perform on the operands.

Similar to the operation of our imaginary factory, the 80386 can work on more than one instruction simultaneously. In the jargon of the computer industry, this is called *pipelining*.

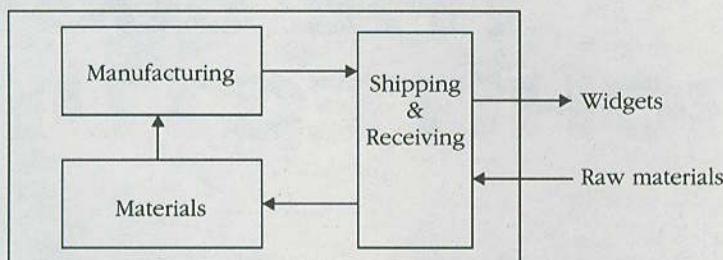


Figure 2-1. Widget factory.

In Figure 2-2, I recast the widget factory as a data-processing factory analogous to the operation of the 80386. The Shipping and Receiving department pulls in bytes of data from memory. Instructions then move to the Materials department, where they are decoded and stored. When requested, the new instructions and any necessary operands pass to the Manufacturing department, the computational engine. The results of an operation pass back to Shipping and Receiving, which stores the results outside the CPU, in memory.

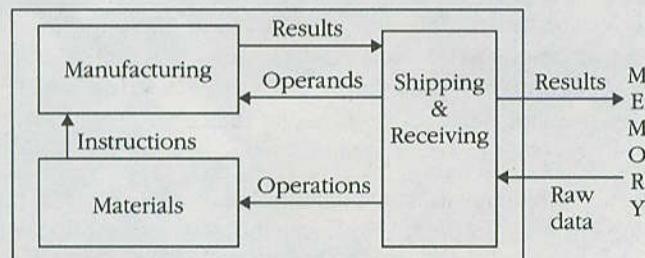


Figure 2-2. Data-processing factory.

Although simple, this picture of the flow of information through the 80386 is fairly accurate. The three departments in the example correspond to six logical units in the 80386, as shown in Figure 2-3. Each unit operates in parallel with the other units. Later sections of this chapter describe the operation of each unit.

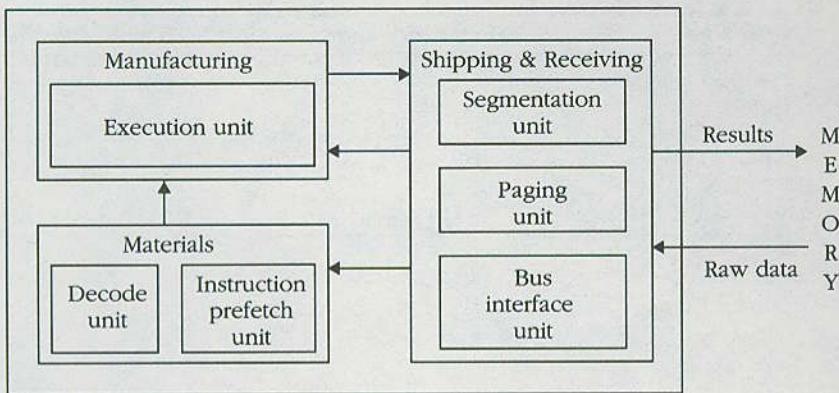


Figure 2-3. 80386 factory.

Keeping the factory moving

The 80386 runs to a heartbeat called the clock signal. This regular electronic pulse keeps all units of the 80386 synchronized. The clock signal is a square wave oscillating at a specific frequency, as shown in Figure 2-4. Instruction timings, memory access times, and operational delays are measured in terms of clocks, or one complete square-wave cycle. A typical frequency for an 80386-based system is 16 MHz. At 16 MHz, one clock is 62.5 nanoseconds.

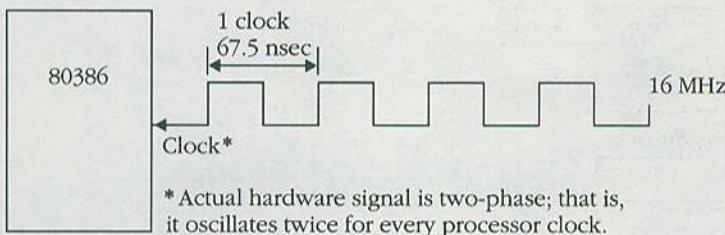


Figure 2-4. A square-wave cycle.

The timings of each processing unit are also measured in clocks. The shortest possible execution time is $\frac{1}{2}$ clock. This is possible because the square-wave input to the 80386 CPU chip oscillates at twice the clock frequency, making a two-phase clock.

Performance advantages of parallelism

The pipelined operation of the 80386 "hides" portions of instruction execution time. Some operations necessary to execute an instruction occur during the previous instruction. The table that follows illustrates the difference between executing a typical instruction (ADD ECX, [EBP+8]) on the 80386 and executing it on a similar, imaginary processor without pipelining.

Operation	With Pipelining	Without Pipelining
Instruction fetch	0 clocks	2-4 clocks
Instruction decode	0 clocks	1 clock
Operand address xlate	0-6 clocks	2-8 clocks
Operand read	3 clocks	3 clocks
Execute	2 clocks	2 clocks
Total:	5-11 clocks	10-18 clocks

Pipelining lets the 80386 execute an instruction about twice as quickly as a similar processor that performs each step of the instruction sequentially. Some instructions that have no operands appear to execute in "zero" time because of the parallel nature of 80386 operating units.

80386 Microarchitecture

Figure 2-5* shows a block diagram of the internal operating units of the 80386. Although the programmer sees the 80386 as a single entity, it is instructive to see how the 80386 achieves the division of labor that contributes to its speed.

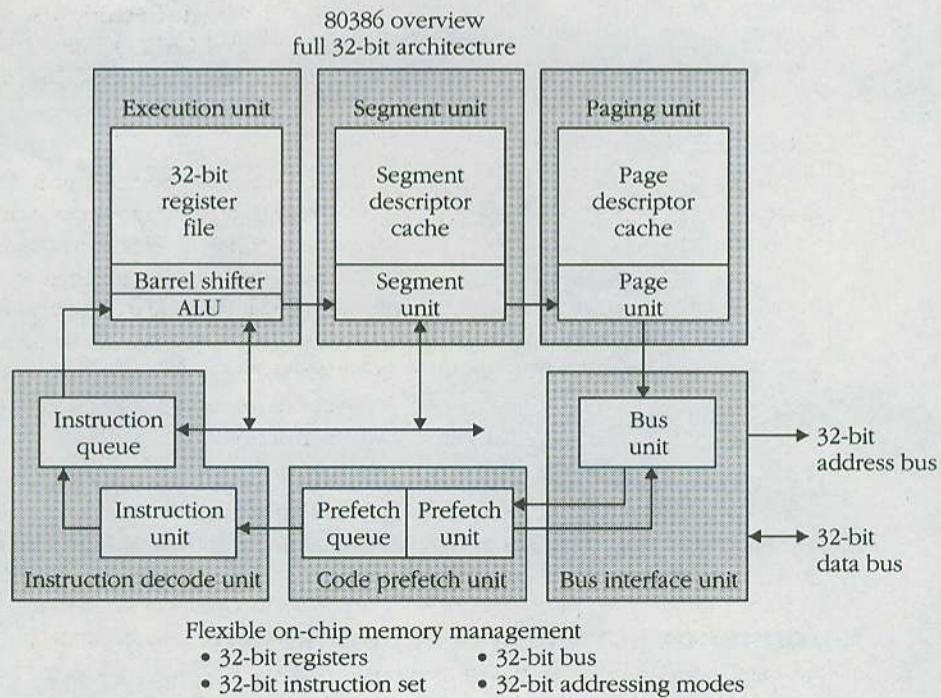


Figure 2-5. 80386 microarchitecture.

* Reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1986.

Bus interface unit

The bus interface unit (BIU) is the 80386's gateway to the external world. Any other unit that needs data from the outside asks the BIU to perform the operation. Similarly, when an instruction needs to write data to memory or to the I/O channel, the BIU is presented with the data and address and is asked to place it on the bus. The bus interface unit deals with physical (hardware) addresses only, so operand addresses must first pass through the segmentation unit and the paging unit, if necessary.

Instruction prefetch unit

The job of the prefetch unit is relatively simple. The instruction decode unit empties a 16-byte queue, and the prefetch unit tries to keep the queue full. The prefetch unit continually asks the BIU to fetch the contents of memory at the next instruction address. As soon as the prefetch unit receives the data, it places it in the queue and, if the queue is not full, requests another 32-bit piece of memory. The BIU treats requests from the prefetch unit as slightly less important than requests from other units. In this way, currently executing instructions requesting operands receive the highest priority and are not slowed down, but prefetches still occur as frequently as possible. The prefetch unit is notified whenever the execution unit processes a CALL, a JMP, or an interrupt so that it can begin fetching instructions from the new address. The queue is flushed whenever a CALL, a JMP, or an interrupt occurs, which prevents the execution unit from receiving invalid instructions.

Instruction decode unit

The instruction decode unit has a job similar to that of the prefetch unit. It takes individual bytes from the prefetch queue and determines the number of bytes needed to complete the next instruction. A single instruction in the 80386 can be anywhere from 1 to 16 bytes. After pulling the entire instruction from the prefetch queue, the instruction decode unit reformats the opcode into an internal instruction format and places the decoded instruction into the instruction queue, which is three operations deep. The instruction decode unit also signals the BIU if the instruction just decoded will cause a memory reference. This allows the operands of the instructions to be obtained prior to the execution of the instructions.

Execution unit

The execution unit is the part of the CPU that does computations. It performs any shifts, additions, multiplications, and so on that are necessary to accomplish an instruction. The register set is contained inside the execution unit. The unit also contains a logic component called a barrel shifter, which can perform multiple-bit shifts in a single clock cycle. The execution unit uses this capability not only in shift instructions but in accelerating multiplications and in generating indexed addresses. The execution unit also tells the bus interface unit when it has data that needs to be sent to the memory or I/O bus.

Segmentation unit

The segmentation unit translates segmented addresses into linear addresses. Segment translation time is almost entirely hidden by the parallelism of the 80386. At the most, one clock is required to complete the address translation. The typical case is zero clocks. The segmentation unit contains a cache that holds descriptor table information for each of the six segment registers. This unit is described further in Chapter 3.

Paging unit

The paging unit takes the linear addresses generated by the segmentation unit and converts them to physical addresses. If paging is disabled, the linear addresses of the segmentation unit become the physical addresses. When paging is enabled, the linear address space of the 80386 is divided into 4096-byte blocks called pages. Each page can be mapped into an entirely different physical address. Chapter 6 discusses the paging process in detail.

The 80386 microprocessor uses a page table to translate every linear address to a physical address. The paging unit contains an associative cache called the translation lookaside buffer (TLB), which contains the entries (new addresses) for the 32 most recently used pages. If a page table entry is not found in the TLB, a 32-bit memory read cycle fetches the entry from RAM. Under typical operating conditions, less than 2 percent of all memory references require the 80386 to look outside the TLB for a page table entry.

The time required to perform the translation varies between 0 and 5 clocks. Thanks to the TLB, the typical delay is only $\frac{1}{2}$ clock.

Instruction Set Architecture

The execution unit presents the programmer with the model for instruction execution. It contains the logic to process instructions, to operate on various data types, and to interpret control information.

Because the 80386 is a 32-bit machine, the typical size of an 80386 operand is a 32-bit quantity. Also, because the 80386 processes data 32 bits at a time, it is said to have a *word size* of 32 bits. Unfortunately, the term "word" is ambiguous when referring to the 80386.

For compatibility, *word* refers to a 16-bit quantity, as it did in the 8086 and 80286 environments. The term *dword*, or *32-bit word*, refers to a 32-bit quantity.

Bits and bit strings

Although the basic (default) operand size on the 80386 is 32 bits, it can manipulate quantities of various sizes. The most elementary is the bit. A bit is a single binary digit, and the 80386 implements a number of instructions that test and modify individual bits. Bits are addressed as an offset from a register or memory location. The

low-order bit of the operand is designated as bit 0, the high-order bit in the low-order byte is bit 7, and the low-order bit of the next byte is bit 8. Figure 2-6 shows the bits in a register and in memory. If the operand resides in memory, negative bit offsets can also be used. Bit -1 is the high-order bit of the byte immediately preceding the memory address.

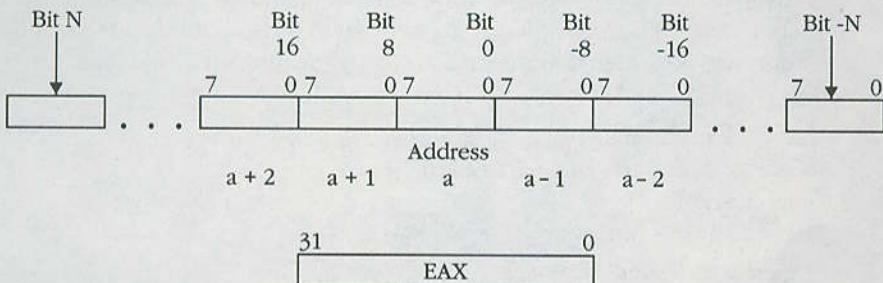


Figure 2-6. Bit strings.

Bytes

The byte is the basic unit of addressability on the 80386; that is, address 3 refers to the third byte in memory, not the third dword. A byte is an 8-bit quantity that can be interpreted as either a signed or an unsigned value. Figure 2-7 shows the layout of a byte and the range of values that it can specify.

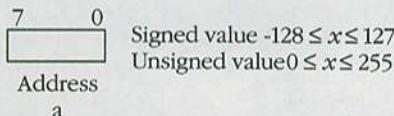


Figure 2-7. Byte value range.

When a byte is interpreted as an unsigned number, it can take on a value ranging from 0 through 255. If a byte is interpreted as a signed number, it is assumed to be in *two's complement* notation. This notation allows a single byte to store values ranging from -128 through $+127$. To determine the value of a two's complement number, follow these steps:

1. Examine the most significant bit (MSB) of the value. If the MSB is 0, the number is positive and can be read as if it were an unsigned value. If the MSB is 1, the value is negative.
2. You can find the absolute value of the number by taking the *complement* of the number (inverting the value of each bit) and adding 1.

For example, consider the binary value 10111100B. The most significant bit, 1, indicates that the number is negative. To find the absolute value, take the complement

(01000011B) and add 1. The result, 01000100B, is 68 decimal, so 10111100B represents the value -68.

Words

Words, as previously defined, are 16-bit quantities. Figure 2-8 shows the range of values that can be stored in a word. When a word is written to memory, it is stored in two bytes. The low-order byte is written to the specified address, and the high-order byte is written to the next consecutive memory location.

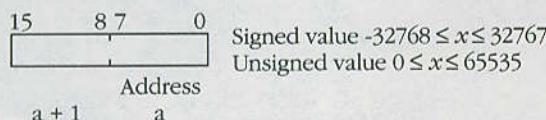


Figure 2-8. Word value range.

Word values are interpreted as signed or unsigned in the same way as are byte values. The only differences are that bit 15 is the MSB and that there is a greater range of possible values.

Dwords

Dwords are 32-bit quantities. Like bytes and words, they can be signed or unsigned. The extra bits allow representation of integral values greater than 2 billion. Figure 2-9 illustrates the range of values for dwords and the way they are stored in memory. Like words, dwords are stored in memory low-order byte first. If the low-order byte is stored at address m , the high-order byte is stored at address $m + 3$.

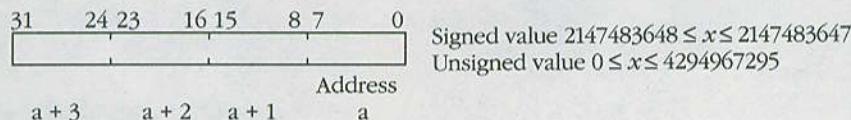


Figure 2-9. Dword value range.

The computer industry does not agree on the proper method of breaking up large values into bytes for memory storage. Computers like the DEC VAX use the same technique as the 80386. Others, such as the IBM 370 or the Motorola 68020, store the high-order byte first. This can be a consideration when porting programs from one computer to another.

Quadwords

Quadwords are 64-bit numeric quantities. No instructions reference quadword memory operands. However, the 32-bit Multiply instruction generates a 64-bit value, with the high-order bits in register EDX and the low-order bits in register EAX. Conversely, the Divide instruction accepts a 64-bit dividend stored in the same register format. Storing a quadword in memory requires two MOV instructions.

ASCII and BCD

In the previous examples, the values discussed represent numbers. For ASCII and BCD, the binary patterns represent encodings of information. ASCII stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange. ASCII values are 7 bits of information stored in a single byte. The most significant bit is 0. A particular bit pattern represents a predefined value. For example, the binary pattern 0101011B represents the plus character (+). 1010011B represents the letter S, and 0110101 represents the digit 5. Appendix B contains a table of all ASCII characters.

Similarly, BCD, which stands for binary coded decimal, encodes representations of decimal numbers in a binary format. Encoding a decimal digit requires 4 bits. Because using only 4 bits of a byte is inefficient, 2 BCD digits are often stored in a single byte. This representation is called *packed BCD*. Figure 2-10 shows how values are stored in BCD notation.

BCD	Decimal	1	7	9	3	2	BCD
0000	0	0001	0111	1001	0011	0010	
0001	1						Address
0010	2	a + 4	a + 3	a + 2	a + 1	a	
0011	3						
0100	4						
0101	5		1	7	9	3	
0110	6	0000	0001	0111	1001	0011	Packed
0111	7						BCD
1000	8						Address
1001	9		a + 2		a + 1		
1010						a	
⋮							
1111							

} Invalid

Figure 2-10. BCD storage.

Because ASCII and BCD provide ways to encode numeric values and do not have a fixed length, they can be used to implement variable-precision numbers. The 80386 supports ASCII and BCD arithmetic via the Decimal Adjust and ASCII Adjust instructions. Chapter 4 discusses ASCII and BCD arithmetic.

The 80386 Register Set

In addition to implementing the logic to execute instructions, the 80386 has a number of storage locations on the chip, called *registers*. Because they are inside the CPU, registers can be accessed as operands much more rapidly than can external memory. The general registers are used by the 80386 to store frequently accessed operands. Other registers contain special values that control specific aspects of 80386 operation.

The 80386 register set is partitioned into five classes: the *general registers*, which applications use for data storage and computation; *segment registers*, which affect memory addressing; *protection registers*, which help support the operating system; *control registers*, which modify the behavior of the processor; and *debug and test registers*, which are used as their name implies.

General registers

The general registers are named EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, ESI, EDI, EBP, and ESP, as shown in Figure 2-11. As a rule, any instruction can use any general register except ESP, either as an operand or as a pointer to an operand in memory. Exceptions are noted in Chapter 4 in the discussion of the instruction set.

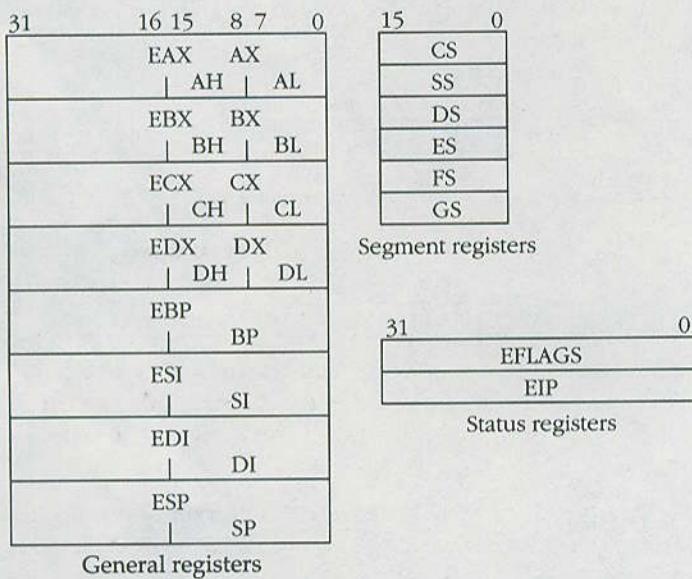


Figure 2-11. 80386 base register set.

In the 80386, you can address selected portions of these registers. The part of the register accessed depends on whether you are performing an 8-bit, 16-bit, or 32-bit operation. Each division of a register has a separate name. For example, EAX is the name of one of the 32-bit registers. The lower 16 bits are addressable as AX, and that half of the register is accessible as AL (the low-order 8 bits) or AH (the high-order 8 bits). These names are left over from previous generation microprocessors, the 8080 and 8086, as discussed in Chapter 1. The 80386 extends the 80286 register set to 32 bits, similar to the way that the 8086 and 80286 extended the 8-bit registers of the 8080 to 16 bits. Figure 2-12 shows a map of the register extensions.

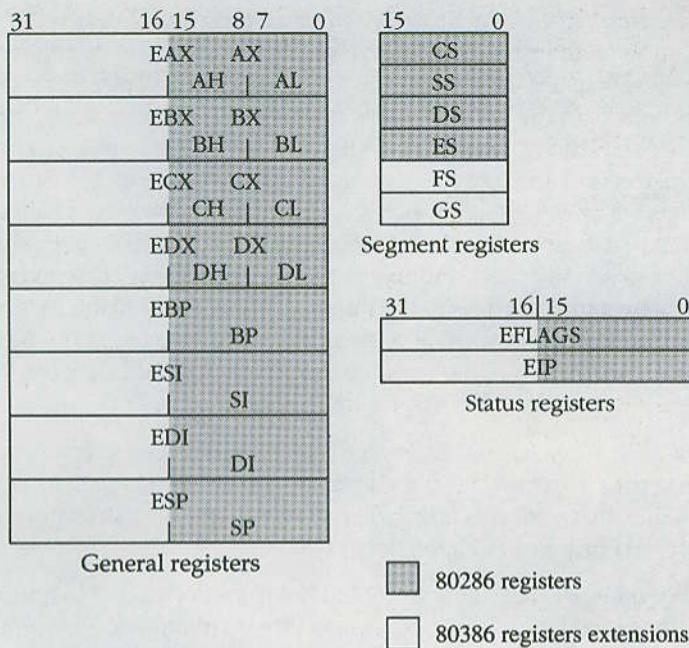


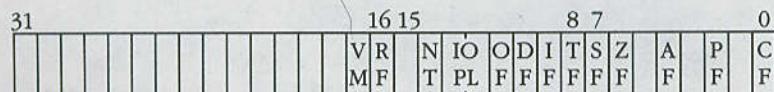
Figure 2-12. 386/286 registers.

Two additional registers hold status information about the current instruction stream. The EIP register contains the address of the currently executing instruction, and the EFLAGS register contains a number of fields relevant to different instructions.

Like the other registers, EIP and EFLAGS have 16-bit components, IP and FLAGS. The 16-bit forms of these registers are used in virtual 8086 mode and in running code written for the 80286.

EFLAGS register

A breakdown of the EFLAGS register looks like this:



VM—Virtual 8086 mode: When this bit is set, it indicates that the currently executing instruction stream is 8086 code. The implications of virtual 8086 mode are covered in Chapter 7. Applications cannot change the VM (virtual machine) bit, and instructions that modify EFLAGS leave the VM bit unchanged. Only the task-switch operation or an interrupt/interrupt return can alter the VM bit.

RF—Resume flag: This bit controls whether a debug fault can be generated during the execution of an instruction. When an exception occurs during program execution, the 80386 pushes the current CS, EIP, and EFLAGS registers onto the stack and transfers control to the proper exception handler. The stack image of the EFLAGS register has the RF bit set to 1. When the exception handler returns to the interrupted instruction, the RF bit is on, and the 80386 prevents a debug fault from being generated. Any other faults (such as page faults or protection faults) occur as usual. The debug exception has the highest priority of all 80386 exceptions; if, therefore, an instruction causes multiple faults, the first one processed is the debug exception. When control returns to the interrupted instruction, the RF bit is set, and the instruction is completed without retriggering the debug fault. The 80386 clears the RF bit upon completion of the interrupted instruction. (See Chapter 5 for a discussion of exceptions and support for debugging.)

NT—Nested task flag: The 80386 sets this bit whenever a CALL, interrupt, trap, or exception causes a task switch. The bit is set in the EFLAGS register of the new task and indicates that a reverse task switch (IRET) is valid. Task switching in the 80386 is discussed further in Chapter 5.

IOPL—I/O privilege level: This 2-bit field holds a value of 0–3 that indicates the privilege level required to perform I/O instructions. Although IOPL is in the EFLAGS register, no procedure can modify it unless the procedure is running at privilege level 0, and then only by using the POPF instruction.

A procedure's current privilege level (CPL) must be equal to or more privileged than the IOPL to execute any of the following instructions: IN, INS, OUT, OUTS, CLI, or STI. A procedure that can execute these instructions is said to have *I/O privilege*.

OF—Overflow flag: When an arithmetic integer instruction is executed, the OF bit is set if the result is too large or too small to fit in the destination register or memory address. Because the OF flag is set relative to integer instructions, the 80386 presumes that the destination register is one bit smaller in size to allow for the sign bit. The following instructions illustrate some examples.

MOV AL, 127	; AL = 7FH, largest 8-bit
	; signed integer OF = 0
ADD AL, 2	; result, AL = 81H (-127)
	; should be AX = 0081 (129), OF = 1
MOV CX, -35000	; CX = 7748H, OF = 0
SUB CX, 7002	; result, CX = SBEEH (42002)
	; should be ECX = FFFF5BEEH (-42002),
	; OF = 1

Note that the OF bit is ignored if unsigned arithmetic is intended. For example, adding 127 and 2 in register AL generates a valid, unsigned result of 129.

DF—Direction flag: The direction flag bit modifies the behavior of the string instructions: MOVS, STOS, LODS, CMPS, SCAS, INS, and OUTS. When DF is 0, the string instructions operate on incrementally higher addresses. When DF is 1, the memory addresses are decremented, and the operand addresses become progressively lower. The STD instruction sets the direction flag bit, and the CLD instruction clears the bit.

IF—Interrupt enable flag: When this bit is set, the 80386 responds to external hardware interrupts. When the bit is reset, interrupts are disabled, and the 80386 ignores the hardware interrupt pin. Note that this bit does not affect the NMI interrupt. The processor always responds to faults (exceptions) and software interrupts regardless of the setting of the IF bit. When IF is 0, interrupts are said to be *masked*.

The STI instruction sets IF to 1, and the CLI instruction clears IF to 0. The interrupt enable flag is also modified when an IRET is executed. A POPF instruction modifies the interrupt enable flag only if the procedure executing the instruction has I/O privilege.

TF—Trap flag: The trap flag bit assists in debugging programs on the 80386. When the TF bit is set, an interrupt 1 occurs immediately after the next instruction executes. The trap flag is usually set by a debugger; the debug capabilities of the 80386 are covered in Chapter 5.

SF—Sign flag: The sign flag bit changes when arithmetic or logical instructions are executed. The sign flag bit receives the value of the high-order bit of the result and, when set to 1, indicates that the result of the instruction is negative.

```
MOV EDX, -1           ; Sign flag unchanged by MOV
ADD EDX, 3            ; EDX == 2, SF now 0
NEG EDX              ; EDX == -2, SF now 1
```

ZF—Zero flag: The zero flag bit is set when arithmetic instructions generate a 0 result.

```
MOV AL, 0             ; Zero flag unchanged by MOV
OR AL, AL             ; AL unchanged, ZF now 1
```

AF—Auxiliary carry flag: The auxiliary carry flag bit indicates that a carry out of the low-order nibble of the AL register occurred in an arithmetic instruction. This bit is used by the ASCII and BCD instructions. It allows implementation of multiple-digit precision decimal arithmetic. The following example assumes an ASCII encoding of the characters 4 and 7.

```
MOV AL, '4'           ; AL == 34H, AF unchanged by MOV
ADD AL, '7'           ; AL == 6BH, AF now 1
AAA                  ; ASCII Adjust, AL == 1, AH = AH + 1
```

PF—Parity flag: The parity flag bit is set to 1 when an arithmetic instruction results in a value with an even number of 1 bits. For example, if you issued the following instructions, the resulting parity flag bit would be 0.

```
MOV AH, 91H           ; AH == 10010001B, PF unchanged by MOV
ADD AH, 05H           ; AH == 10010110B, PF now 1
```

CF—Carry flag: The carry flag bit is set when the result of an arithmetic operation is too large or small for the destination register or memory address. It is similar in operation to the OF bit but indicates an unsigned overflow of the destination.

```
MOV AL, 127           ; AL == 7FH, CF unchanged by MOV
ADD AL, 2              ; AL == 81H, CF now 0
ADD AL, AL             ; AL == 02H, CF now 1 (result is 102H)

MOV AL, 3              ; CF unchanged by MOV
SUB AL, 4              ; AL == FFH, CF now 1 (borrow bit)
```

Segment registers

The segment registers hold the values that affect which portions of memory a program uses. Four segment registers are used under specific conditions, and two are available as pointers to frequently used areas of memory. The CS, DS, SS, and ES registers were inherited from the 80286 and perform the same functions as they did in that CPU. Two additional registers, FS and GS, are new to the 80386.

Associated with the segment registers is a descriptor cache, which holds the starting address of the memory segment and other related information. Chapter 3 details the relationship between segments and memory addresses in the 80386. The descriptor cache for the segment registers is not accessible to the programmer; only the 16-bit register portion can be accessed directly. Figure 2-13 illustrates the segment registers and the internal descriptor cache.

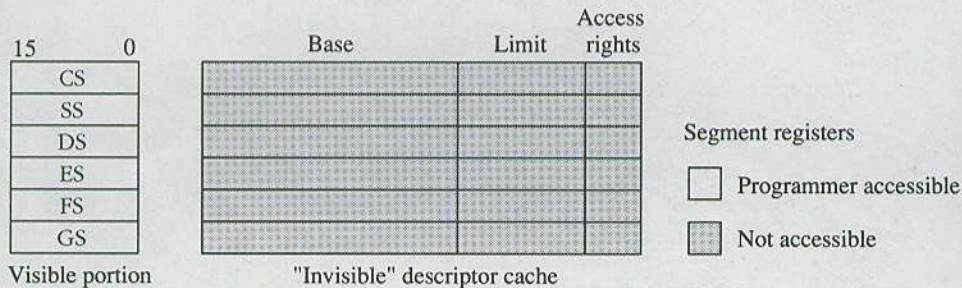


Figure 2-13. Segment registers.

Protection model registers

Four registers support the protection model of the 80386, as shown in Figure 2-14.

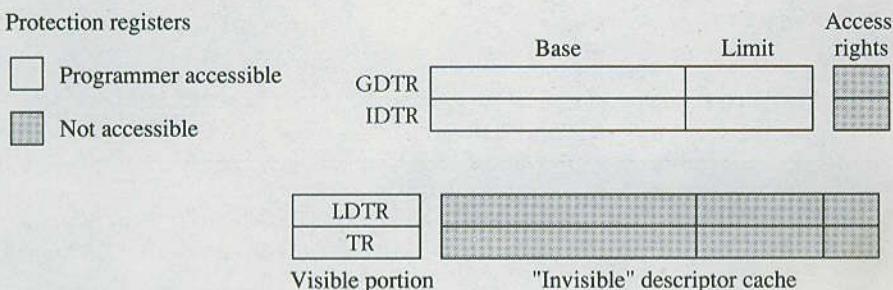


Figure 2-14. Protection registers.

The protection model registers are:

GDTR—Global Descriptor Table Register

IDTR—Interrupt Descriptor Table Register

LDTR—Local Descriptor Table Register

TR—Task Register

The GDTR and IDTR contain linear base addresses that point to the start of the GDT and the IDT descriptor tables. They also contain limit fields that describe the size of the GDT and IDT tables.

The LDTR and TR registers hold 16-bit selector values, similar to the segment registers. Like the segment registers, an inaccessible descriptor cache exists for both the LDTR and TR. The LDTR holds a selector for an LDT descriptor, and the TR holds a selector for the TSS (task state segment) of the currently executing process. Chapter 5 discusses how these registers work.

Control registers

The control registers regulate the paging and numeric coprocessor operation of the 80386. A general description of the registers follows; refer to the specific chapters on paging and coprocessors for more detailed information. A programmer can only read or modify control registers by instructions of the form `MOV CRx, reg`, where `reg` stands for one of the general registers. A procedure must be running at the highest privilege level to execute these instructions.

CR0—Control register 0

The following illustration shows the contents of control register 0. The LMSW and SMSW instructions allow access to the low-order 16 bits of CR0 as the machine status word.

31	16 15	8 7	4 3 2 1 0	
P G	Reserved		E T E M P T S M P E	CR0

PG—Paging: Paging is enabled by setting the PG bit to 1. Typically, the operating system does this once, at initialization. Chapter 6 discusses the 80386 paging mechanism.

ET—Extension type: The 80386 sets the ET bit to 1 at boot time if the processor determines that an 80387 is present. If this bit is 0, the coprocessor is either an 80287 or is not present at all. When ET is 1, the 80386 uses a 32-bit protocol to communicate with the coprocessor; otherwise, it uses a 16-bit protocol.

TS—Task switched: The 80386 sets the TS bit when a task switch operation occurs. When the TS bit is on, the next coprocessor instruction causes a trap to the operating system. This feature lets the operating system implement multitasking without requiring the operating system to save the state of the math coprocessor every time a task switch occurs. The context of the 80387 is more than 100 bytes, so saving the coprocessor state at every task switch would waste valuable CPU time.

EM—Emulate math coprocessor: When this bit is set, floating-point instructions that would normally control coprocessor operation trap to the operating system instead. Proper use of this bit allows programmers to write applications as if a coprocessor were present. If an 80287 or 80387 is present, the operating system initializes the EM bit to 0, and the application's floating-point instructions will be executed by the coprocessor. If an 80287 or 80387 is not present, the operating system sets the EM bit to 1. Then, when an application executes a floating-point instruction, the 80386 will trap back to the operating system, which either emulates the instruction in software or passes the operands to other floating-point hardware in the system.

MP—Math present: The operating system sets this bit to 1 at boot time if a math coprocessor (either the 80287 or 80387) is present. The MP bit affects the operation of the WAIT instruction, as described in Chapter 8.

PE—Protect enable: Setting the PE bit places the processor into protected mode. Typically, this is done once, at initialization. Unlike the earlier 80286, the 80386 makes it possible to switch the CPU back into real mode after entering protected mode. Some implementations of the OS/2 operating system use this technique to allow real-mode MS-DOS programs to run concurrently with protected-mode OS/2 applications.

CR1—Control register 1

Control register 1 is not used in the 80386 and is reserved for future Intel processors.

CR2—Control register 2

When a page fault occurs, the CR2 register is loaded with the linear address that caused the exception. Refer to Chapter 6 for more details on paging in the 80386.

CR3—Control register 3

The 80386 paging hardware also uses this register. It contains the linear address of the starting point of the page directory. The implementation of paging is covered fully in Chapter 6.

Debug and test registers

The 80386 contains seven debug registers and two test registers. The test registers, TR6 and TR7, allow diagnostic software to test the translation lookaside buffer (TLB). Because the TLB is part of the paging hardware, these registers are discussed in Chapter 6.

The debug registers, labeled DR0–DR7, allow the 80386 to implement a hardware breakpoint capability that previously required an external in-circuit emulator. By setting the address register (DR0–DR3) and control bits (DR6–DR7), the programmer can halt the 80386 when a particular memory location is read from, written to, or executed. The breakpoints are noninvasive (they don't require modification of the program under debug), and they are also real-time (they don't degrade the performance of the program). Chapter 5 describes debugging techniques using the debug registers.

Coprocessor Support

The 80386 can operate with either the 80287 or 80387 numeric data processor (NDP). Because these special-purpose chips operate in parallel with the 80386, they are called *coprocessors*. The 80287 is a slower chip with a 16-bit interface, originally designed for use with the 80286. Floating-point performance with the 80287 is approximately 320,000 whetstones when running at 10 MHz. The 32-bit 80387 offers higher performance. This processor is software compatible with the 80287 and can execute about 1,800,000 whetstones when running at 16 MHz. Appendix F notes the differences between the 80287 and 80387. References to the 80387 in the following text also refer to the 80287, unless otherwise noted.

In addition to the raw performance advantage of hardware support for floating-point arithmetic, the NDPs introduce another level of parallelism into the system. As soon as the 80386 passes an instruction to the 80387, it begins operating on the next instruction regardless of how long the 80387 takes to complete its operation. Of course, if the 80386 encounters another floating-point instruction, it must wait for the coprocessor to complete the current operation before the 80386 can give it another one.

To use a value computed by the 80387 and written to memory, you must ensure that the 80387 has completed the write operation. The FWAIT instruction ensures synchronization between the 80386 and 80387.

If a coprocessor is absent, the 80386 allows an operating system to emulate one and remain invisible to the application. For details on coprocessor emulation, see the discussion of the EM bit in control register 0 of the 80386 earlier in this chapter.

Additional data formats

Adding either the 80287 or the 80387 coprocessor to an 80386 adds direct hardware support for three floating-point number formats and one BCD integer format. The 80287 and 80387 also support three integer formats that the 80386 recognizes. These are the 16-bit, 32-bit, and 64-bit two's complement (signed) integers, identical to their counterparts on the 80386. Figure 2-15 shows the additional numeric formats.

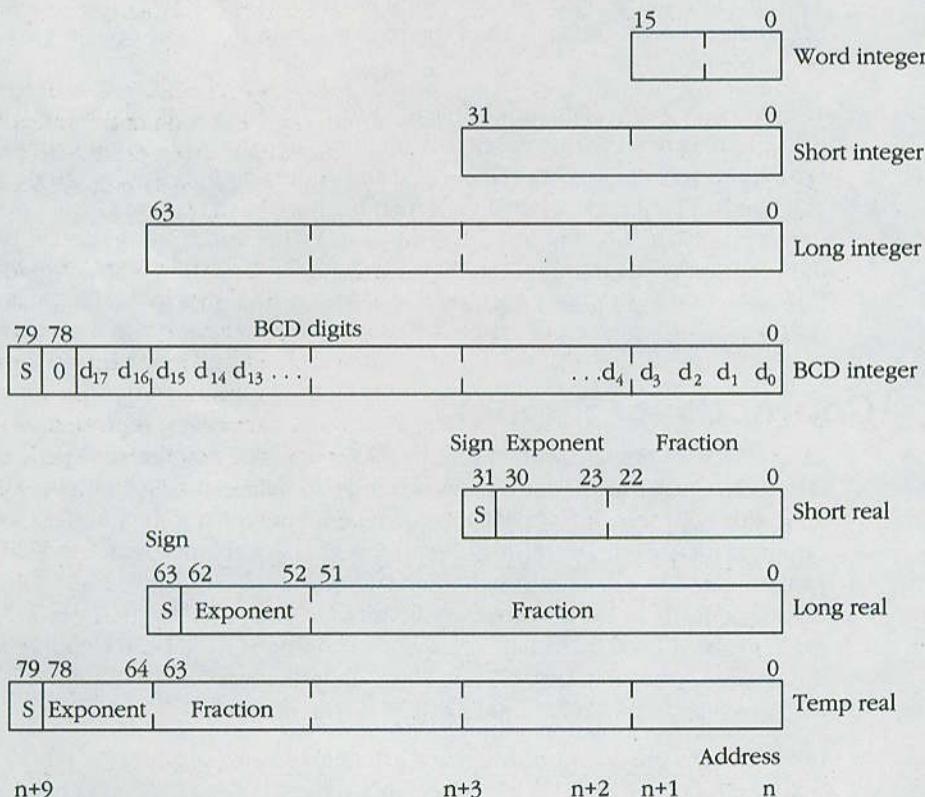


Figure 2-15. Floating-point formats.

Floating-point numbers

The 80387 supports three floating-point formats. This allows a programmer to make compromises between the amount of memory required and the precision of the results. The *short real* format lets programmers specify numbers of about six decimal digits of accuracy. This format is also known as *single-precision* because a short real number fits into a single 32-bit machine word. *Long reals*, also known as *double-precision*, represent floating-point numbers of up to 15 decimal digits of accuracy. Holding a long real number requires a double machine word (64 bits). The third format is called *temp (temporary) real* or *extended-precision*. Temp real numbers are 80 bits and represent about 19 decimal digits of precision.

Just as scientific notation represents floating-point quantities in decimal notation (for example, 4.74×10^3), the 80387 floating-point format is a type of binary scientific notation. The general format of a floating-point number on the 80387 is $\pm f \times 2^e$, where f represents a binary fraction and e is an exponential power of 2. Three fields are required to make up a floating-point number: the sign, the exponent, and the fraction, or *significand*.

The sign field is a single bit that is set to 1 to indicate a negative number and reset to 0 for a positive value. Unlike the two's complement notation of the integers, no value manipulation is necessary to change the number from positive to negative (or vice versa) other than toggling the sign bit. This notational format allows the representation of +0.0 and -0.0, which is useful in certain circumstances.

The exponent field represents a multiplier of 2^e . This field ranges from 8 bits in the short real format to 11 bits in the long real format to 15 bits in the temp real format. To accommodate negative exponents (such as 2^{-6}), the value in the exponent field is *biased*; that is, the actual exponent is determined by subtracting the appropriate bias value from the value in the exponent field. For example, the bias for short reals is 127. If the value in the exponent field is 130, the exponent represents a value of $2^{130-127}$, or 2^3 . The bias for long reals is 1023, and the bias for temp reals is 16383. The values 0 and all 1s (binary) are reserved for representing special values and cannot be used to represent floating-point numbers.

The significand field contains the fractional part of the floating-point number. The significand occupies 23 bits in short reals, 52 bits in long reals, and 64 bits in temp reals. Figure 2-16 shows how to interpret floating-point fractions. The significand is encoded in two different ways on the 80387. In temp real format, the significand field holds the binary fraction in the form $s_0.s_1s_2\dots s_{63}$, where s_n is bit n of the significand.

In short format and in long real format, the authors of the IEEE-754 format took advantage of a representational trick to squeeze out an extra bit of precision. A review of scientific notation shows that the values 40.103×10^7 , 4.0103×10^8 , and 0.0040103×10^{10} all represent the same number. A binary notation has the same property.

Shifting the fraction by one position can be compensated for by incrementing or decrementing the value of the exponent. Because a binary number consists of only 0s and 1s, the designers of the floating-point format decided that the fractional portion of the short and long reals would be shifted left until the most significant bit was 1. Since this bit was now *defined* as 1, there was no point in storing it, and it was assumed to exist. The fraction for a short or long real, therefore, has the value $1.s_0s_1s_2\dots s_n$, where n is 22 for short reals and 51 for long reals.

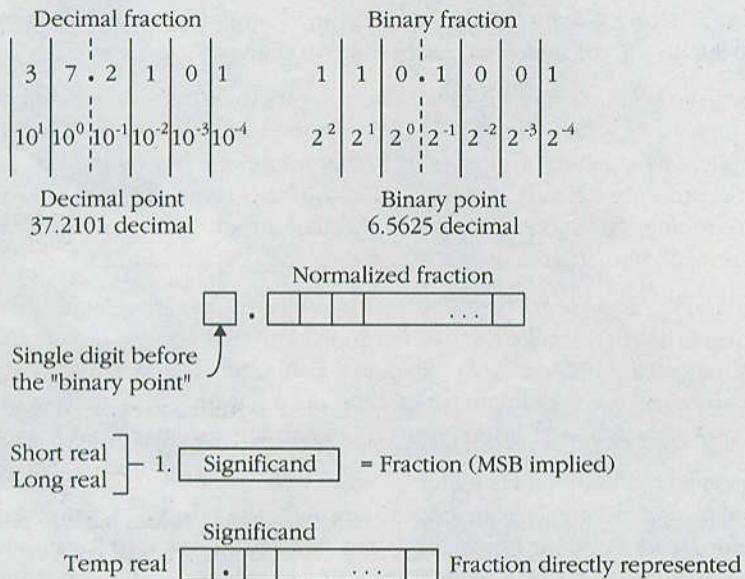
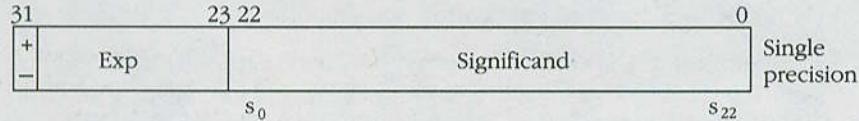


Figure 2-16. Floating-point fractions.

Short real:



$$\text{Absolute value} = 1.s_0s_1\dots s_{22} \times 2^{(\text{exp} - 127)}$$

The bias for the short real exponent is 127. The significand includes the "implied 1" bit and allows a precision of about six decimal digits. Representative values range from $\pm 1.18 \times 10^{-38}$ to $\pm 3.40 \times 10^{38}$.

Long real:

63 62	52 51	0	
+/-	Exp	Significand	Double precision
		$s_0 \dots s_{51}$	

$$\text{Absolute value} = 1.s_0s_1\dots s_{51} \times 2^{(\text{exp} - 1023)}$$

The bias for the long real exponent is 1023. The significand includes the “implied 1” bit and allows a precision of about 15 decimal digits. Representative values range from $\pm 2.23 \times 10^{-308}$ to $\pm 1.80 \times 10^{308}$.

Temp real:

79 78	64 63	0	
+/-	Exp	Significand	Extended precision
		$s_0 \dots s_{63}$	

$$\text{Absolute value} = s_0.s_1\dots s_{63} \times 2^{(\text{exp} - 16383)}$$

The bias for the temp real exponent is 16383. The significand represents the fractional portion of the value (with no implied bits) and allows a precision of about 19 decimal digits. Representative values range from $\pm 3.30 \times 10^{-4932}$ to $\pm 1.2 \times 10^{4932}$.

Special floating-point values: In addition to intuitive values such as 3.14159 and 6.03×10^{23} , the 80387 represents values that arise under unusual conditions. These values are called *infinities*, *denormals*, and *NaNs*. (NaN stands for “not a number.”)

Infinity, positive or negative, is represented by a value whose exponent field is all 1s and whose fraction is 1.0B. Note that in short and long real numbers, 1.0B is represented by a significand of all 0s, whereas in temp real numbers, the significand is a binary 10000000...0B.

Denormals are values that are too small to represent in the standard (or normalized) fashion. Denormals are represented by a value with an exponent field of 0 and any nonzero value in the significand. A floating-point number with both an exponent of 0 and a significand of 0 represents 0.0.

NaNs are invalid representations of floating-point numbers. They are identified by an exponent field of all 1s and a significand other than the one representing infinity. The two kinds of NaNs are the signaling NaN and the quiet NaN. A signaling NaN has a fraction of the form 1.0xxx...xB, where x represents any bit value. The 80387 generates an exception whenever a signaling NaN is used. The 80387 never creates

a signaling NaN, but a programmer can use one to indicate some error condition such as an uninitialized floating-point variable. The quiet NaN has a fractional format of 1.1xxxxxB. Recall that the leading 1 is not implied in the significand of short and long reals but must be present in temp reals. The 80387 generates a quiet NaN instead of a numeric result whenever a floating-point instruction causes an invalid operation. Any instruction that receives either type of NaN as an operand generates a NaN as a result. The following table lists special values used by the 80387.

<i>Sign</i>	<i>Exponent</i>	<i>Fraction</i>	<i>Value</i>
x	11...11B	1.1xx...xxB	Quiet NaN
x	11...11B	1.0xx...xxB	Signaling NaN
x	11...11B	1.00...0B	Infinity
x	00...00B	0.xxxxxxB	Denormals
x	00...00B	0.00...0B	Zero

The "x" indicates that it makes no difference whether the bit is 0 or 1. The "1" before the decimal in the fraction is physically present only in temporary real format. It is implied in the short and the long real formats. Denormals are recognized in the short and the long format by the 0 exponent value.

BCD integer

The other new data type that the 80387 supports is a packed decimal integer of 18 digits stored in 10 consecutive bytes of memory. The high-order bit of the high-order byte is interpreted as a sign bit in the same way as floating-point numbers. The rest of the high-order byte is unused. The remaining bytes each contain two BCD digits.

79	72	71	64	63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32	31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
s	0	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	d d	

The value range of the BCD integer is 0 through $\pm 999,999,999,999,999,999$. Programmers who work with BCD numbers might want to run the 80387 with the precision exception unmasked. Because BCD formats often represent monetary values, it is important to avoid losses due to rounding or truncation.

Coprocessor register set

The 80287 and 80387 are nearly identical in terms of their programming models. Both contain register files of eight 80-bit floating-point registers and a number of status registers. (See Figure 2-17.)

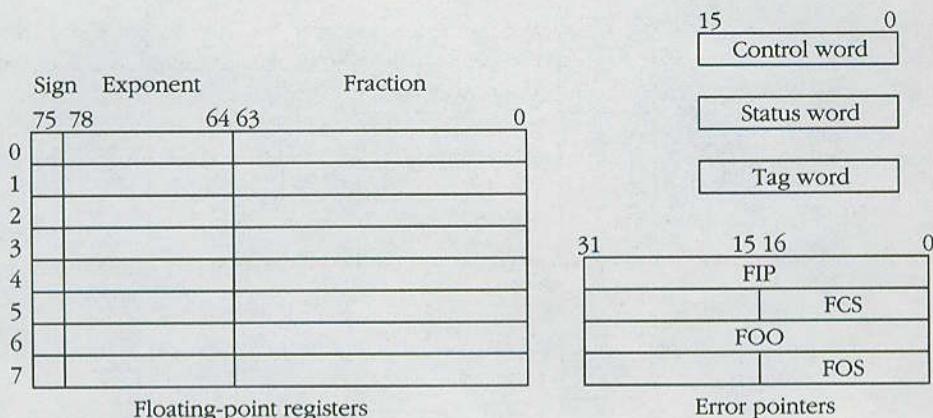


Figure 2-17. 80387 register file.

Unlike the general registers of the 80386, however, the NDP registers are addressed as a stack. The current top-of-stack (the value most recently pushed) is indicated by a field in the status word register and is addressed as ST or ST(0). The next register (the previous value pushed) is ST(1), and so on. This is best illustrated by the following example.

Assume that the configuration in Figure 2-18 (on the following page) shows the initial state of the 80387. Register 2 is designated as the current top-of-stack, but nothing is stored in the registers. The tag word (TW) register holds a 2-bit field for each register, marking it as valid, 0, special, or unused. To evaluate the polynomial $y = 3x^2 - 7x + 4$, we will use the following code fragment. (Figure 2-18 shows how the function evaluation progresses on the 80387 stack.)

```

x      DD      ?          ; short real variable "x"
y      DD      ?          ; result of computation
const  DW      ?          ; memory word for integer constants

      FLD      x          ; load x to top of stack
      FLD      ST(0)       ; duplicate copy of x
      FMUL    ST(0)       ; square copy of x at top of stack
      MOV     const, 3     ; integer multiplier
      FIMUL   const       ; multiply top of stack by 3
      MOV     const, 7     ; integer constant
      FILD    const       ; load 7 to top of stack
      FMULP   ST(2), ST   ; ST(2) = x * 7, pop ST
      FSUBRP ST(1), ST   ; ST(1) = ST - ST(1), pop ST
      MOV     const, 4     ; integer constant
      FIADD   const       ; 3x2 - 7x + 4
      FSTP    y          ; store result and pop, clearing stack

```

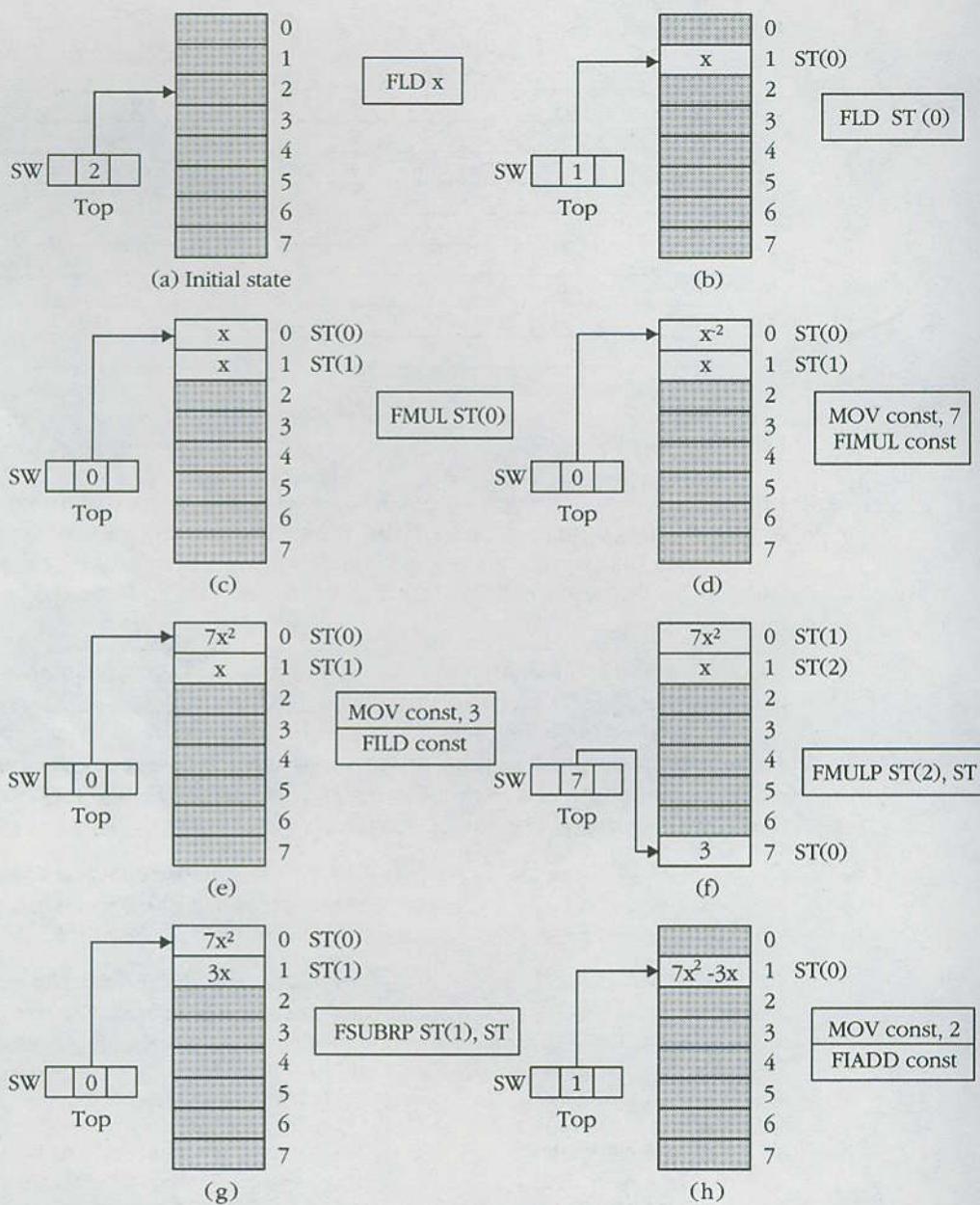
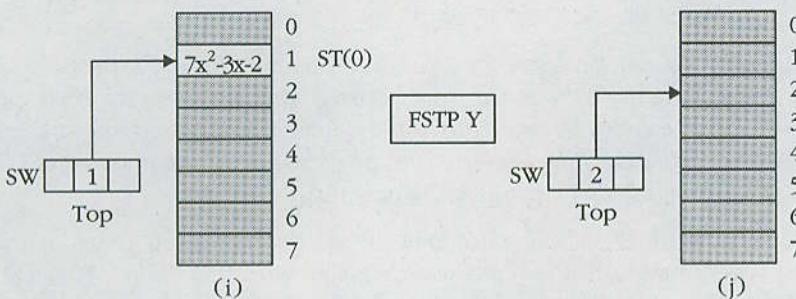


Figure 2-18. Evaluating a polynomial.

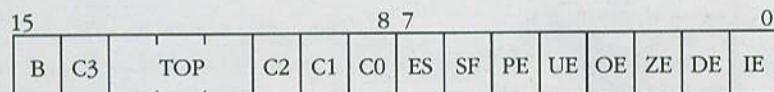
(continued)

Figure 2-18. *continued*

The 80387 register addressed by $ST(n)$ varies according to the value of the TOP field in the status word register. The following section describes the other fields in the status word register.

Status word register

The status word register can be illustrated as follows:



B—Busy: This bit is 1 when the 80387 is executing an instruction or when an unmasked exception (bits 0–5) is indicated. Execute the instruction FNSTSW AX, which copies the status word register to the AX register of the 80386 to test this bit.

C₃, C₂, C₁, C₀—Condition codes: The 80387 sets these bits when a floating-point compare, test, or examine instruction is executed. The various combinations that occur are discussed under the relevant instructions in Chapter 8.

TOP—Top-of-stack: This field indicates which of the 80387 machine registers functions as the top-of-stack. When a new value is pushed onto the register stack, the value of TOP is decremented by 1. When a value is popped from the stack, TOP is incremented by 1. The results of the increment or decrement are truncated to three bits to allow addressing of eight floating-point registers.

ES—Error summary: The 80387 sets this bit to 1 whenever a floating-point instruction generates an unmasked exception. The exception indicators are bits 0–5. The exception masks themselves are located in the control word register.

SF—Stack fault: The 80387 sets this bit to 1 if an instruction causes a stack overflow by pushing too many operands or a stack underflow by popping the stack when there are no more values. This field does not exist in the 80287, so floating-point code that must run on either coprocessor should not rely on having the bit. A stack fault also results in an invalid operation exception.

Before discussing each field, it is worth noting a couple of things about bits 0–5 of the status word register. These bits correspond to exceptional conditions that can occur while executing 80387 instructions.

Whenever a condition represented by an exception bit occurs, the 80387 first sets the appropriate bit in the status word register. Next, it checks the corresponding mask bit in the control word register. If the mask bit is 0 (unmasked), the 80387 triggers the coprocessor fault (interrupt 16) on the 80386. If the mask bit is 1 (masked), the 80387 continues by executing the next instruction.

Additionally, the 80387 exception bits are “sticky.” Once set, they remain set until the programmer loads the status word register with a new value. This lets the programmer write a series of numeric instructions and place a test for errors at the end of the instruction stream rather than after each instruction.

PE—Precision exception: This exception occurs when the 80387 cannot represent the exact result of a floating-point instruction. For example, the fraction $\frac{1}{3}$ cannot be represented exactly as a decimal fraction because it produces an infinitely repeating result. Any finite representation such as 0.3, 0.33333333, or even 0.3333333333333333333333333333 is only an approximation. Similarly, the 80387 cannot represent this fraction exactly in binary format. Dividing 1 by 3 results in the infinite binary fraction 0.01B.

This exception also occurs when a temp real number is converted to a lower precision and bits are lost in the conversion.

The precision exception is almost always masked because a rounded or truncated result will suffice in most cases.

UE—Underflow exception: The underflow exception is triggered when the result of an operand is too small for the 80387 to represent. For example, the smallest value that can be represented in the 80387's 80-bit extended-precision format is 3.37×10^{-4932} . Attempting to square a number such as 10^{-3000} results in an underflow exception.

OE—Overflow exception: This exception is the converse of the underflow exception. It occurs when the result of a floating-point operation is too large for the 80387 to represent. Like the precision exception, UE and OE can be generated when a number representable on the 80387 is converted to a format in which it is not representable.

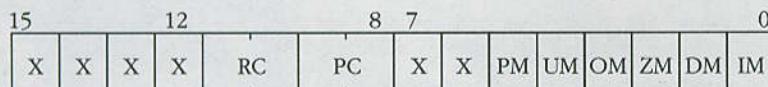
ZE—Zero divide exception: Whenever division by zero is attempted, the ZE exception occurs. This exception can be caused by floating-point operations other than the divide instruction, such as sine, cosine, remainder, and so on.

DE—Denormal exception: This exception occurs whenever an operand of a floating-point instruction is a denormal. Denormal numbers are discussed earlier in this chapter.

IE—Invalid operation exception: This exception traps all error conditions not handled by the previously discussed exceptions. These can include arithmetic faults (such as an attempt to take the square root of a negative number) or programmer faults (such as specifying a register that contains no value as an instruction operand).

Control word register

A programmer modifies the control word register (CW) of the 80387 to alter its behavior. The format of the control word register and the definition of each field follows.



Bit 12—0 (infinity control on 80287): Bit 12 is ignored on the 80387. On the 80287, this bit selects either affine or projective closure. Affine closure allows the use of both positive and negative infinity. In projective closure, very large or very small numbers overflow to a single unsigned infinity. The 80387 only supports affine closure.

RC—Rounding control: This field specifies how the 80387 handles values that it cannot represent exactly. The RC field can be set to one of the following modes:

- 00—Round toward nearest (choose even number if equidistant)
- 01—Round toward negative infinity
- 10—Round toward positive infinity
- 11—Round toward zero (truncate)

To see how the rounding control affects the results of a computation, assume that the 80387 can represent only the integers -5 through $+5$. Figure 2-19 on the following page shows the results of rounding the values $2\frac{1}{3}$, $1\frac{2}{3}$, $-1\frac{1}{3}$, and $-2\frac{1}{3}$ in each rounding mode.

PC—Precision control: The PC field tells the 80387 which floating-point format to use when generating the results of add, subtract, multiply, divide, and square root operations. This field can hold one of the following values:

- 00—Single-precision (32-bit)
- 01—Reserved for future coprocessors
- 10—Double-precision (64-bit)
- 11—Extended-precision (80-bit)

Instructions other than those affected by the PC field generate extended-precision results or have a precision specified by the operand.

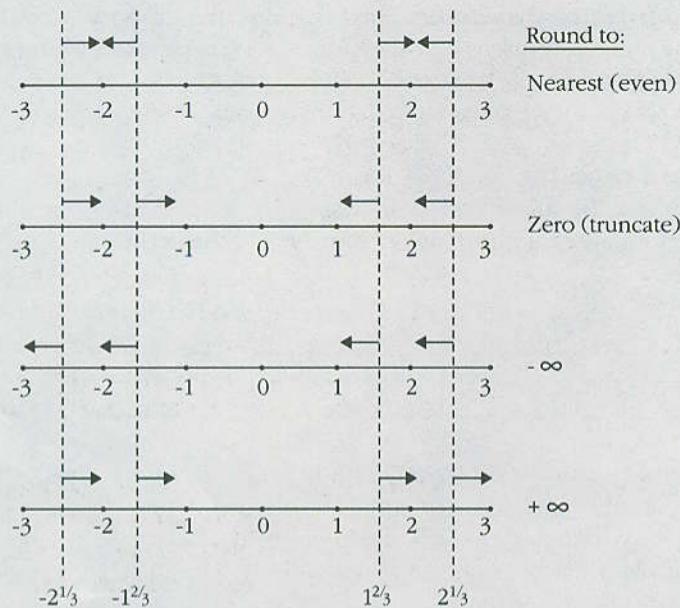


Figure 2-19. Rounding control.

PM, UM, OM, ZM, DM, IM—Mask bits: The remaining bits in the control word register are the mask bits for the exception conditions and correspond to bits 0–5 of the status word register. The mask bits are:

- Precision mask (PM)
- Underflow mask (UM)
- Overflow mask (OM)
- Zero divide mask (ZM)
- Denormal operand mask (DM)
- Invalid operation mask (IM)

Tag word register

The final 16-bit register on the 80387 is the tag word register. This register consists of eight 2-bit fields that correspond to each floating-point register. T0 is the field for register 0 (not ST0), T1 is associated with register 1, and so on. Each tag field holds one of the following values that gives additional information about the contents of the corresponding register:

- 00—The register contains a valid floating-point number.
- 01—The register contains the value 0.0.

10—The register contains the value infinity or an invalid number.

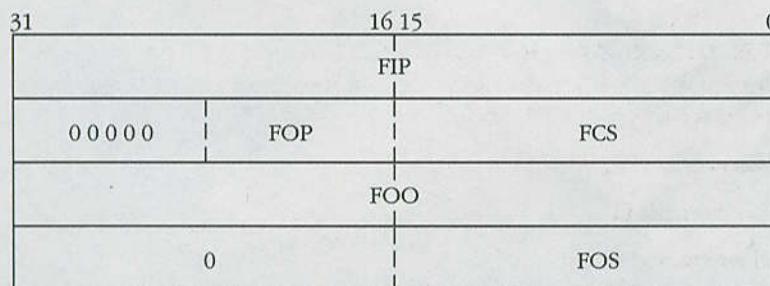
11—The register is empty (unused).

The tag word register is normally not used by the programmer. A debugger that displays the contents of the 80387 stack must examine the contents of the tag word register to properly interpret the contents of the coprocessor registers.

Error pointer registers

The only other registers on the 80387 are the error pointer registers. These registers are updated each time a new floating-point instruction is executed. When a floating-point instruction causes an exception, these registers can be queried to determine which instruction is at fault. Note that no 80387 instructions directly address these registers. The store environment operation copies the contents of all 80387 registers to memory.

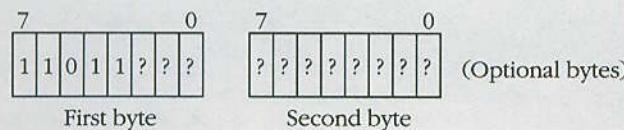
The error pointer registers are necessary because of the parallel operation of the 80386 and 80387. The 80386, which is executing simpler, faster instructions, might be executing code in a different segment when the 80387 generates an exception. The error pointer registers make it much easier to determine what went wrong when an 80387 exception occurs.



FIP—Floating-point instruction pointer: This register is loaded with the contents of the 80386 EIP register when a coprocessor instruction is executed.

FCS—Floating-point code segment: This register is loaded with the value of the 80386 CS register when a floating-point instruction is executed.

FOP—Floating-point opcode: This register is loaded with 11 bits of opcode information. A coprocessor instruction always has the format:



The second byte of the instruction is concatenated with the 3 low-order bits of the first byte to form the contents of the FOP register. Early versions of the 80386 do not generate this information for the 80387, nor is it available when using the 80386 in protected mode with the 80287 coprocessor. It might be simpler to use the FCS and FIP values to find the instruction at fault.

FOS—Floating-point operand segment: This register contains the segment register of the memory operand (if any) referred to by the most recent floating-point instruction.

FOO—Floating-point operand offset: This register holds the offset within segment FOS of the memory operand (if any) referred to by the most recent coprocessor instruction.

MEMORY ARCHITECTURE: SEGMENTATION

A segmented memory architecture is a hallmark of the Intel 8086 family of processors. The 80386 is the first of these processors in which segmentation is not an impediment to the programmer.

Linear vs Segmented Memory

The hardware interface between the CPU and memory is virtually identical in almost every computer, and the 80386 is no exception. A set of address lines goes out from the processor to memory. The CPU places an address on the bus, and memory responds by returning the value stored at that location or by accepting a new value. Figure 3-1 shows the hardware relationship between the CPU and memory.

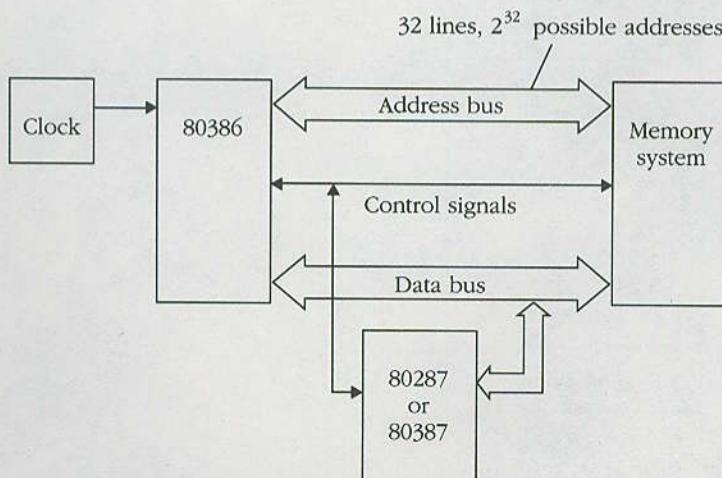


Figure 3-1. CPU—memory interface.

Because of the binary nature of the digital computer, a system with n address lines allows the system to reference 2^n elements of memory. The hardware behaves in a *linear* fashion; that is, for each of the 2^n possible combinations of address lines, a separate memory element responds.

Most computers also have a linear *memory model*. They allow programmatic access to memory, beginning with address 0 and continuing through address $2^n - 1$. Theoretically an application could read the byte at location 0, then read the next byte, and so on until it reads the last byte of memory in the system. This model parallels the hardware interface.

However, like the 8086 and the 80286, the 80386 has a programmatic memory model different from the hardware memory model. These processors have a *segmented* memory model. To a program, the address space is divided into chunks, or *segments*, and the program can only access data contained in those segments. Within each segment, addressing is linear, and the program can access byte 0, byte 1, byte 2, and so on. The addressing is relative to the start of the segment, however, and the hardware address associated with software address 0 is hidden from the programmer.

This approach to memory management is natural. Programs are typically divided into segments of code and data. In the 80386, programs can be made up of single or many code and data segments. In a multitasking environment, segmentation also isolates processes from one another. If *my* program can look at only *my* code and *my* data, it cannot illicitly modify *your* program's code or data. Figure 3-2 shows a multiprocessing system with many segments coexisting in memory.

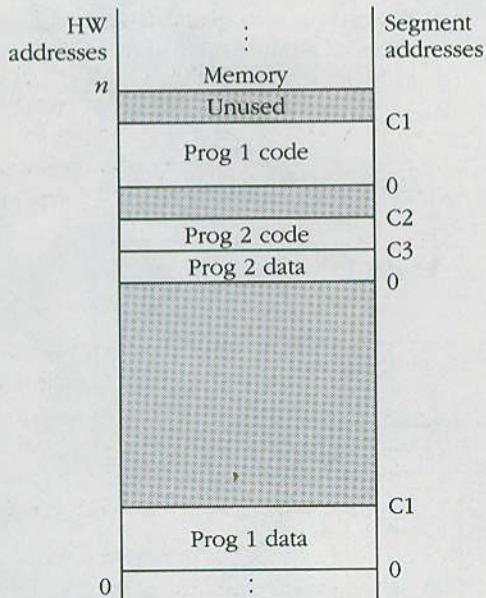


Figure 3-2. Memory divided into segments.

The 80386 has six segment registers. The values in these registers determine the memory segments that a program can access. The CS register points to the segment that contains the program's code. CALL and JMP instructions implicitly refer to the current code segment. The DS register points to the program's main data area. For example, the instruction:

```
MOV AL, [0]
```

copies the first byte (byte 0) of the data segment into register AL.

The 80386 also supports a stack segment (register SS). The stack segment is commonly (but not necessarily) the same segment as the data segment. The PUSH and POP instructions store data to or remove it from the stack segment.

Three additional registers (ES, FS, and GS) point to auxiliary data that the program needs to access less frequently, such as COMMON variables in a FORTRAN program. You can apply a special prefix to an instruction that accesses the data segment register. The prefix causes the instruction to act on one of the additional segments instead. For example, the previous instruction might be written as:

```
MOV AL, ES:[0]
```

to fetch the first byte from one of the alternate data segments, or even as:

```
MOV AL, CS:[0]
```

to fetch the first byte from the code segment.

Previous generations of the 8086 family also dealt with segmented memory; however, these processors limited the size of a segment to 64 KB, which was often much too small. A single segment in the 80386 can be as large as 4 GB.

An operating system designer can choose to simulate a linear memory model (also called a *flat* model) on the 80386 by creating one very large code segment and one very large data segment and having all programs use the same values for CS and DS. This is a common technique when porting systems that have run on linear address machines. The UNIX operating system—with its VAX heritage—is typically implemented on linear memory machines.

Virtual Addressing

Except when operating in real mode, the 80386 is a *virtual memory* processor. When an instruction requests the contents of a memory location, the instruction refers to the location not by an actual hardware memory address but by a *virtual address*. The virtual address is really a name for a memory location. The processor translates the location name into an appropriate physical location. The operating system must maintain the proper mapping between virtual and physical memory.

This concept is not as convoluted as it might sound. For example, suppose that someone says to me, "Put this report on the boss's desk." In my particular

department, that might mean, "Put this report on Simon Legree's desk." If, however, I transfer to a new department, I might be placing my report on Ebenezer Scrooge's desk. "The boss's desk" is a virtual location, and I can carry out the instruction to turn in my report even though the desk on which I place the report varies according to the circumstances.

A virtual address on the 80386 is specified by two numbers, a *selector* and an *offset*. The selector is a 16-bit value that serves as a virtual name for a memory segment. It is the selector that is loaded into the segment registers (CS, DS, and so on). The offset is the distance from the beginning of the segment, and it is a 32-bit value. Examples of virtual addresses include:

Virtual Address	Interpreted Virtual Address
3F11:00000000	Offset 0H from selector 3F11H
01A9:0001FF00	Offset 1FF00H from selector 01A9H
EC2C:31887004	Offset 31887004H from selector EC2CH

The CPU translates a virtual address to a single 32-bit number called a *linear address*. Figure 3-3 shows an example of address translation. This linear address goes out on the system bus unless the paging feature is enabled. Paging is another level of address translation and is discussed fully in Chapter 6.

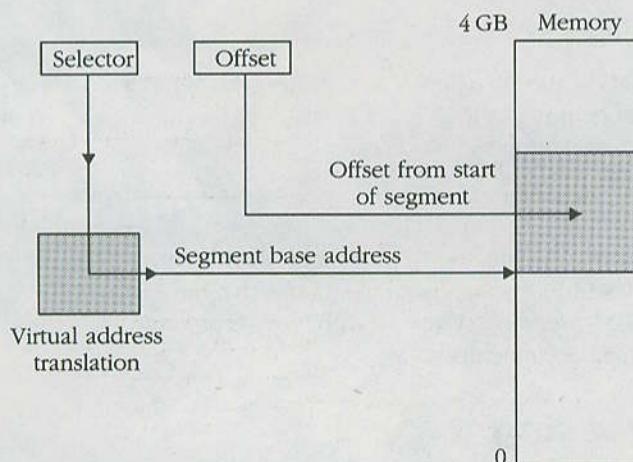


Figure 3-3. Linear address translation.

Virtual-to-linear address translation

The CPU uses the selector as an index to a set of system tables called *descriptor tables*. A *descriptor* is a block of memory that describes the characteristics of a given element of the system. In the case of a memory segment, the characteristics include the segment's linear *base address*, *limit*, *access rights*, and *privilege level*.

The base address is the starting point in the segment's linear address space. The offset portion of a virtual address is added to the base address to generate the linear address of the desired memory element. Figure 3-4 illustrates an example. The virtual address 13A7:0010F405H is broken down into its segment and offset components. The system uses the selector 13A7H as an index into its descriptor tables. It pulls out a descriptor that says, for example, that the segment has a base address in the linear address space of 00032DD000H. The virtual address offset is combined with the base, and the resulting value, 33EC405H, is the translated linear address.

The 80386 hardware supports a 32-bit linear address space (2^{32} , or slightly in excess of 4 billion bytes). The base address of a segment is located somewhere in this range. As the base address defines the starting point of a segment, the limit field defines the end point. The limit specifies the segment's last addressable byte. The 80386 checks every instruction that addresses memory to determine whether the instruction is attempting to read or to write memory within the boundaries of the segment's descriptor. An out-of-bounds reference causes an interrupt called a *general protection fault* to occur. Faults are discussed in the section on interrupts and exceptions in Chapter 5. The access rights field defines the type of segment and the privilege level required to access it.

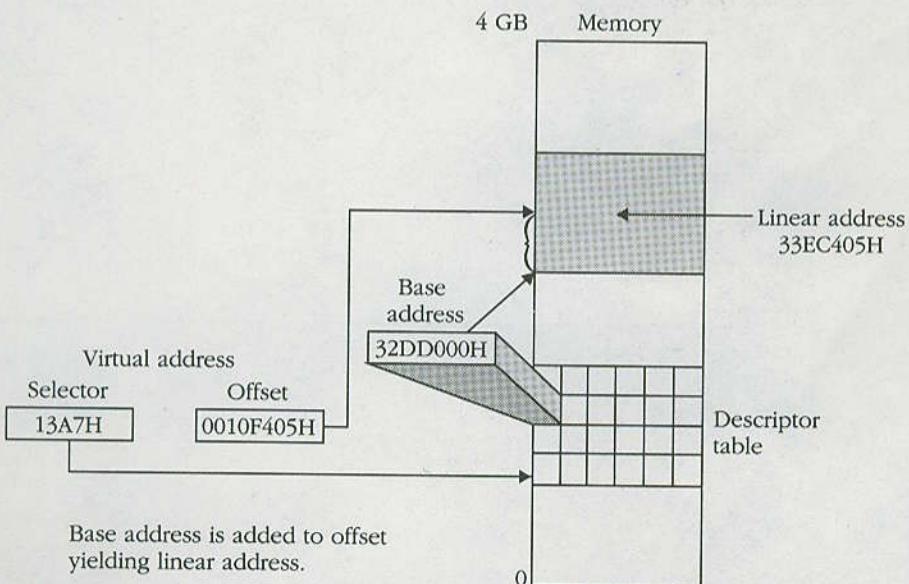


Figure 3-4. Virtual-to-linear address translation.

Segment descriptors

At this point, you probably visualize a descriptor as something like the item in Figure 3-5. Indeed, all the data in this figure is in an 80386 descriptor; however, because of space and compatibility constraints, the real thing is not quite so pretty. Figure 3-6 shows the actual format of an 80386 segment descriptor.

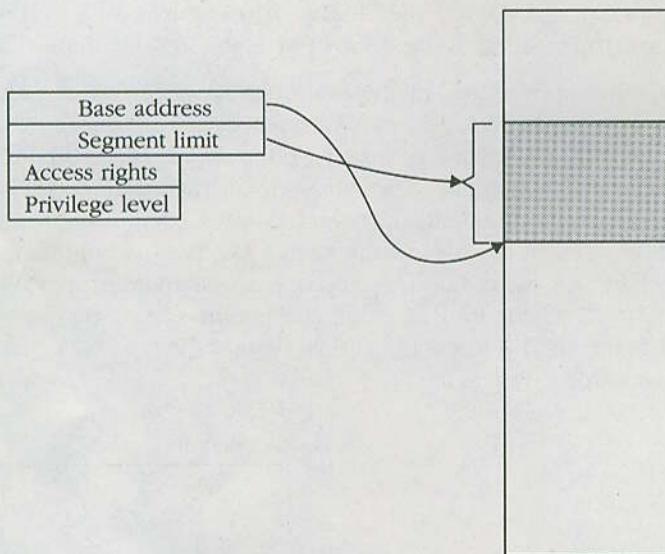


Figure 3-5. Visualized descriptor.

80386

63	48 47				32 31		16 15		0		
Base address 24 .. 31	G	D	O	A V L	Limit 16 .. 19	P	DPL |	S = 0	Type	Base address 0 .. 23	Limit 0 .. 15

Access
rights

80286

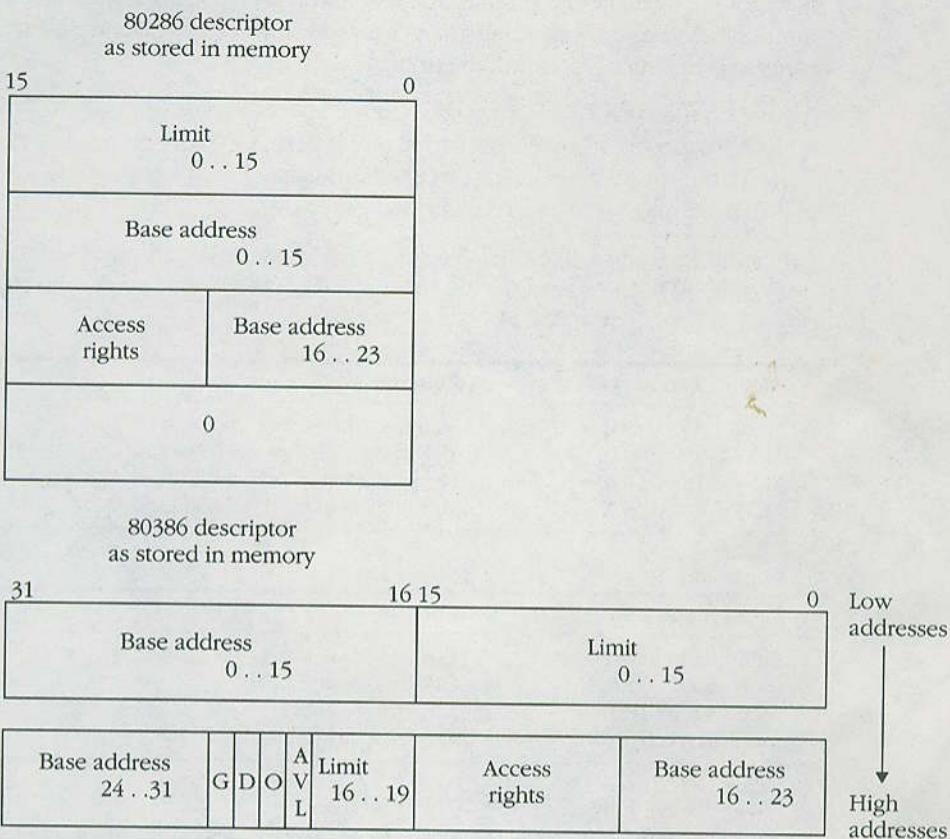
63	48 47				32 31		16 15		0
0		P	DPL |	S = 0	Type	Base address 0 .. 23		Limit 0 .. 15	

Access
rights

Figure 3-6. Actual 80286 and 80386 descriptors.

(continued)

Figure 3-6. continued



Base address: The base address portion of the descriptor is the address of offset 0 in the segment. This field is 32 bits and is constructed from bytes 2, 3, 4, and 7 of the descriptor. In the 80286, the base address is only 24 contiguous bits. However, Intel specified that bytes 6 and 7 of the 80286 descriptor were to be set to 0 to ensure that 80286 code would run properly on an 80386-based computer.

Limit: The limit field determines the last addressable unit of the segment. The limit field is 20 bits, comprising bytes 0 and 1 of the descriptor and the low-order four bits of byte 6. Again, the split is due to the difference in the limit field sizes between the 80286 and the 80386. Those of you handy with binary arithmetic might note that a 20-bit limit field allows the addressing of only 2^{20} , or approximately 1 million, items.

At first glance, this seems to mean that an 80386 segment is limited to 1 megabyte. This is not the case, although the segment *is* limited to 1 million *items*. The G bit in byte 6 of the descriptor stands for *granularity*, and 80386 segments come in two forms, *byte* granular (G = 0) and *page* granular (G = 1).

The word *granularity* is similar to the word *resolution*. A high-resolution image is made of very tiny items, and a lower-resolution image is made of larger items. The limit of a byte granular segment is measured in bytes; a page granular segment is measured in larger pieces called pages.

A page on the 80386 is 2^{12} , or 4096, bytes. This makes the limit on the size of a segment 2^{20} pages of 2^{12} bytes, for a total of 2^{32} bytes (4 GB). Again, a segment of code ported from the 80286 is always a byte granular segment because the seventh and eighth descriptor bytes are required to be 0.

For example, assume that the DS register points to a byte granular segment with a limit of 001FH. The size of the segment is 20H (32 decimal) bytes, and the last addressable byte is byte 001FH.

Illegal Instruction	Reason
MOV EAX, [1234H]	Memory address beyond limit
MOV EAX, [001DH]	Size of item read extends beyond limit
MOV AL, [0020H]	Memory address beyond limit
MOV [001FH], AX	Size of item written beyond limit

Legal Instruction	Reason
MOV EAX, [0000H]	Last byte read is 3H
MOV EAX, [001CH]	Last byte read is 1FH
MOV AL, [001FH]	Last byte read is 1FH
MOV [001EH], AX	Last byte written is 1FH

Now imagine a page granular segment with a limit of 0000H. The size of the segment is one page, and page 0 is the last addressable page. A page has 1000H (4096 decimal) bytes in it, so the last addressable byte is 0FFFH.

Illegal Instruction	Reason
MOV EAX, [1234H]	Memory address beyond limit
MOV EAX, [0FFDH]	Size of item read extends beyond limit
MOV AL, [1020H]	Memory address beyond limit
MOV [0FFFH], AX	Size of item written beyond limit

Legal Instruction	Reason
MOV EAX, [0000H]	Last byte read is 3H
MOV EAX, [0FFCH]	Last byte read is 0FFFH
MOV AL, [0FFFH]	Last byte read is 0FFFH
MOV [0FEFH], AX	Last byte written is 0FFFH

Access rights: The access rights portion of the descriptor has the following format:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
P	DPL	S		TYPE		A	

The P bit stands for “present.” It is set to 1 when the segment indicated by the selector is present in physical memory. In a virtual memory system, the operating system can move the contents of some segments to disk if physical memory is full. It then marks the descriptor as not present by resetting the P bit to 0. If an application loads a selector into a segment register and the descriptor associated with the selector has P = 0, the not present interrupt (11 decimal) is generated.

The operating system then looks for a free area of physical memory, copies the contents of the segment from disk back into memory, updates the descriptor with the new base address, sets P to 1, and restarts the interrupted instruction.

The DPL field contains the privilege level of the descriptor. The privilege level ranges from 0 (most privileged) through 3 (least privileged). A task can access segments of equal or lesser privilege. A task can only read data from or store data into segments of equal or lesser privilege. A task can call only code segments of the same privilege; however, access to segments of higher privilege may be granted indirectly via the 80386 protection mechanism. A task can never invoke a code segment of lower privilege.

The privilege level of a task, called the *current privilege level* (CPL), is the privilege level of the currently executing code segment. Typically, the most secure portions of the operating system run at level 0. Other system software might run at a less privileged level, and applications typically run at level 3. See Chapter 5 for a description of the 80386 privilege mechanism.

The S (for segment) bit is always set to 1 for a memory segment. When S is equal to 0, a descriptor describes an object other than a memory segment. These objects are described in the chapter on the 80386 protection mechanism, Chapter 5.

The TYPE field indicates the types of operations allowed on the segment. Valid types are:

0	Read-only data segment
1	Read/write data segment
2	Unused
3	Read/write expand-down data segment
4	Execute-only code segment
5	Execute/readable code segment
6	Execute-only “conforming” code segment
7	Execute/readable “conforming” code segment

The type indicator defines the access rules applied to a segment. The CS register cannot be loaded with a selector of a segment of type data (0-3). No program can

modify a segment that cannot be written. Segments that are not readable can be executed but not read as data. An attempt to violate any of these rules results in a protection fault. Conforming segments are discussed in Chapter 5. Expand-down segments are covered later in this chapter.

The 80386 sets the A (accessed) bit when the selector for the descriptor is loaded into a segment register. The operating system can use this bit to find out which segments are not frequently used and can therefore be swapped to disk if necessary.

Additional fields: Four additional fields in the segment descriptor are located in the high-order nibble of byte 6.

The G bit, described previously, regulates the granularity of the segment.

Bit 6 is referred to as the D bit if the descriptor is for an executable segment or as the B bit if the descriptor type is a data segment. The D bit is set to 1 to indicate the default, or *native mode*, instruction set. When D is equal to 0, the code segment is assumed to be an 80286 code segment, and it runs with 16-bit offsets and the 80286-compatible instruction set.

The B bit is set to 1 in any data segment whose size is greater than 64 KB.

Bit 5 must be set to 0. It is for use in a future Intel microprocessor.

Bit 4 (AVL) is available for use by system programmers. Possible uses include marking segments for garbage collection or indicating segments whose base addresses should not be modified.

Expand-down segments, indicated by TYPE = 3, are a special kind of data segment designed for use with the stack. Figure 3-7 shows a stack that resides in its own segment.

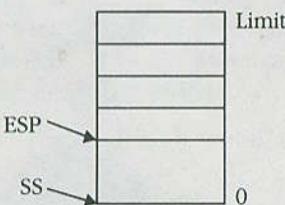


Figure 3-7. Stack residing in its own segment.

As more data is pushed onto the stack, the stack pointer (ESP) nears 0. If too much data is pushed onto the stack, the program attempts to decrement ESP beyond 0, resulting in a stack fault. At this point, the operating system has no choice but to terminate the program.

Placing the stack in an expand-down segment rather than in a normal data segment, however, will change the way memory is addressed inside the segment.

Although normal segments are addressed beginning at 0 and extending to *limit*, expand-down segments begin at *limit* + 1 and extend to FFFFFFFFH. Figure 3-8 illustrates the difference.

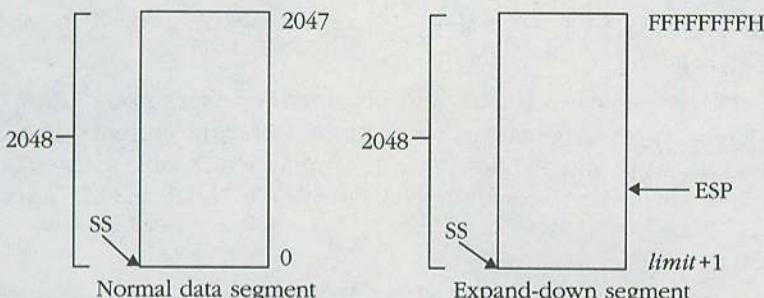


Figure 3-8. Normal data segments and expand-down segments.

The advantage of this approach is that when the stack pointer is decremented past the limit and triggers a stack fault, the operating system can extend the size of the segment and decrement the limit. The faulting instruction is then restarted, allowing the program to run with a larger stack segment. Figure 3-9 shows how this is accomplished.

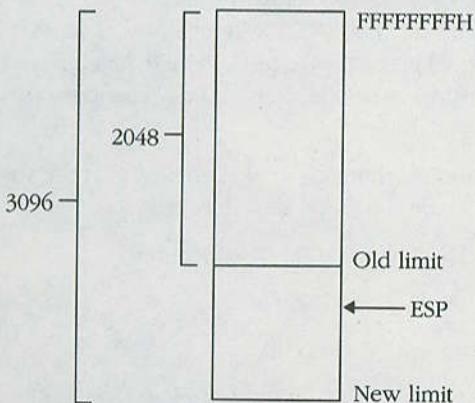


Figure 3-9. Extending the size of the segment.

Note that when a descriptor for an expand-down segment is created, the base address must be set to the linear address of the first byte after the *end* of the segment rather than to the address of the start of the segment. Because addressing arithmetic is limited to 32 bits, large offset values can be viewed as if they were negative numbers. For example:

$$\text{base} + \text{FFFFFFFH} \equiv \text{base} + -1 \equiv \text{base} - 1$$

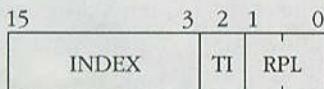
Descriptor tables

All the descriptors are grouped together in descriptor tables. The two system descriptor tables are the Global Descriptor Table (GDT) and the Interrupt Descriptor Table (IDT). The IDT contains no segment descriptors, so it is not discussed here. A full description of the IDT and other facets of the 80386 protection mechanism is given in Chapter 5.

An operating system can also implement various Local Descriptor Tables (LDTs). Segment descriptors are found either in the GDT or in the currently active LDT. The selector used to identify the descriptor determines which table to use. The location of the tables in memory is determined by the GDTR, IDTR, and LDTR registers.

Selectors

A segment, as we have seen, is *described* by a descriptor that has been *selected* by a selector. A selector is made of three components, as shown in the following illustration.



The INDEX and TI (table indicator bit) fields tell the 80386 where to find the descriptor. When the TI bit is set to 0, the descriptor is in the GDT. When TI is set to 1, the 80386 uses the current LDT instead. The INDEX identifies which entry in the descriptor table to use. The RPL field is the requested privilege level. Note that the RPL can differ from the actual descriptor privilege level. The reason for this is discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

As an example of how the selection mechanism works, assume that the value 1A3BH is a valid selector. The selector is divided as follows:

Selector = 1A3BH INDEX = 0347H (839 decimal)

0001101000111011B TI = 0 (GDT)

RPL = 3 (lowest)

To use a selector, hardware must first break it into three fields: INDEX, TI, and RPL. Figure 3-10 illustrates how hardware separates a selector into its components.

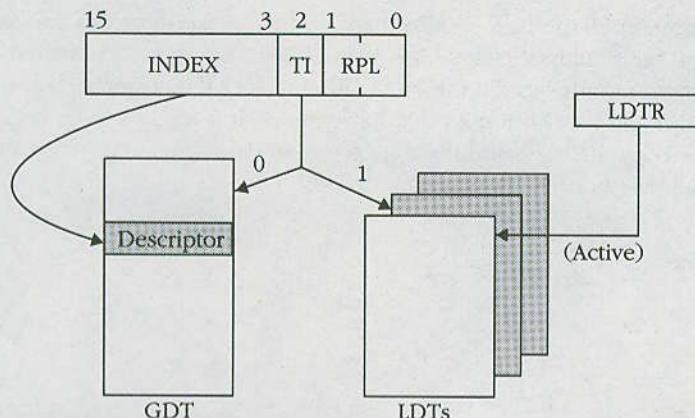


Figure 3-10. Selector components.

Games Segments Play

Using the virtual addressing capabilities of the 80386, an operating system designer can provide a number of interesting features. One such feature is virtual memory. Virtual memory gives the appearance of physical memory where none exists.

To illustrate how this can be accomplished, imagine an environment such as the one pictured in Figure 3-11. The figure symbolizes a multitasking system in which four tasks are to be run. One MB of memory is available for running the four applications. Application A requires 400 KB, application B requires 100 KB, application C requires 400 KB, and application D requires 200 KB. Also assume that half of the application space is dedicated to code and that the other half is required for data.

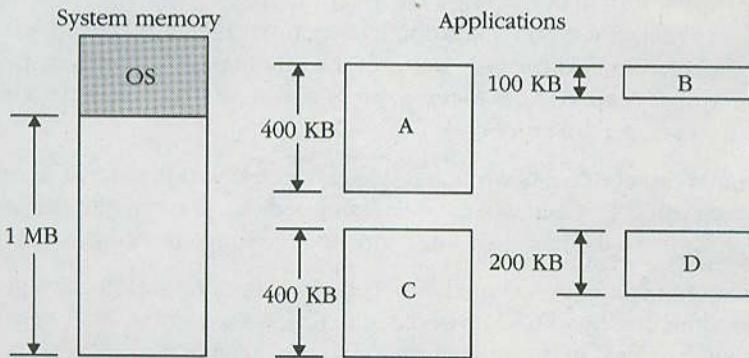


Figure 3-11. Initial state of a multitasking system.

Because the combined memory requirement of the four applications exceeds 1 MB, they cannot all be in memory simultaneously. After A, B, and C are loaded (see Figure 3-12), not enough room remains for all of task D. The operating system loads the code portion of task D but not the data segment. It does, however, create descriptors for both the code and the data segments of task D, marking the data segment descriptor as not present.

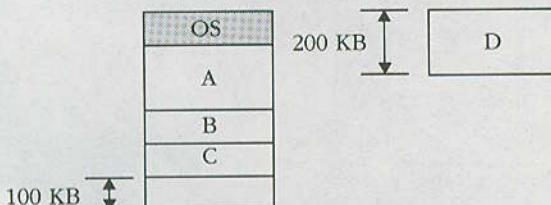


Figure 3-12. Initial tasks loaded into memory.

This is a multitasking system, so the starting address (CS:EIP) of each task is passed to the scheduler portion of the operating system, and execution begins. Task A starts and is allowed to execute for a few milliseconds. The scheduler then takes control and allows task B to run for a few milliseconds. However, part way through its allotted time slice, task B reads the keyboard for input from the operator. Because no keys have yet been pressed, the operating system takes control and marks task B as *suspended*.

The scheduler then gives control to task C, which runs through its allotted execution time. Control now passes to task D. It begins to execute, but as soon as it tries to refer to the data segment, the 80386 generates the not present interrupt.

The operating system determines which task was executing when the interrupt occurred and what caused the interrupt. It determines that task D needs access to its data segment, so it evaluates the status of the other tasks. Task B is suspended, so the operating system decides to temporarily remove it from memory to make room for the data segment of task D.

The memory image of B is written to disk, and the descriptors for B are marked as not present. Task B is said to have been swapped out, and operating systems that implement virtual memory in a similar manner are implementing swapping.

The data segment for D is copied into memory at the physical location just vacated by B, and the descriptor for D is updated to reflect the new base address and to show that the segment is now present in memory. Figure 3-13 reflects the new state of the system.

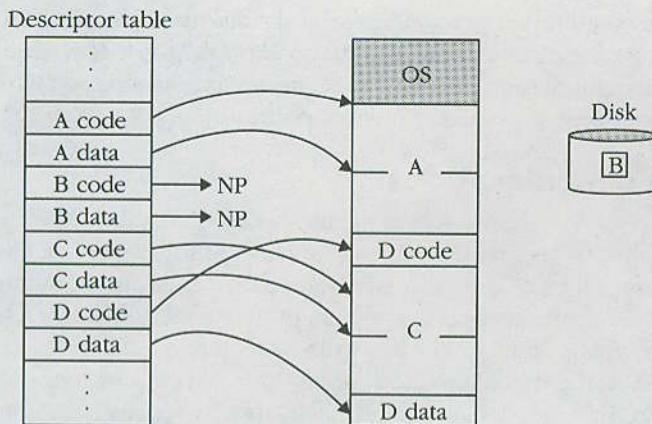


Figure 3-13. Swapping tasks B and D.

The scheduler now rotates execution time among tasks A, C, and D. At some point the computer operator sees the prompt for input from task B and in response presses a key on the keyboard. This action causes a hardware interrupt, and the operating system realizes that it must now schedule task B. However, because none of the other tasks are suspended, the system might choose to suspend task A temporarily.

Because task B is small, it displaces only part of task A. The code segment of task A is marked as not present, and the descriptors for task B are updated as shown in Figure 3-14. Notice that task B is now running at a completely different physical address than it was when it began. This is invisible to the application, however, because the selectors loaded into the segment registers do not change and because the memory offsets used by the instructions in the code segment are relative to the starting point of the segment, regardless of the physical origin of the segment.

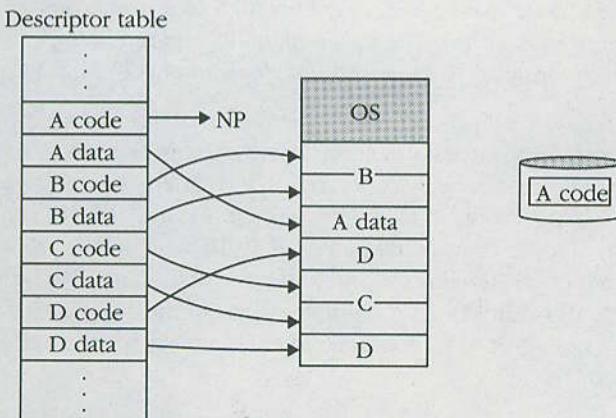


Figure 3-14. Swapping tasks A and B.

The system will continue to operate as previously described, with occasional swapping and shifting of segments. If no external condition exists that causes a segment to swap, the operating system might swap segments, based either on which tasks have run the longest or on another system of priority.

Performance considerations

As the previous example shows, virtual memory doesn't create RAM out of thin air; it uses *secondary* storage, usually disk, to supplement the *primary* (RAM) storage and give the appearance of more primary storage than exists in the system. The cost of keeping up appearances is the amount of time it takes to move data between primary and secondary storage. The more time the system has to spend swapping, the less time it can spend executing the applications. On extreme occasions, a system can be so overextended that it spends all its time swapping segments in and out. This pathological situation is called *thrashing*.

An operating system designer can improve the performance of a virtual memory system. On the 80386, for example, code segments are immutable. Because the contents of a code segment do not change, it doesn't have to be swapped out. You can recreate the contents from the original executable image of the program. Only swapping in requires access to secondary memory. The operating system, therefore, can swap code segments twice as fast as it can swap data segments. Actually, if you recall the contents of a descriptor, you will remember that certain kinds of data segments can be marked as read-only. Like code segments, read-only data segments do not have to be written to secondary storage when swapped out.

Another trick that designers can use also relies on knowledge about code segments. The technique of *segment sharing* lets two or more tasks share the same code. This is primarily effective in multiuser systems. In the previous example, assume that tasks A, B, C, and D represent users running applications. Suppose that users A and C are running the same application, perhaps a spreadsheet. Now users A and C are operating on different data and require separate data segments. They are, however, executing the same code. Figure 3-15 shows how all four applications can fit in physical memory in this situation. The users maintain separate descriptors for their code and data, but the base addresses for the code segments of A and C point to the same location.

Finally, a segment-oriented virtual memory system can provide a way to compact memory. Compacting memory helps solve a problem called *fragmentation*. Fragmentation occurs when memory that is not contiguous is available to run additional applications. To put it another way, the pieces of available memory are small and scattered throughout physical memory, and to be useful they need to be next to one another. Figure 3-16 illustrates this problem. Because applications deal with virtual addresses, they are not affected by a change in location. The process does take up CPU time, however.

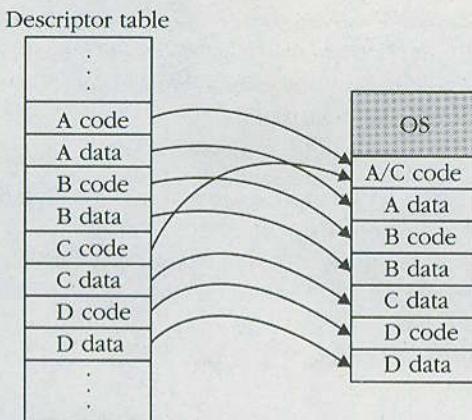


Figure 3-15. Tasks A, B, C, and D in physical memory.

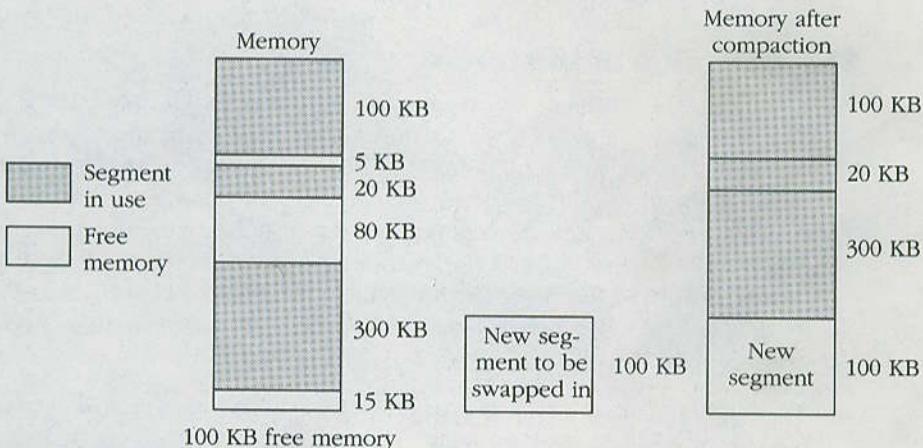


Figure 3-16. Memory fragmentation.

Why bother?

Because virtual memory is plagued with potential performance problems and adds to the complexity of operating systems by forcing them to deal with fragmentation and with identifying shareable segments, you might be tempted to ask, “Is it worth the effort?” In most cases, the answer is yes.

One clear advantage of virtual memory is that a user doesn’t have to spend money for extra memory simply to get an application to run. Any application will run in existing memory; it will simply run more slowly if it has to be swapped out. Let’s say that I have a system with 2 MB of physical memory and that 90 percent of my

applications fit into physical memory. However, 10 percent of the time I run an application that requires 5 MB of memory. Without virtual memory, I can't run the large application unless I spend the extra money to buy 3 MB of memory that will remain unused 90 percent of the time. With virtual memory, I can at least run the application and decide whether I want to spend money to improve its performance.

Virtual memory also makes life easier for the application designer. What if you are writing a program that manipulates a large array? If virtual memory is not available, you have to worry about how much memory your typical user will have and how to make your program fit into a system of that size. As a designer, you can no longer worry about simply solving the problem at hand (the array manipulation). You must also be concerned about breaking your program into pieces that will fit on the typical system. The complexity of your application increases, and the application is more likely to contain bugs.

This situation might be likened to giving a speech simultaneously in two different languages. By letting someone else handle the translation, you can concentrate on your job—presenting your information.

The dark side of the force

So far, only the advantages of segmentation have been discussed. Let's take another look at segments and see if we can uncover some problem areas. One advantage of segmentation is virtual addressing. The application deals with selectors, whereas the linear memory address for the segment is in the descriptor. Thus, every time a selector is loaded into a segment register, the contents of the descriptor must be fetched as well. Every instruction that causes a segment register to be loaded also causes the 8-byte descriptor for the segment to load. In addition, the descriptor is marked as accessed when it is loaded, so a memory write is required to set the bit in the descriptor.

At a minimum, therefore, a segment register load has an overhead of two memory read cycles and one memory write cycle in addition to any memory cycles required to fetch the operand of the load instruction. Because of this and the protection checking that the 80386 does based on the type of segment, size of descriptor table, and privilege level, loading a segment register takes between 18 and 19 clocks as opposed to the 2 to 5 clocks that it takes to load a general-purpose register.

Another advantage of segmentation is the limit checking that the 80386 performs. If a data object such as an array is placed in its own segment, the CPU monitors all references to the object and triggers an interrupt if any instruction refers to a point beyond the bounds of the object. Limit checking is an excellent tool for helping programmers discover flaws in their programs. Unfortunately, using this tool means having many data segments. Having many data segments implies many segment register load operations, which slow down the program. You must also deal with 48-bit pointers—16 bits of selector and 32 bits of offset.

The 80386 does not provide many instructions for handling these irregularly sized items, nor do many programming languages. Consequently, they are awkward to manipulate and they cause more work for the programmer.

Finally, you must deal with the problem of fragmentation. Because segments come in odd sizes, the operating system must work harder to arrange physical memory space in which to load applications.

Summary

As you have seen, segmentation is a mixed blessing. On one hand, it provides a method for implementing virtual memory, it provides a mechanism for implementing a secure operating system via privilege levels, and the segment limits assist programmers in tracking bugs that arise from invalid pointers or array boundary errors. On the other hand, segmentation gives rise to unwieldy 48-bit pointers, extracts a performance penalty, and can cause fragmentation when used to implement virtual memory.

The flexibility of the 80386 offers system designers three choices. You can ignore segmentation completely by creating only one code segment and one data segment that encompass the entire address space. Another alternative is to use a limited form of segmentation where only two segments, code and data, exist for every user or task on the system. In this instance, the application sees a uniform address space, and only the operating system needs to deal with segments. Or you can implement a fully segmented system in which each large data object and each module of code is in a separate segment.

Each implementation has advantages. The first method gives you an architecture similar to the M68000 or VAX. Although it might seem that you lose the capability to implement virtual memory with this method, you can implement a form of virtual memory other than the one described here by using paging, which is discussed in Chapter 6. A system of this design, however, loses the privilege-level protection features provided by segmentation.

The second method strikes a balance between the other two. Protection is provided on a task-by-task basis, and virtual memory can be implemented through segmentation, paging, or both.

The third method is the most similar to that provided by OS/2 on the 80286 and to programming in the large memory model. This type of system can provide a very secure environment, but the system will run somewhat slower.

One beauty of the 80386 is that it supports these divergent environments and allows designers to build systems that meet their needs, from high security to high performance.

THE 80386 INSTRUCTION SET

The 80386 is a classic *stored program*, or *von Neumann*, processor; that is, the memory attached to the CPU stores not only data to be operated on but the instructions that specify the operations. The term *von Neumann* is used in honor of the mathematician John von Neumann, who wrote a series of papers in the mid-1940s outlining the design of stored program computers. Almost all commercially available computers are designed after the von Neumann model, and the 80386 is no exception.

Built into every stored program computer is a set of commands that cause the CPU to read from a location in memory, interpret the contents as an instruction (that is, as a command to perform some function), execute the function, and start the cycle over again. Because this sequence is often implemented in microcode, it is commonly referred to as the *microcycle*.

In one of the earliest stored program computers, the EDVAC, each machine instruction was broken down into five fields: A bit pattern in one field designated the operation to be performed, two fields designated input operands, one field specified where the result was to be stored, and the final field specified the location of the next instruction. Computer designers soon learned that if they placed one instruction after another they could eliminate the field that specified the address of the next instruction. A register called the program counter or instruction pointer was used to point to the next instruction and was incremented to point to the next one as soon as each instruction was fetched.

This method has never been modified, and the 80386 microcycle can be expressed algorithmically like this:

top:

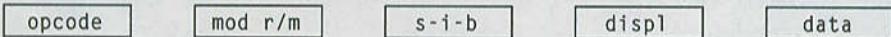
- fetch the instruction at EIP
- increment EIP by the size (in bytes) of the instruction
- execute the instruction
- goto top

This is, of course, a simple view of the microcycle. In actuality, it is much more complex because of the parallelism built into the 80386 (see Chapter 1) and because of the necessity of saving the state of the processor if an instruction faults and has to be restarted. However, the basic algorithm is all that is necessary to understand the process.

Instruction Format

Instructions are stored in memory in the same way that characters, floating-point numbers, integers, or any other type of data is stored in memory. The value 0F5H, for example, is the encoding for the CMC (complement carry flag) instruction. An 80386 instruction can range from 1 byte to 16 bytes.

In general, the format of an 80386 instruction looks like this:



The opcode is 1 or 2 bytes. The mod r/m and s-i-b bytes specify the operands and memory addressing modes. The displ (displacement) field is part of the memory address and can be 1, 2, or 4 bytes. The data field specifies an immediate operand value and can also be 1, 2, or 4 bytes.

Not all fields are present in all instructions. The CMC instruction, as shown previously, consists of only a single opcode byte. The instruction:

XCHG EAX, EBX

consists of only the opcode and mod r/m fields. All fields are present in the instruction:

ADD [EBP+8][ESI*4], 17

Appendix D specifies the bit patterns used to encode instructions, and Appendix E contains a table that lets you decode bit patterns into the original assembly-language mnemonics.

Instruction Operands

The instructions stored in memory command the CPU to manipulate one or more *operands*. The 80386 instruction operands can be specified in one of five ways: They can be *implicit*, *register*, *immediate*, *I/O*, or *memory reference* operands.

Implicit operands

An operand is implicit if the instruction itself specifies it. The CLI instruction, for example, operates on the IF bit in the EFLAGS register. The programmer does not have to specify anything beyond the instruction. The stack is an implicit operand in a number of instructions, for example, PUSH, POP, CALL, and IRET. However, because the stack resides in memory, I will discuss stack operands in the section on memory reference operands. The following instructions have implicit operands.

Instruction	Explanation
AAA	Adjust register AL after ASCII add
CMC	Complement the value of the carry flag
CLD	Clear direction flag to 0

Register operands

An instruction with a register operand performs an action on the value that is stored in one of the 80386 internal registers (shown in Figure 4-1 on the following page). Specify register operands by using the name of the register in the operand field of the instruction. Note that not all registers are legal operands for all instructions. The general registers (EAX, CL, and so on) are most commonly used in data manipulation instructions. You cannot, for example, increment the contents of a segment register or use a control or debug register to store a memory address.

The following examples illustrate typical instructions using register operands.

Instruction	Explanation
INC ESI	Add 1 to contents of ESI
SUB ECX, ECX	Subtract ECX from itself, leaving 0
MOV AL, DL	Copy contents of DL into AL
MOV EAX, CR0	Copy CR0 contents into EAX
CALL EDI	Invoke subroutine whose address is in EDI

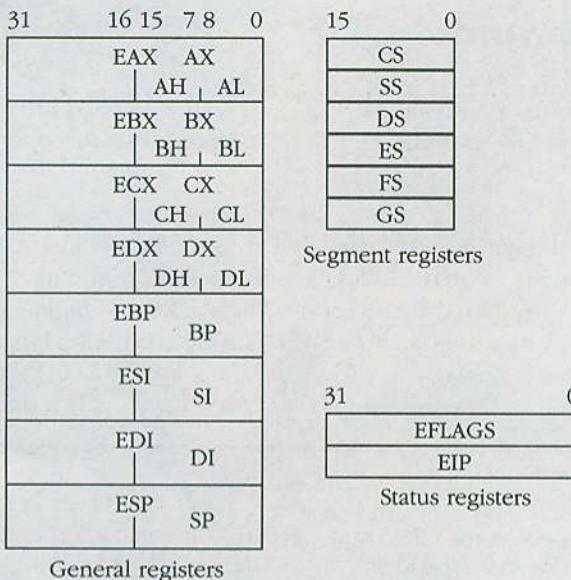


Figure 4-1. 80386 register set.

Immediate operands

An immediate operand is specified when a value is part of the instruction itself. Consider the instruction ADD EAX, 3. In addition to the register operand EAX, the numeric value 3 is coded in the instruction and is stored in the code segment with the bit pattern that represents ADD. Other examples of instructions that use immediate operands include:

Instruction	Explanation
MOV EAX, 7	Store the value 7 in register EAX
AND CL, 0F0H	Mask off the low-order bits of CL
BT EDI, 3	Copy bit 3 of EDI to carry flag
JC 3C1H	Branch to offset 3C1H if CF is set

I/O operands

External devices that transfer data from the computer to another environment are called input/output (I/O) devices. The 80386 communicates with these devices in two ways. The device can access a portion of 80386 memory to read values from or write values to memory addresses. The device can also have its own address (or set of addresses). The 80386 supports 65,536 I/O device addresses, called *I/O ports*.

I/O communication is done in 8-bit or 16-bit quantities. The accumulator is always the source or the destination of the I/O instruction, and the I/O port is specified

with an immediate operand or by the contents of the DX register. Examples of instructions that use I/O operands include:

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
IN AL, 04H	Input a byte from port 04H
OUT 1CH, AX	Output a word to port 1CH
IN AX, DX	Input a word from port specified by DX
IN EAX, DX	Input a doubleword from port DX

Memory reference operands

To operate on the contents of memory, you must specify the address of the data value you want to use. The 80386 provides a number of *addressing modes*. There is rarely a performance penalty on the 80386 for using a complex addressing mode, so use the addressing mode that is most appropriate to your program's needs.

When you specify a memory address, you specify the offset from the beginning of the appropriate segment. Address 0 is the first byte of the memory segment, address 1 is the second byte, and so on, regardless of the segment's physical starting address. Chapter 3 contains a detailed description of how segmentation is used to generate memory addresses on the 80386.

By default, the segment used in most instructions is the one pointed to by the DS register. Forcing an instruction to operate on values in other segments is possible, however, by programming a segment prefix opcode immediately before the instruction. Normally, the instruction `MOV AL, [0]` reads the first byte of the data segment into register AL. By applying a segment prefix, you can force the data to be fetched from another segment. The instructions:

```
SS:  
MOV AL, [0]
```

load the AL register with the first byte of the stack segment. Although the segment prefix byte comes before the instruction in the code stream, the prefix is usually written as part of the memory operand for readability. The previous example is normally written:

```
MOV AL, SS:[0]
```

Direct addressing

The simplest form of memory reference is called *direct addressing*, where the instruction itself includes the location of the operand. The location is specified as a 16-bit or 32-bit offset in the current segment. This offset is also known as the *displacement*. The table on the following page shows three examples of direct addressing. The brackets differentiate data values (no brackets) and memory addresses (brackets).

Instruction	Explanation
INC DWORD PTR [17H]	Add 1 to the 32-bit value at offset 17
MOV AL, [1A33D4H]	Copy the memory byte to register AL
SHL BYTE PTR [1FFH], 3	Shift the memory byte left 3 bits

In the examples in this chapter, I generally use numeric memory addresses to illustrate where the address values are used in an instruction. You may never need to use numeric memory addresses. Your programming environment will provide assemblers and compilers that name locations in memory, and you will use these names in your program. This technique is called *symbolic addressing*.

Symbolic addressing has a number of advantages over absolute numeric addressing. You are much less likely to make a mistake if you can refer to a variable by a mnemonic name, such as `queue_top`, rather than a number such as `32081A3H`. Also, if you use symbolic names, the assembler keeps track of the type of the data item. For example, the opcode for the increment instruction is `INC`, but the same opcode can apply to 8-bit, 16-bit, or 32-bit operands. If you define a symbolic variable, the correct instruction encoding is chosen for you. Without symbolic addressing, you must specify both the size and the location of the operand. For example, notice the difference between these two operations:

`INC DWORD PTR [15F2H] ; 32-bit operand`

and

COUNT	DD	?	;	Allocate 32 bits with name COUNT
	INC	COUNT	;	Increment variable

Here are some additional examples of instructions that use symbolic addressing.

Instruction	Explanation
COUNT DD 10	Reserve 32-bit value, initial value 10
FLAG DW ?	Reserve a single word
NAME DB 20 DUP (?)	Reserve 20 consecutive bytes
DEC COUNT	Subtract 1 from the value at COUNT
MOV AL, NAME	Copy first byte of NAME
MOV AL, NAME[1]	Copy second byte of NAME to AL
OR FLAG, 4000H	Set one bit in the specified word

Based addressing

In based addressing, a register holds the address of an operand. The register containing the memory address is called the base register, and you can use any of the seven general registers as a base register. When you use `ESP` or `EBP` as a base register, the address is assumed to be an offset from the stack segment (SS) rather than from the data segment (DS). You specify based addressing by placing the register name in brackets, as the following examples illustrate.

```

MOV    AL, [ECX]      ; Copy byte of memory at ECX into AL
DEC    WORD PTR [ESI]  ; Decrement 16-bit word at ESI
XCHG   EBX, [EBX]      ; Swap contents of EBX with dword at EBX
CALL   [EAX]          ; EAX holds pointer to
                      ; address of subroutine

```

Base plus displacement addressing

Base plus displacement addressing is a variant of based addressing that uses a base register to specify a nearby location. An integer offset then modifies the base address to form the final destination. Base plus displacement addressing is commonly used in addressing components of data structures and in stack-relative addressing. For example, if ESI points to a record of type *point*, where *point* is a structure whose first element is the *x* coordinate and whose second element is the *y* coordinate, then you could use the instruction MOV EAX, [ESI+4] to fetch the *y* coordinate.

Similarly, because the base pointer EBP commonly points to the current stack frame, any values pushed onto the stack can be addressed by an offset from EBP. Offsets can be positive or negative and are interpreted as signed, 32-bit integers. The assembler provides a construct called a *struc* that makes keeping track of offsets within data structures simple. Here is the above "point" data type example redone symbolically:

```

POINT  struc          ; Define record layout
  X    DD    ?
  Y    DD    ?
POINT  ends

CORNER POINT<>        ; Reserve memory

  LEA_   ESI, CORNER    ; Get address of variable
  MOV    EAX, [ESI].X    ; Fetch the x component
  INC    [ESI].Y         ; Increment the y component

```

Index plus displacement addressing

Indexing is implemented by using the contents of a register as a component of an address. Any of the seven general registers (except ESP) is a legal index register. Index plus displacement addressing is most useful in dealing with arrays. A direct address points to the starting address of the array, and the index specifies the element of the array. Here are three examples of index plus displacement addressing:

```

MOV    AL, 7ACH[ESI]    ; Get byte of array based at 7AC w/index
IMUL   VECTOR[ECX]      ; Multiply EAX by element indexed by ECX
SUB    ARRAY[EAX], 2     ; Subtract 2 from element of array

```

It might appear that index plus displacement is the same as base plus displacement. However, indexing offers an interesting capability that based addressing cannot.

The C language code fragment in the following example computes the sum of the squares of an array.

```
int V[V_MAX];
    register int i;

    sum = 0;
    for (i = 0; i < V_MAX; i++)
        sum += v[i] * v[i];
```

Assuming that the size of an integer is 32 bits, two separate values are required to progress through the array: the index variable i and the offset in memory of $V[i]$. For example, when i is 3, the address of $V[3]$ is the address of V plus 12 (4×3) bytes. Every time i is used as an index into the array, it must be multiplied by the size of the array element. The assembly code to execute the above loop might look like this:

```
XOR    ECX, ECX      ; Clear ECX (counter) to 0
MOV    SUM, ECX      ; Copy 0 to SUM
L1:   CMP    ECX, V_MAX ; Is counter > V_MAX?
      JGE    DONE      ; Yes - go on
      MOV    EAX, ECX      ; Copy counter to EAX
      SHL    EAX, 2      ; Shift EAX 2 bits (multiply by 4)
      MOV    EAX, V[EAX]    ; Load contents of array into EAX
      IMUL   EAX          ; Square the array element
      ADD    SUM, EAX      ; Compute the sum
      INC    ECX          ; Bump the counter
      JMP    L1           ; Loop back to the top
DONE:
```

The highlighted code shows the conversion from array index to memory offset and the addressing of the selected item.

The 80386 provides a special optimization for arrays whose elements are 1, 2, 4, or 8 bytes. The 80386 adjusts the index to produce a memory offset. This adjustment is called *scaling* and is indicated in assembly language by placing a multiply operation in the brackets that enclose the index register. The above example becomes:

```
XOR    ECX, ECX      ; Clear ECX (counter) to 0
MOV    SUM, ECX      ; Copy 0 to SUM
L1:   CMP    ECX, V_MAX ; Is counter > V_MAX?
      JGE    DONE      ; Yes - go on
      MOV    EAX, V[ECX*4]  ; Load contents of array into EAX
      IMUL   EAX          ; Square the array element
      ADD    SUM, EAX      ; Compute the sum
      INC    ECX          ; Bump the counter
      JMP    L1           ; Loop back to the top
DONE:
```

The second version of the program does not require the index value to be copied and multiplied, so the program runs faster. Also, the instruction:

```
MOV EAX, V[ECX*4]
```

takes no longer to execute than the instruction:

```
MOV EAX, V[EAX]
```

When EBP is used as a scaled index register, it does not force the memory reference relative to the stack segment as it does when used as a base register. When an instruction specifies both a base register and an index register and one of them is EBP, EBP is assumed to be the base register unless a scale factor is present. If a scale factor exists, it is assumed to be the index register. The following list shows four examples:

Instruction	Explanation
ADD [ECX][EBP], 7	EBP is base, SS segment used
MOV AX, ARRAY[EBP]	EBP is base, SS segment used
MOV EAX, [ECX][EBP*4]	ECX is base, DS segment used
INC BYTE PTR [ECX*8][EBP].X	EBP is base, SS segment used

Unlike the 8086 and the 8088, which require anywhere from 5 to 17 clocks to compute the operand address (depending on the complexity of the operands), the 80386 requires no additional time to compute the effective address unless both a base register *and* an index register are used to select the operand. When both registers select the operand, execution time increases by only one clock cycle.

Base plus displacement plus index addressing

Base plus displacement plus index addressing is the most complex 80386 addressing mode. This addressing form is used to address data structures stored on the stack or to address arrays whose base address is contained in a register. When addressing these arrays, the displacement value is 0 and the programmer need not specify it, although the assembler encodes a 0 displacement into the instruction. The index register can contain a scale value as it does in index plus displacement addressing mode. Following are examples of base plus displacement plus index addressing:

Instruction	Explanation
MOV EAX, [EBP+8][ESI]	Array is on stack beginning at EBP + 8
INC WORD PTR [EBX+EAX*2]	16-bit vector based at EBX, with index
MOV EDX, PT[EAX*8][ESI].Y	Array of "point" data structures

The final example above appears to contain two displacement values: the initial displacement that specifies the start of the array, and the displacement of structure element Y in the indexed array element. The assembler simply offers these values for clarity. In the machine instruction, the displacement field contains the sum of the two values, as calculated by the assembler.

Stack based addressing

A stack is a data structure in which the value most recently stored is the first value retrieved. The acronym LIFO (last in, first out) describes the action of a stack and contrasts with the FIFO (first in, first out) structure. Figure 4-2 illustrates the LIFO and FIFO structures.

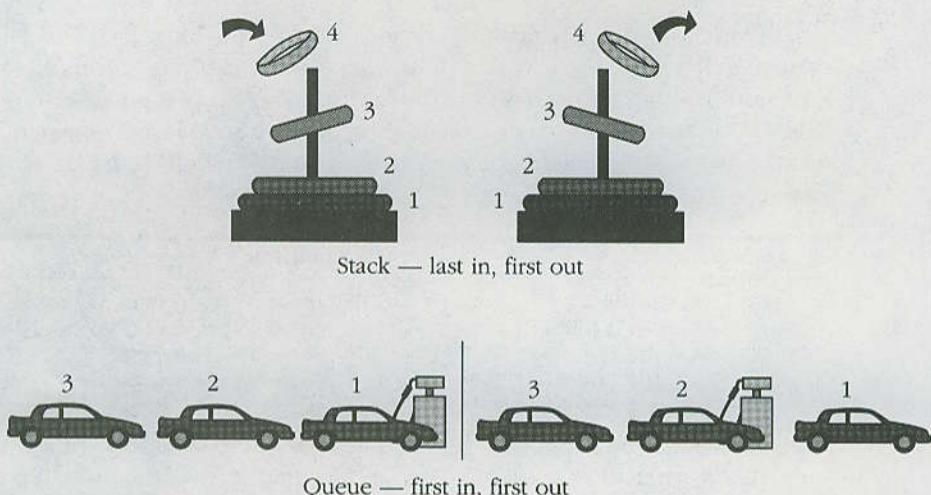


Figure 4-2. LIFO, FIFO.

The 80386 instructions implicitly refer to a stack. The 80386 hardware assumes that all memory in the stack segment (that is, the segment pointed to by the SS register) belongs to the stack, but this is not always true. Often, DS and SS point to the same segment; part of the segment contains program data, and part is reserved for the stack. In this situation, the programmer may need to write code to check for stack overflow, which occurs if too many items are pushed onto the stack and it runs over into the data area.

When a value is stored on the stack, or pushed, the ESP register is tested to see if it is greater than or equal to 4. If it is not, a stack fault (interrupt 12) is generated; otherwise, ESP is decremented by 4, and the operand is stored at SS:[ESP]. The most recently pushed value, to which register ESP always points, is called the *top of stack*.

The POP operation retrieves the most recently pushed value from the stack. First, ESP is compared with the limit of the stack segment. If the memory reference is outside the limit, a stack fault is generated; otherwise, the value at SS:[ESP] is read, and ESP is incremented by 4.

The PUSH and POP instructions cause immediate values, register values, or the contents of a memory location to be stored to and retrieved from the stack. Also, some instructions that cause a transfer of control (change the EIP register) push the old

execution address onto the stack. This allows the subroutine to return to the previous point of execution.

The most commonly used instruction that changes the EIP register is CALL. The CALL instruction has one operand, the address of a routine to be executed. The value of EIP (which points to the instruction immediately following the CALL) is pushed onto the stack, and EIP is set to the address specified by the CALL operand. The RET (or “return”) instruction pops the current top of stack into the EIP register, returning control to the instruction after the initial CALL.

A routine passes information to another routine by storing values on the stack before executing a CALL instruction. The standard way this information is structured is called the *frame* of the called routine or the call stack. Figure 4-3 illustrates a subroutine call and shows how the stack frame is structured.

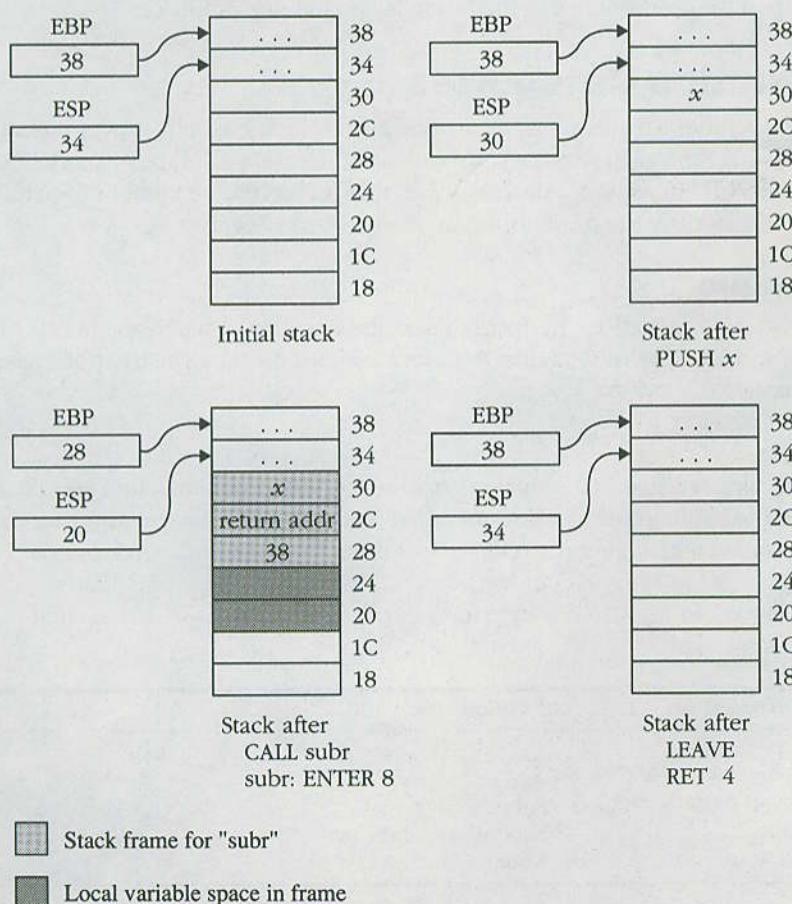


Figure 4-3. Use of the 80386 stack.

Programs can push and pop 16-bit values by specifying registers AX, BX, SI, and so on, or by specifying 16-bit memory references. It is more efficient, however, to push the contents of the 32-bit register (for example, EAX for AX) and to disregard the high-order bits. Use the MOVSX or MOVZX instructions to copy memory operands to a register and extend them to 32 bits before they are pushed onto the stack. The reason for doing this relates to how the 80386 interfaces with memory. If the physical memory address is a multiple of 4, that is, if the address is on a dword boundary, then a single memory reference cycle can fetch as many as 4 bytes. If the physical memory address is offset from the dword boundary, then at least two additional clock cycles are required to read or to write a 32-bit value.

Therefore, after executing a 16-bit push, all subsequent 32-bit stack references degrade in performance by at least 30 percent. The 80386 generates 32-bit references when the 16-bit segment registers (CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS) are pushed or popped, so performance degradation is not an issue in this case.

Instruction Categories

The operations that 80386 instructions perform vary widely, reflecting both the wide range of the machine's capabilities and its compatibility with previous processors. In this section, I divide the instruction set into a number of related categories and identify the most important instructions of each category.

Arithmetic

Arithmetic instructions perform signed and unsigned integer operations on operands of 8, 16, and 32 bits. With few exceptions, these instructions have the form:

OPCODE *dest, src*

Generally, arithmetic instructions operate on source and destination operands and store the result in the location specified by the destination operand. The destination operand can be a memory reference or a register, and the source operand can be memory, a register, or an immediate data value. Both the source and the destination operands cannot be memory references, however. The instructions that fit this format are:

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
ADD	Integer addition
ADC	Add with carry
SUB	Subtract
SBB	Subtract with borrow
CMP	Compare integers

These instructions affect the CF, OF, PF, SF, and ZF bits of the EFLAGS register, depending on the results of the operation.

In addition to the double-operand (or *dyadic*) instructions, there are single-operand (or *monadic*) instructions:

Instruction	Explanation
INC	Increment by 1
DEC	Decrement by 1

Each of these instructions takes a single operand, either a register or a memory reference. These instructions also affect the same EFLAG bits, except that they do not modify the carry flag (CF).

Finally, there are the irregular arithmetic instructions:

Instruction	Explanation
DIV	Unsigned divide
IDIV	Signed integer divide
MUL	Unsigned multiply
IMUL	Signed multiply

The DIV, IDIV, and MUL instructions take a single source operand. The destination operand is implicitly the accumulator and depends on the size of the operands. Destination operands are defined as follows:

Operand Size	Register
8 bits	AL
16 bits	AX
32 bits	EAX
64 bits	EDX,EAX

Because of its usefulness in computing array and structure element offsets, the IMUL instruction has three different forms:

Instruction	Explanation
IMUL src	accum = accum \times src
IMUL dest, src	dest = dest \times src
IMUL dest, src, data	dest = src \times data

The DIV, IDIV, and MUL instructions leave the status flags in undefined states. The IMUL instruction modifies CF and OF, leaving SF, ZF, AF, and PF undefined.

Decimal arithmetic

Six instructions help implement decimal math routines. The standard integer instructions perform computations, and the following instructions adjust the result because the operands are not integers but BCD encodings. The following instructions have either the AL or the AX accumulator as an implicit operand:

Instruction	Explanation
AAA	ASCII adjust after addition
ASCII adjust before division	
AAM	ASCII adjust after multiply
AAS	ASCII adjust after subtraction
DAA	Decimal adjust after addition
DAS	Decimal adjust after subtraction

Logical

The following instructions are called *logical* because they make no semantic assumptions about their operands; that is, they do not regard the operands as integers, BCD digits, character strings, and so on. The instructions are strictly Boolean, or bit-by-bit, operations. First is a set of dyadic functions similar to the arithmetic instructions:

Instruction	Explanation
AND	Boolean AND
OR	Boolean OR
XOR	Exclusive OR
TEST	Performs an AND but modifies only the EFLAGS register

A single monadic instruction, NOT, performs a logical complement of the operand. With the exception of NOT, the logical instructions modify each of the OF, SF, ZF, PF, and CF flags according to the outcome of the operation. The AF flag is left undefined.

A series of instructions operates on bit strings. These instructions have the form:

OPCODE dest, index

where *dest* selects a bit string, either in memory or in a register, and *index* identifies the particular bit in the bit string that is the subject of the operation. The *index* value is either contained in a register or specified as an immediate value. If *dest* is a memory location, *index* is treated as a signed integer and can take on any value from $-2G$ through $+2G$. Instructions that operate on bit strings are BT, BTC, BTR, and BTS.

Instruction	Explanation
BT	Bit test (save the value of the selected bit in CF)
BTC	Bit test and complement (save bit, then complement <i>dest</i> bit)
BTR	Bit test and reset (save bit, then clear <i>dest</i> bit to 0)
BTS	Bit test and set (save bit, then set <i>dest</i> bit to 1)

Figure 4-4 shows bit indexing in these instructions.

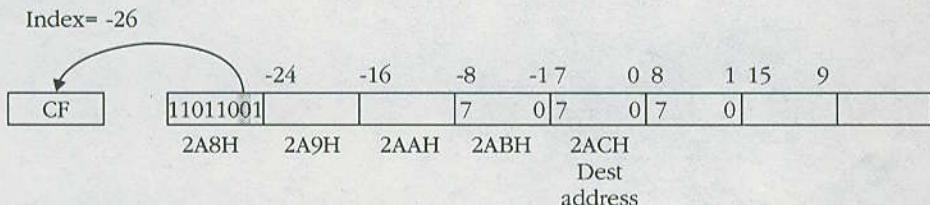


Figure 4-4. Bit indexing in BT instructions.

Two instructions search bit strings. These instructions have the form:

Instruction	Explanation
BSF <i>dest, src</i>	Bit scan forward
BSR <i>dest, src</i>	Bit scan reverse

where *src* indicates the location of a bit string. The *dest* operand must be a register that receives the index of the first nonzero bit. The *dest* operand can be only a 16-bit or 32-bit register and indicates whether the *src* operand is a 16-bit or 32-bit quantity. Figure 4-5 shows how these instructions work.

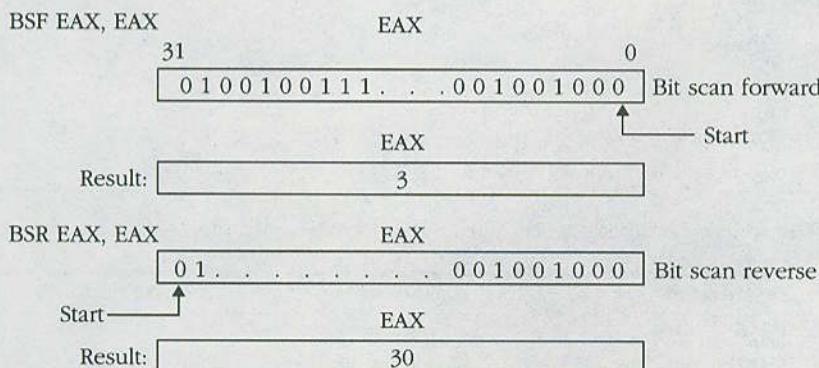


Figure 4-5. Bit scanning.

The final logical instructions are shift and rotate instructions. Figure 4-6 on the following page illustrates what shift and rotate instructions do.

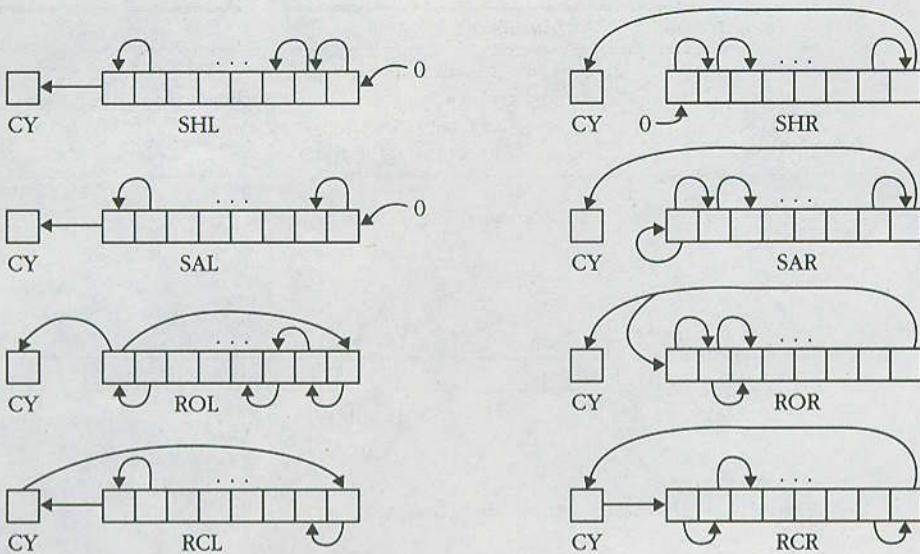


Figure 4-6. Shift and rotate instructions.

Most of these instructions have the form:

OPCODE *dest*, COUNT

The destination is either a memory reference or a register. The COUNT is either an immediate value or the CL register. The following instructions fit this format:

Instruction	Explanation
SHL	Shift left logical
SHR	Shift right logical
SAL	Shift arithmetic left
SAR	Shift arithmetic right
ROL	Rotate left
ROR	Rotate right
RCL	Rotate through carry left
RCR	Rotate through carry right

The following double shift instructions are also provided:

Instruction	Explanation
SHLD	<i>dest, src, COUNT</i> Shift left double
SHRD	<i>dest, src, COUNT</i> Shift right double

In the above instructions, the source and the destination are concatenated and shifted, and the result is truncated and stored in the destination operand. Figure 4-7 illustrates double shift instructions.

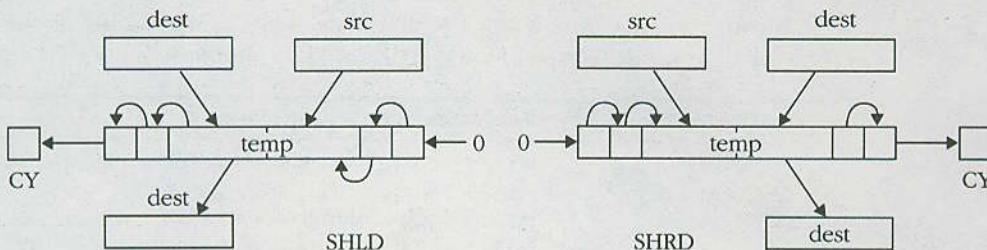


Figure 4-7. Double shifts.

Data transfer

Probably the most frequently used instructions are in the data transfer category. To the assembly programmer, a single instruction appears to do almost all the work. Actually, the MOV mnemonic is encoded into one of several opcodes, depending on the operands involved. The general form of the MOV instruction is:

MOV *dest, src*

Either the *dest* or the *src* operand can be a memory reference, but not both. Both operands can be registers, and the *src* operand can be an immediate value for most choices of *dest*. This instruction is not restricted to operating on the general registers. The MOV instruction is the only instruction you can use to read or modify the control registers (CR0–CR3) and the debug and test registers (DR0–DR7, TR6–TR7). You can also use the MOV instruction to load and store the segment registers DS, SS, ES, FS, and GS.

Not all possible combinations of *src* and *dest* are legal 80386 instructions. The restrictions are covered in Chapter 8.

Here are four additional data transfer instructions:

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
XCHG <i>dest, src</i>	Exchange the contents of the two operands
MOVSB <i>dest, src</i>	Move <i>src</i> into <i>dest</i> sign-extending <i>src</i>
MOVZB <i>dest, src</i>	Move <i>src</i> into <i>dest</i> zero-extending <i>src</i>
SETcc <i>dest</i>	Set <i>dest</i> to 0 or 1 depending on condition codes

The XCHG instruction takes two operands and swaps their contents. One operand must be a register; the other can be a register or a memory reference. Because this instruction is frequently used to implement semaphores, the hardware bus LOCK signal is asserted whenever one of the operands is a memory reference.

The MOVSB and MOVZB instructions are similar to MOV, but they take an *src* operand of a single byte and either sign-extend it (MOVSB) or zero-extend it (MOVZB) into a 16-bit or 32-bit integer at the *dest* location.

SETcc instructions move a 0 or a 1 into the destination, depending on the value of the condition codes in the EFLAGS register. The conditions supported are:

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
SETA <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if above (unsigned $x > y$) / CF = 0 & ZF = 0
SETAE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if above or equal / CF = 0
SETB <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if below (unsigned $x < y$) / CF = 1
SETBE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if below or equal / CF = 1 | ZF = 1
SETC <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if carry / CF = 1
SETE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if equal / ZF = 1
SETG <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if greater (signed $x > y$) / SF = OF & ZF = 0
SETGE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if greater or equal / SF = OF
SETL <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if less (signed $x < y$) / SF! = OF
SETLE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if less or equal / SF! = OF and ZF = 1
SETNA <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not above (SETBE)
SETNAE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not above or equal (SETB)
SETNB <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not below (SETAE)
SETNBE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not below or equal (SETA)
SETNC <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if no carry / CF = 0
SETNE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not equal / ZF = 0
SETNG <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not greater (SETLE)
SETNGE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not greater or equal (SETL)
SETNL <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not less (SETGE)
SETNLE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not less or equal / SF = OF & ZF = 0
SETNO <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if no overflow / OF = 0
SETNP <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if no parity / PF = 0
SETNS <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if no sign / SF = 0
SETNZ <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if not 0 / ZF = 0
SETO <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if overflow / OF = 1
SETP <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if parity / PF = 1
SETPE <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if parity even / PF = 1
SETPO <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if parity odd / PF = 0
SETS <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if sign / SF = 1
SETZ <i>dest</i>	Set to 1 if 0 / ZF = 1

Stack

The stack instructions store and retrieve data from the stack. The PUSH instruction writes its operand to the stack, and the POP instruction removes the top-of-stack element and stores it in the location specified by its operand.

The PUSHAD and POPAD instructions require no operands and save or restore all the general registers to the stack. Figure 4-8 shows the stack after a PUSHAD has been executed. Although PUSHAD stores the value of the ESP register, POPAD does not reload ESP from the saved image. The new ESP value is always the old ESP value plus the number of bytes required to store the general register context.

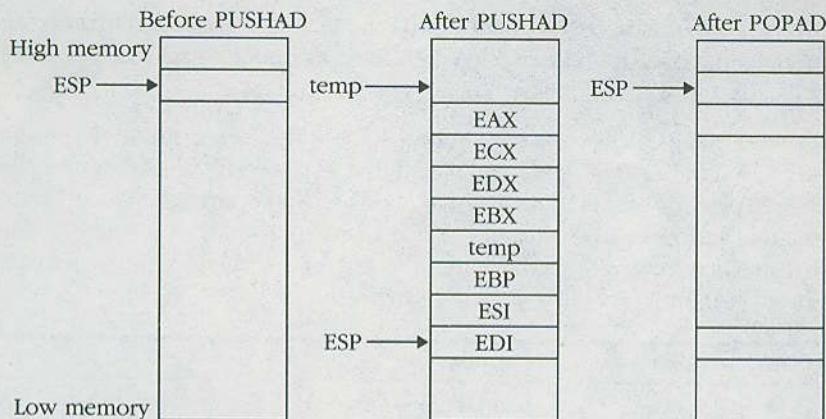


Figure 4-8. *PUSHAD* context.

Control transfer

Control transfer instructions affect the flow of execution. Normally, an instruction is fetched from the address held in the `EIP` register, and then `EIP` is incremented by the size of the instruction so that it points to the next instruction. The new opcode is fetched, and the cycle continues.

The 80386 supports branch instructions, which alter `EIP`, and subroutine call instructions, which save the old `EIP` and then modify it. The software interrupt instruction is similar to the subroutine call except that an interrupt number is specified for `EIP` rather than a new value. The address of the destination routine is then determined by a gate in the `IDT`. Figure 4-9 shows how `JMP` and `CALL` instructions affect the flow of execution.

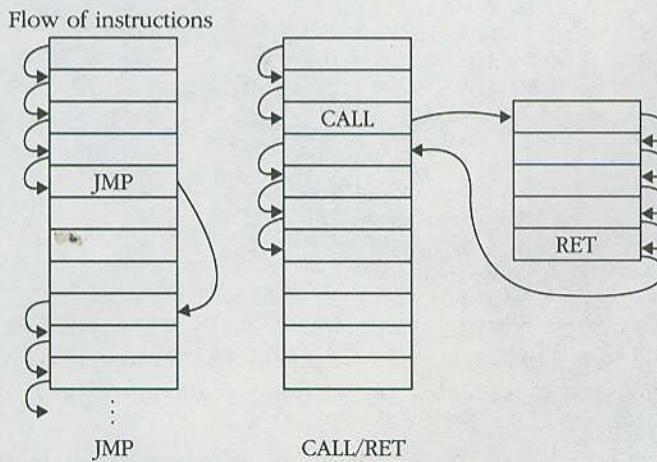


Figure 4-9. *JMP* and *CALL* instructions.

Branch instructions exist in both conditional and unconditional forms. Unconditional jumps occur immediately when the appropriate instruction is encountered. All calls and software interrupts are unconditional.

Conditional branches test certain bits in the EFLAGS register to determine whether to branch or not. These bits are usually set as the result of a compare instruction (CMP) or as the result of an arithmetic or a logical operation. These branches are to relative addresses; the offset is a \pm displacement from the current EIP. The following list shows the conditions that can be tested for and the mnemonic for each instruction.

Instruction		Explanation
JA	offset	Jump above (unsigned $x > y$) / CF = 0 & ZF = 0
JAE	offset	Jump above or equal / CF = 0
JB	offset	Jump below (unsigned $x < y$) / CF = 1
JBE	offset	Jump below or equal / CF = 1 | ZF = 1
JC	offset	Jump if carry / CF = 1
JCXZ	offset	Jump if CX = 0
JECXZ	offset	Jump if ECX = 0
JE	offset	Jump equal / ZF = 1
JG	offset	Jump greater (signed $x > y$) / SF = OF & ZF = 0
JGE	offset	Jump greater or equal / SF = OF
JL	offset	Jump less (signed $x < y$) / SF != OF & ZF = 0
JLE	offset	Jump less or equal / SF != OF
JNA	offset	Jump not above (JBE)
JNAE	offset	Jump not above or equal (JB)
JNB	offset	Jump not below (JAE)
JNBE	offset	Jump not below or equal (JA)
JNC	offset	Jump no carry / CF = 0
JNE	offset	Jump not equal / ZF = 0
JNG	offset	Jump not greater SF != OF & ZF = 1
JNGE	offset	Jump not greater or equal (JL)
JNL	offset	Jump not less (JGE)
JNLE	offset	Jump not less or equal (JG)
JNO	offset	Jump no overflow / OF = 0
JNP	offset	Jump no parity / PF = 0
JNS	offset	Jump no sign / SF = 0
JNZ	offset	Jump not 0 / ZF = 0
JO	offset	Jump if overflow / OF = 1
JP	offset	Jump if parity / PF = 1
JPE	offset	Jump parity even / PF = 1
JPO	offset	Jump parity odd / PF = 0
JS	offset	Jump if sign / SF = 1
JZ	offset	Jump if 0 / ZF = 1

Three other conditional branch instructions are the loop instructions. Loop instructions decrement the ECX register and branch if the conditions outlined in the following list are met.

Instruction	Explanation
LOOP <i>offset</i>	Decrement, branch if ECX != 0
LOOPZ <i>offset</i>	Decrement, branch if ECX != 0 and ZF = 1
LOOPNZ <i>offset</i>	Decrement, branch if ECX != 0 and ZF = 0

LOOPE and LOOPNE are synonyms for LOOPZ and LOOPNZ.

String

String instructions handle large blocks of memory with ease. A string instruction can move a block from one location in memory to another, compare one block with another, or search a string for a specific value. String instructions use specific registers for storing operands. DS and ESI always point to the source memory block. ES and EDI point to the destination. These pointers are incremented (or decremented) by the size of the operand (1, 2, or 4 bytes) every time the string instruction executes.

The direction flag (DF) determines whether the source and the destination pointers are incremented or decremented. When the direction flag is 0, the addresses are incremented. When the flag is 1, addresses are decremented. The string instructions provide the following capabilities:

Instruction	Explanation
MOVS	Move string—copy string at DS:ESI to ES:EDI
CMPS	Compare string—compare DS:ESI to ES:EDI
STOS	Store the accumulator at ES:EDI
LODS	Load the accumulator with DS:ESI
SCAS	Scan string, compare DS:ESI with accumulator

You can execute any of these instructions repeatedly by placing a count value in the ECX register and preceding the string instruction with the REP prefix. The compare and scan instructions, which modify the flag bits, can also be prefixed by the REPE (repeat while equal) and REPNE (repeat while not equal) instructions, allowing fast compare and search operations.

Pointer manipulation

Pointer manipulation instructions load a 48-bit pointer into any pair of the segment and general registers. The format of these instructions is:

L_{xx} *reg*, *mem*

where *xx* stands for the segment register (SS, DS, ES, FS, or GS), *reg* is any general register, and *mem* is a memory operand.

The LEA (load effective address) instruction computes 32-bit addresses. LEA loads a 32-bit register with the address defined by the memory operand, which is unusual because other instructions operate on the value stored at the memory operand.

location. The following example shows how to use the LEA instruction to compute a pointer:

```
VECTOR DD      20 DUP (?)      ; Array of 20 elements
        MOV    EAX, 9      ; Array index
        LEA    EAX, VECTOR[EAX*4] ; Get pointer to 9th array element
        PUSH   EAX      ; Push pointer on stack
        CALL   MYSUBR    ; Invoke subroutine
```

Because the LEA instruction essentially performs only additions and shifts on the values of the displacement and the base and index registers, it can perform simple multiplications faster than the hardware multiply instructions can. For a value stored in a general register (such as EAX in the sample operations), these operations can be performed:

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
LEA EAX, [EAX* 2]	Multiply by 2 (index)
LEA EAX, [EAX+EAX* 2]	Multiply by 3 (base + index)
LEA EAX, [EAX* 4]	Multiply by 4 (index)
LEA EAX, [EAX+EAX* 4]	Multiply by 5 (base + index)
LEA EAX, [EAX* 8]	Multiply by 8 (index)
LEA EAX, [EAX+EAX* 8]	Multiply by 9 (base + index)

Using the LEA instruction in this way does not affect the flags. You cannot tell when arithmetic overflow has occurred, when the result is 0, and so on. Use LEA only to compute addresses such as array or structure indexes where overflow is not likely to occur. You can also view the LEA instruction as an addition instruction with four operands instead of two. The content of the index register is added to the base register and the displacement. By treating the displacement simply as a constant, the following formula expresses the action of LEA:

$$\text{dest reg} \leftarrow \text{index reg} + \text{base reg} + \text{const}$$

For example, the result of the LEA ECX, [EAX][ESI][3] instruction is equivalent to the following operations:

```
MOV    ECX, EAX
ADD    ECX, ESI
ADD    ECX, 3
```

Input/Output

Because I/O ports are usually connected to system devices, it is important to protect against indiscriminate access to them. Secure system routines that run with I/O privilege (CPL \leq IOPL) may execute any I/O instruction. A less privileged task may execute an I/O instruction; however, a general protection fault (interrupt 13) will occur unless the operating system has granted the task permission to access the specific port(s). The operating system grants permission by setting the appropriate bits in the I/O permission bitmap of the task's TSS.

Both the input and output instructions have three forms. The simplest form is:

IN	<i>acc, port</i>
OUT	<i>port, acc</i>

where *acc* is one of the accumulator registers (AL, AX, or EAX) and *port* is a value from 0 to 0FFH. These instructions can be used to address only the first 256 I/O addresses, and the 80386 supports as many as 65,536 I/O ports. To access the entire range, use the following form of the instructions:

IN	<i>acc, DX</i>
OUT	<i>DX, acc</i>

In the above instructions, the I/O address is contained in the DX register.

String instructions are the third type of I/O instructions. INS (input string) takes input from the port specified by DX and stores the result at ES:EDI, adjusting EDI according to the direction flag bit. OUTS (output string) reads the value at DS:ESI and writes it to the port specified by DX. INS and OUTS can be prefixed by the REP instruction, which causes the I/O instruction to repeat until ECX is decremented to 0.

Prefix

Prefix instructions precede other 80386 instructions. Prefixes modify the action of the instructions they precede. You can apply more than one prefix to an instruction.

The most commonly used prefixes are the repeat prefixes, discussed previously with the string instructions. If a repeat prefix is applied to any instruction other than a string instruction, an undefined opcode fault (interrupt 6) occurs. The following table lists the repeat prefix instructions:

Instruction	Explanation
REP	Repeat until ECX = 0
REPE / REPZ	Repeat until ECX = 0 or ZF = 0
REPNE / REPNZ	Repeat until ECX = 0 or ZF = 1

You can apply a segment override prefix to almost any memory reference instruction. Each of the six segment registers has a prefix instruction. The override forces the memory reference of the modified instruction to the segment specified by the prefix rather than to the default segment. The following table lists segment override prefixes:

Prefix	Explanation
CS:	Refer to the code segment
SS:	Refer to the stack segment
DS:	Refer to the data segment
ES:	Refer to the segment pointed to by ES
FS:	Refer to the segment pointed to by FS
GS:	Refer to the segment pointed to by GS

For example, the instruction `MOV EAX, [42H]` copies the dword at offset 42H of the data segment into EAX. When the instruction is prefixed with `SS:`, the dword is read from the stack segment. Most assemblers let you specify the prefix before the instruction or as part of the instruction. For example:

```
SS:  
MOV EAX, [42H]
```

or

```
MOV EAX, SS:[42H]
```

The only memory reference instructions that cannot be prefixed by a segment override are `SCAS`, `STOS`, and `INS`. These are string instructions that operate on memory at `ES:[EDI]`. When a prefix instruction is applied to any other string instruction, it overrides the `DS:[ESI]` pointer only. The `MOVS` and `CMPSS` string instructions have both a source (`ESI`) and a destination (`EDI`) pointer and are allowed a single prefix instruction that overrides the `DS:[ESI]` pointer.

You can apply the `LOCK` prefix to any of the following instructions when reading or modifying a memory location:

```
ADC, ADD, AND, BT, BTC, BTR, BTS, DEC, INC, NEG, NOT, OR,  
SBB, SUB, XCHG, XOR
```

The `LOCK` prefix asserts the hardware signal `LOCK\`, which ensures exclusive access to a memory location in a multiprocessor environment.

The assembler usually inserts two additional prefix instructions, but Intel does not give them mnemonics. I call them `OPSIZ` (operand size prefix) and `ADRSIZ` (address size prefix).

`OPSIZ` toggles the operand word size of the processor for the next instruction. Normally, the machine word size is 32 bits. Prefixing a 32-bit instruction with `OPSIZ` converts it to a 16-bit instruction. Similarly, when code is run in 8086-compatible or 80286-compatible mode, the default machine word size is 16 bits; applying the `OPSIZ` prefix converts a 16-bit instruction to a 32-bit instruction.

In real mode, virtual 8086 mode, and 80286-compatible mode, the byte `40H` is interpreted as `INC AX`, but in native (32-bit) mode, it is interpreted as `INC EAX`. To increment the `AX` register in native mode, you must prefix the instruction byte with the `OPSIZ` instruction. The assembler does all the work, however. If you enter the instruction `INC AX` in a native mode code segment, the assembler generates the bytes `66H` and `40H`. The following table illustrates the bytes that the assembler generates.

Opcode Generation in Different Modes

Native Mode	Real, Virtual, or 80286-compatible Mode
<code>INC AX → 66H, 40H</code>	<code>INC AX → 40H</code>
<code>INC EAX → 40H</code>	<code>INC EAX → 66H, 40H</code>

Similarly, the ADRSIZ prefix toggles between 16-bit addressing and 32-bit addressing. This prefix is useful for programmers writing 80386 code that will run under a 16-bit operating system. In 16-bit mode (real, virtual, or 80286-compatible), memory offsets are limited to 16 bits, and more rules restrict which registers you can use as base and index values in generating addresses. These restrictions are listed in Appendix D. The ADRSIZ toggle lets you use the full addressing capabilities of the 80386.

If you use 32-bit addressing under a 16-bit operating system, be consistent about register usage. For example, a programmer who wants to use the scaled index feature of the 80386 in a program that runs under MS-DOS might code the following instruction sequence:

```
; Increment each member of an array of 16-bit integers
MOV     CX, count      ; Get size of array
L1:    INC     array-2[ECX*2] ; Increment array element
      LOOP   L1           ; Decrement index, branch if not 0
```

These instructions would probably not work because the scaled address feature requires the full 32-bit ECX register and the programmer has loaded only the 16-bit CX register. The value of the high-order 16 bits is unknown. The correct approach is:

```
; Increment each member of an array of 16-bit integers
MOVZX  ECX, count      ; Get array size, zero-extend into ECX
L1:    INC     array-2[ECX*2] ; Increment array element
      LOOP   L1           ; Decrement index, branch if not 0
```

System

Application programs do not execute system instructions. In some cases, system instructions cannot be executed unless the process has a high privilege level. The following table lists system instructions. More detailed information about these instructions is given in Chapter 8.

Instruction	Explanation	
LGDT	<i>mem</i>	Load GDT base address and limit
SGDT	<i>mem</i>	Store GDT base and limit
LIDT	<i>mem</i>	Load IDT base address and limit
SIDT	<i>mem</i>	Store IDT base and limit
LTR	<i>src</i>	Load a selector into the task register
STR	<i>dest</i>	Store the TR selector
LLDT	<i>src</i>	Load a selector into the LDT register
SLDT	<i>dest</i>	Store the LDT selector
VERR	<i>reg, dest</i>	Verify Read access for <i>dest</i> selector
VERW	<i>reg, dest</i>	Verify write access for <i>dest</i> selector
LAR	<i>reg, dest</i>	Load access rights for <i>dest</i> selector
LSL	<i>reg, dest</i>	Load limit for <i>dest</i> segment
ARPL	<i>dest, src</i>	Adjust privilege level for <i>dest</i>
HLT		Halt the CPU until reset or interrupt

Miscellaneous

A few instructions don't fit into any category. For example, the NOP instruction performs no operation.

The WAIT instruction tests the hardware pin called READY\|. If the READY\| pin is not active, the CPU waits until it becomes active. If the 80386 is waiting, it continues to respond to hardware interrupts; however, it returns to the WAIT after the interrupt completes. The 80287 and 80387 hold READY\| inactive while they perform floating-point operations. You should execute a WAIT instruction before you use the result of a floating-point computation to ensure that the coprocessor has finished execution.

Floating-Point Extensions

As discussed in Chapter 2, the 80387 NDP extends the instruction set of the 80386 by providing hardware support for floating-point operations. Unlike the 80386, the 80387 programming model is a stack-oriented model rather than the two-operand register/memory model. Most arithmetic instructions can be specified in three ways: with no operands, with a single operand, or with two operands. Following are some examples that illustrate the floating-point addition instructions.

Instruction	Explanation
FADD	No operands
FADD ST(3)	Single-stack operand
FADD [EBP+6]	Single-memory operand
FADD ST(2), ST	Two operands

When no operands are specified, the operands are implicit. The following pseudocode illustrates what happens when no operand is specified:

```
temp <- pop()
ST <- ST <function> temp
```

When a single operand is specified, the top of stack is implicitly the first operand, so the instruction becomes:

```
ST <- ST <function> op
```

When two operands are specified, both operands must be 80387 registers, and one must be the top of stack. You can store the result of the operation in either register, which you designate by making it the first operand.

```
op1 <- op1 <function> op2
```

Several instructions have a form that discards the current top of stack after the function is performed. A suffix of P (for pop) is added to the instruction mnemonic. For example, the instruction:

```
FMULP ST(3), ST
```

causes the top of stack and ST(3) to be multiplied and stores the result in ST(3). Then the top of stack is discarded, leaving the newly created value at ST(2).

Load and store

The load instructions push a new value onto the top of the 80387 stack, but the store instructions do not pop a value off unless explicitly indicated. The relevant instructions are:

Instruction		Explanation
FBLD	<i>mem</i>	Push an 80-bit BCD integer
FILD	<i>mem</i>	Push a 16-, 32-, or 64-bit integer
FLD	ST(n)	Push a copy of a value already loaded
FLD	<i>mem</i>	Push a 32-, 64-, or 80-bit real
FLD1		Push 1.0
FLDL2E		Push $\log_2 e$
FLDL2T		Push $\log_2 10$
FLDLG2		Push $\log_{10} 2$
FLDLN2		Push $\log_e 2$
FLDPI		Push π
FLDZ		Push 0.0
FBSTP	<i>mem</i>	Store ST in an 80-bit packed BCD integer and pop (discard from stack)
FIST	<i>mem</i>	Store ST in a 16- or 32-bit integer
FISTP	<i>mem</i>	Store ST in a 16-, 32-, or 64-bit integer and pop
FST	ST(n)	Store a copy of ST in ST(n)
FST	<i>mem</i>	Store ST in a 32- or 64-bit real
FSTP	<i>mem</i>	Store ST in a 32-, 64-, or 80-bit real and pop

Because the coprocessor operates in parallel with the 80386 and because 80386 instructions generally execute more rapidly than 80387 operations, issue a WAIT (or FWAIT) instruction before using the result of a floating-point store operation. This ensures that the NDP has written to memory and that the 80386 code can access the value.

Arithmetic

The following table lists the arithmetic operations that the 80387 performs. See Chapter 8 for a description of the types of operands that each instruction supports.

Instruction		Explanation
F2XM1		Compute 2^{ST-1} where $-1 \leq ST \leq 1$
FABS		Take absolute value of ST
FADD	<i>lop(s)</i>	Add two floating-point numbers
FADDP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Add <i>op1</i> and <i>op2</i> , pop stack
FIADD	<i>mem</i>	Add 16- or 32-bit integer to ST
FCHS		Change the sign of ST
FCOM	<i>op</i>	Compare ST with <i>op</i> (register or memory)

(continued)

continued

Instruction		Explanation
FCOMP	<i>op</i>	Compare ST with <i>op</i> and pop
FCOMPP		Compare ST with ST(1), pop both
FICOM	<i>mem</i>	Compare ST with 16- or 32-bit integer
FICOMP	<i>mem</i>	Compare with integer and pop
FUCOM	<i>op</i>	Compare allowing quiet NaNs
FUCOMP	<i>op</i>	Like FCOMP
FUCOMPP	<i>op</i>	Like FCOMPP
FCOS		Cosine of ST
FDIV	<i>[op(s)]</i>	Floating-point divide
FDIVP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Divide <i>op1</i> by <i>op2</i> , pop
FIDIV	<i>mem</i>	Divide ST by 16- or 32-bit integer
FDIVR	<i>[op(s)]</i>	Reverse divide (<i>op2</i> by <i>op1</i>)
FDIVRP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Reverse divide <i>op2</i> by <i>op1</i> and pop
FIDIVR	<i>mem</i>	Divide integer by ST
FMUL	<i>[op(s)]</i>	Floating-point multiply
FMULP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Multiply <i>op1</i> by <i>op2</i> and pop stack
FIMUL	<i>mem</i>	Multiply ST by 16- or 32-bit integer
FPATAN		Arctangent of ST(1)/ST
FPREM		Partial remainder of ST/ST(1)
FPREM1		Compute partial remainder to IEEE spec
FPTAN		Compute tangent of ST, push(1.0)
FRNDINT		Round ST to integer
FSCALE		Multiply ST by $2^{ST(1)}$
FSIN		Compute sine of ST
FSINCOS		temp = ST, ST = sin(temp), push(cos(temp))
FSQRT		Take the square root of ST
FSUB	<i>[op(s)]</i>	Floating-point subtraction
FSUBP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Subtract <i>op2</i> from <i>op1</i> and pop
FISUB	<i>mem</i>	Subtract 16- or 32-bit integer from ST
FSUBR	<i>[op(s)]</i>	Reverse subtraction
FSUBRP	<i>op1, op2</i>	Subtract <i>op1</i> from <i>op2</i> and pop stack
FISUBR	<i>mem</i>	Subtract ST from 16- or 32-bit integer
FTST		Compare ST against 0.0
FXAM		Examine ST and set condition codes
FXTRACT		Decompose ST to exponent and significand, ST = exponent, push significand
FYL2X		$ST(1) = ST(1) \times \log_2 ST$, pop stack
FYL2XP1		$ST(1) = ST(1) \times \log_2(ST + 1)$, pop stack

Control

Control instructions save or alter the state of the NDP. Some have a special "no wait" form, indicated by the letter N as the second character of the mnemonic. The "no wait" instructions execute without the implicit WAIT that occurs between two floating-point instructions.

Normally a WAIT instruction is implied before every coprocessor operation. The two instruction streams that follow are equivalent.

FADD	ST(3), ST	WAIT
FMUL	ST(1)	FADD ST(3), ST
		WAIT
		FMUL ST(1)

WAIT causes the 80386 to check the hardware ERROR\ signal asserted by the NDP if unmasked exceptions have occurred. If a coprocessor error is signaled, a floating-point exception (interrupt 16) occurs. "No wait" instructions allow you to save the NDP state without worrying about processing any floating-point exceptions.

The processor state of the 80387 is held in the registers discussed in Chapter 3. Some of these registers are addressable individually, but others, such as the tag word and error pointer registers, are not. The combination of the control word, status word, and error pointers is called the *environment*. The instructions for loading and storing this processor state in the memory format are outlined in Figure 4-10.

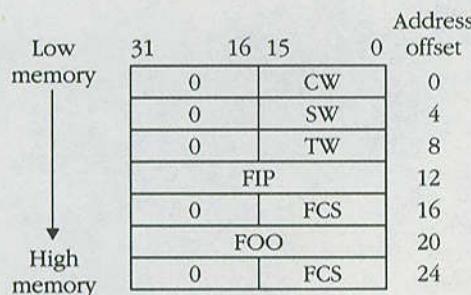


Figure 4-10. Environment layout.

The following table lists the 80387's control instructions and their functions.

Instruction	Explanation
F[N]CLEX	Clear all exception flags
FDECSTP	Decrement the TOP field in the CW
FFREE ST(n)	Mark ST(n) as unused
FINCSTP	Increment the control word TOP field
F[N]INIT	Initialize the NDP
FLDCW <i>mem</i>	Load the control word register
FLDENV <i>mem</i>	Load the floating-point environment
FNOP	No operation
FRSTOR <i>mem</i>	Reload the entire 80387 machine state
F[N]SAVE	Store the entire 80387 state to memory
F[N]STCW	Store the control word to memory
F[N]STENV	Store the floating-point environment
F[N]STSWSW	Store the status word
F[N]STSWSW AX	Copy the status word to 80386 AX

The entire NDP state, including all registers, tags, and pointers, must be saved and restored when multitasking between two or more programs that rely on the 80387. The FSAVE and FRSTOR instructions load and save the memory image shown in Figure 4-11.

The memory images described in Figure 4-11 are slightly different in a system using the 80287. See Appendix F for information pertaining to the 80287.

31	0	Address offset
0	CW	0
0	SW	4
0	TW	8
FIP		12
0	FCS	16
FOO		20
0	FCS	24
ST(0) 0..31		28
ST(0) 32..63		32
ST(1) 0..15	ST(0) 64..79	36
ST(1) 16..47		40
ST(1) 48..79		44
ST(2) 0..31		48
ST(2) 32..63		52
ST(3) 0..15	ST(2) 64..79	56
ST(3) 16..47		60
ST(3) 48..79		64
ST(4) 0..31		68
ST(4) 32..63		72
ST(5) 0..15	ST(4) 64..79	76
ST(5) 16..47		80
ST(5) 48..79		84
ST(6) 0..31		88
ST(6) 32..63		92
ST(7) 0..15	ST(6) 64..79	96
ST(7) 16..47		100
ST(7) 48..79		104

Figure 4-11. FSAVE and FRSTOR memory layout.

THE 80386 PROTECTION MECHANISM

The role of computers in society is becoming more and more significant. Computers process our financial transactions, count our votes at election time, control medical equipment, and more. As our dependency on computers grows, we need systems that can process multiple tasks and maintain reliability at the same time.

In support of these goals, Intel designers implemented the protected virtual address mode (protected mode) on the 80286. Protected mode allows multiple applications to run concurrently but isolates them from one another so that failures in one application do not affect any other application. Although it was possible to implement multitasking on previous Intel microprocessors, every application had access to all portions of the system. A flaw in one application could easily crash the entire system or corrupt data associated with another task.

The 80386 is the second Intel processor to support protected mode. However, the 80386's capabilities are extended by use of 32-bit addressing. This chapter discusses how the 80386 protection mechanism works, including privilege levels, task separation, and how virtual addressing is used to support the protection model.

Selectors

The central feature of the 80386 protection mechanism is the *selector*. Rather than directly accessing any part of the system, a program deals with a selector, which grants access to a system object. Associated with each object is information about it, for example, the object's location, size, and type, and any restrictions on its use.

This information is not stored in the selector for two reasons. The selector would be very large, and passing it from routine to routine would take a lot of computer time. More importantly, keeping the object information in a separate location prevents an unscrupulous or errant program from corrupting the information.

A selector is like a sealed envelope. Inside the envelope is important data that must be kept secure. Like a messenger permitted only to see envelopes and pass them to other messengers, a program can store and retrieve selectors and pass them to other routines. Only the operating system has access to the data inside the envelope, which on the 80386 is called a *descriptor*.

Descriptors

Aptly named, descriptors describe a system object in detail. Memory segments, as illustrated in Chapter 3, are one kind of system object. Other system objects include tables that support the protection mechanism, special segments that store the processor state, and access control objects called gates.

Descriptors are grouped in descriptor tables. By examining a selector, the 80386 hardware determines which descriptor is associated with the selector and with the object to which the descriptor points. One item that the descriptor indicates is the privilege level of the object. This value is stored in the DPL field of the descriptor. When a program requests access to a system object with a selector, one of the following happens:

- Access is denied. If the request violates a rule of the protection mechanism (more on this later), control passes from the program to a designated routine in the operating system. The operating system usually terminates the process.
- Access is permitted but impossible to grant. For example, if the object is not currently in memory, an operating system routine is called that swaps the object into memory and returns control to the program. The program is then permitted to retry access to the object.
- Access is granted at the requested privilege level.

Privilege

The 80386 processor supports four levels of increasing privilege, numbered 3, 2, 1, and 0. Privilege level 0 is the most privileged level.

The privilege level of the selector in the CS register identifies the precedence of the currently executing routine and is called the *current privilege level* (CPL). For reliability, only the most trustworthy and crash-resistant code in the operating system should run at the most privileged level (CPL = 0). Applications that might fail or compromise the integrity of the system should run at the lowest priority (CPL = 3).

Because the number of programs that can run at high privilege levels diminishes near level 0 and because level 0 code is likely to exist only in the core of the operating system, the classic illustration of the privilege system is one of concentric rings, as shown in Figure 5-1.

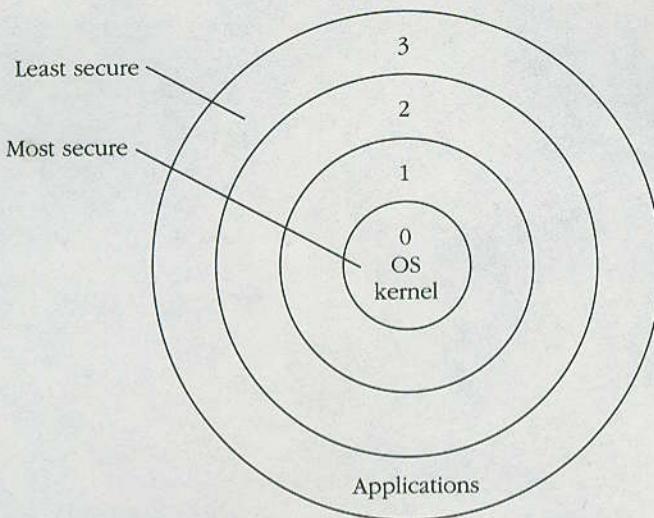


Figure 5-1. *Privilege rings.*

The concentric ring image is so well integrated into the understanding of privilege that programmers often speak of code that runs “in ring 0” or “in ring 3”—another way of saying that the CPL of the procedure is 0 or 3. Every system object (that is, everything referred to by a descriptor) is associated with a privilege level and “resides” in a particular ring.

The word *privilege* connotes rights or advantages not normally granted. On the 80386, procedures running in the innermost rings can access data objects in the outer rings (which have less privilege), but outer-ring procedures cannot access objects with greater privilege. In addition, to prevent the operating system from crashing due to bad code, procedures cannot call other procedures that might be less reliable (procedures in outer rings).

For example, a procedure running in ring 1 may access a data segment residing in ring 2 or ring 3 but is prevented from accessing a segment whose privilege level is 0. A ring 1 procedure, however, cannot invoke a subroutine residing in ring 2 or ring 3, nor can it call one in ring 0. Figure 5-2 on the following page illustrates this concept.

An operating system does not need to support all four privilege levels. UNIX systems, for example, typically implement only two levels, 0 and 3. OS/2 supports three levels: The operating system code runs in ring 0, applications run in ring 3, and special routines that need access to I/O devices run in ring 2.

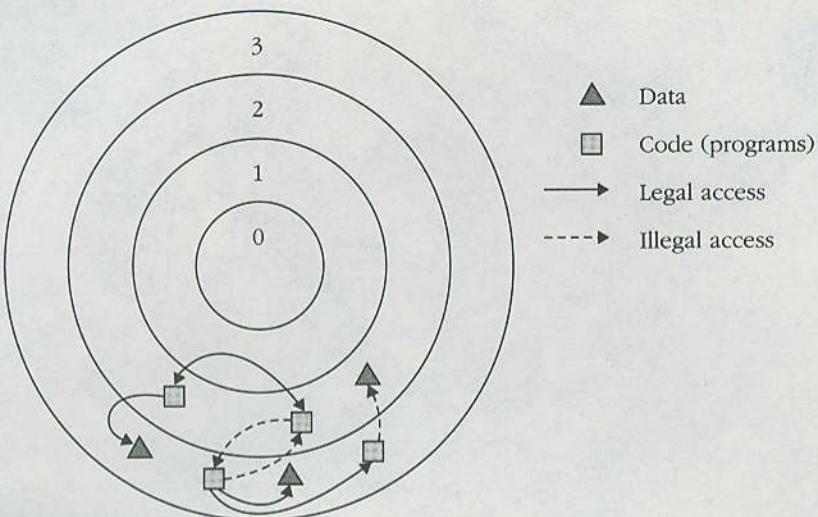


Figure 5-2. Access between rings.

Interlevel communication

As a security measure, concentric rings of privilege work well, but the possibility exists that an application running in ring 3 might need service from the operating system. The operating system, however, though omnipotent in ring 0, is not accessible to the application. The application, in effect, might say, "Oh most great and worthy of operating systems, please grant me, thy humble and obedient servant, additional RAM for my stack," but because of the access restrictions it has no way of calling on the operating system.

Various cultures have established a priesthood whose job is to act as intermediator, but the Intel design engineers apparently despaired of fitting something that complicated into only 250,000 transistors, so they resorted to something simpler. It's called a gate.

Gates

A gate is a system object (that is, it has its own descriptor) that points to a procedure in a code segment, but the gate has a privilege level separate from that of the code segment. Figure 5-3 shows how this changes the legal subroutine call path.

A gate allows execute-only access to a routine in an inner ring from a less privileged procedure. The restriction on outward calls, however, remains in force. The 80386 supports four types of gates: *call*, *interrupt*, *trap*, and *task*. Call gates are invoked via the standard subroutine call instruction. Interrupt gates and trap gates are invoked by the INT instruction or by hardware interrupts. Task gates are invoked by JMP, CALL, or INT instructions or by hardware interrupts.

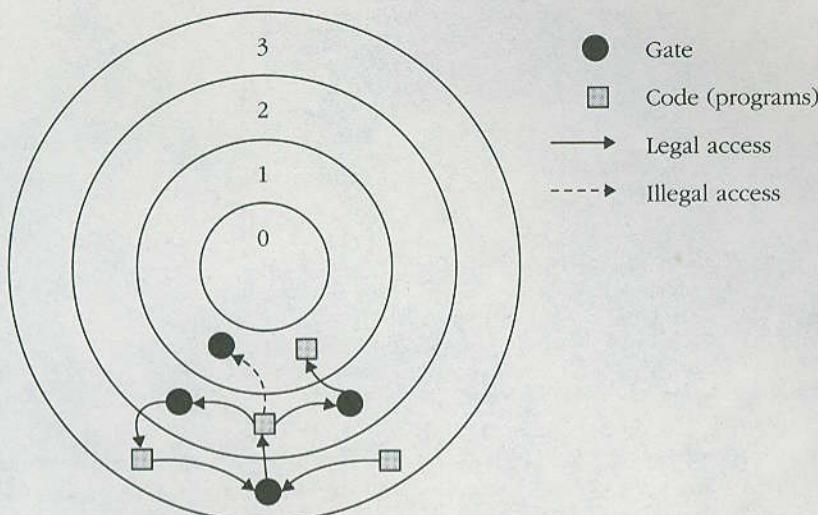


Figure 5-3. Call paths through gates.

In a standard subroutine call, the return address and any parameters are stored on the stack, and execution continues at the start of the subroutine. When invoking a subroutine through a gate, the privilege level of the executing routine changes to the level of the code segment to which the gate points. When the subroutine returns, the privilege level is set back to that of the calling procedure. For example, an application executing in ring 3 might call the operating system to allocate some memory. The operating system code runs in ring 0, and a call gate in ring 3 points to the allocation routine.

This approach solves the communication problem but introduces another one. Because the return address (and possibly some system call parameters) is on the stack and the stack is a ring 3 (application) data segment, the address and parameters are no longer secure. The application could corrupt them while the operating system is processing the request. To solve this problem, part of the stack is copied to a more privileged stack segment as it moves through the gate, as shown in Figure 5-4 on the following page. Each call gate descriptor contains a field called the dword count, which indicates the number of 32-bit stack words to copy from the outer-ring stack to the inner-ring stack.

Every application must have as many stack segments as there are privilege levels in the operating environment under which it is running. If this seems excessive, remember that you can use the virtual memory capability of the 80386 to your advantage. An application can have descriptors for more than one stack segment, but stack segments can be marked as not present and never take up any physical memory if they are not used.

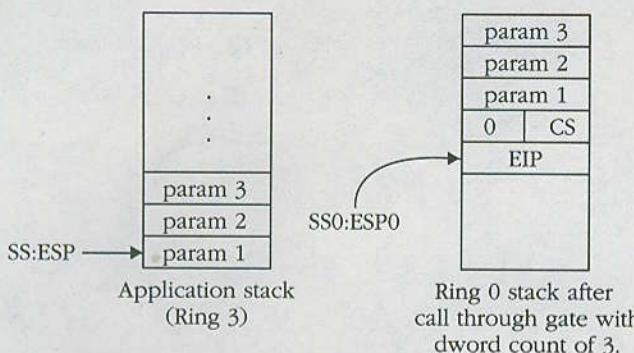


Figure 5-4. Stack privilege increase.

If the idea of four stack segments has you flipping back to the 80386 register diagram looking for additional registers, you won't find them. The active stack pointer is held in the SS and ESP registers. The others are stored in a system object called the *task state segment*, or TSS.

Task state segments

A TSS is a special memory segment that the 80386 uses to support multitasking. Its format is outlined in Figure 5-5, and it contains a copy of all the registers that must be saved to preserve the state of a task. It also contains values that are associated with the task but that are not stored in CPU registers.

The TSS contains three additional stack segment selectors (SS0, SS1, and SS2) and three stack pointers (ESP0, ESP1, and ESP2), as shown in Figure 5-5. When a call or interrupt through a gate causes a change in privilege, the new SS and ESP are loaded from the TSS. The task register (TR) contains the selector of the currently active TSS.

When a task switch occurs, all the executing task's registers are saved in the active TSS. The task register is then loaded with the selector of a new TSS, and each general register is loaded with the values from the new TSS. Other fields in the TSS and multitasking are discussed later in this chapter.

Descriptor tables

As mentioned earlier, the descriptors for the memory segments, TSSs, gates, and other system objects are grouped into descriptor tables. The three types of descriptor tables are: the interrupt descriptor table (IDT), the global descriptor table (GDT), and the local descriptor tables (LDTs).

The IDT contains descriptors that relate to hardware and software interrupts. A special register, IDTR, contains the linear base address and size (limit) of the IDT. The IDT is discussed in detail later in this chapter in the section "Interrupts and Exceptions."

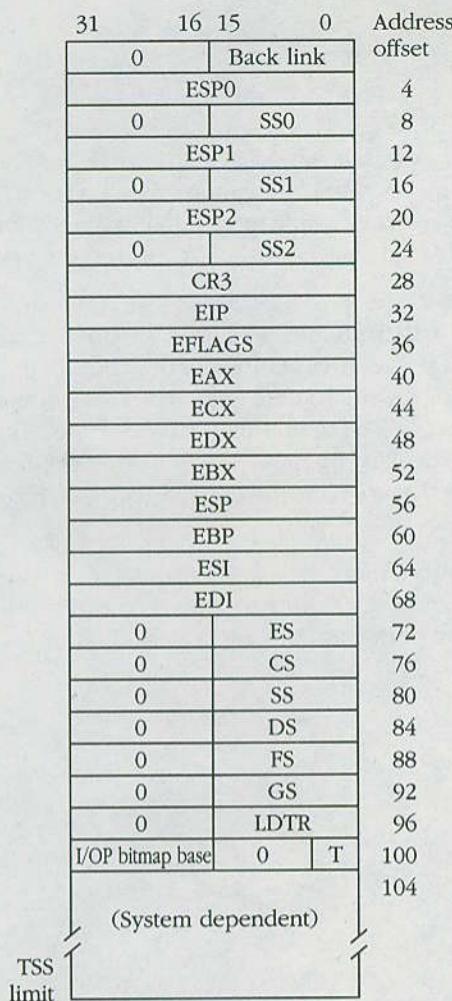


Figure 5-5. Task state segment (TSS).

The GDT is the primary descriptor table. The GDTR register contains the linear base address and limit of the GDT. Important descriptors that the operating system uses reside in the GDT. An operating system can be built using only the GDT and the IDT. The LDTs, however, provide an additional layer of protection and are helpful in building reliable systems.

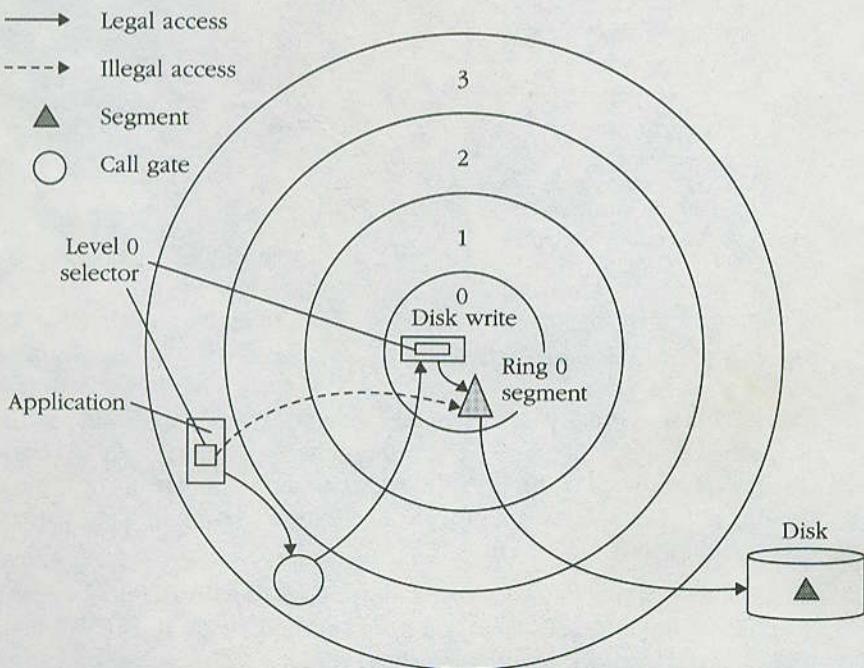
The following illustration shows the mechanism used to identify a descriptor given a 16-bit selector. The selector is composed of three fields: the index, the table indicator (TI), and the requested privilege level (RPL).

15	3 2 1 0						
Index	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>T</td> <td>R</td> </tr> <tr> <td>I</td> <td>P</td> </tr> <tr> <td>L</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	T	R	I	P	L	
T	R						
I	P						
L							

The RPL can be used to request access to an object at a *less* privileged level than is normally granted. If you're a canny operating system designer, you don't necessarily want access at the most privileged level available to you. Using the RPL in this manner guards against misuse of highly privileged routines to subvert the system.

Consider a programmer who tries to snoop in a "secure" system. This programmer knows that an application program that attempts to access the operating system's code will fail. However, the programmer tries another tactic. The snooping application calls the operating system's disk write routine and passes it a pointer to the system segment to which it wants access. The operating system routine has enough privilege to gain access to the segment, so no protection violation occurs, and the clever programmer has a disk file that contains the desired segment. Figure 5-6 illustrates this scenario.

A secure operating system can foil attempts such as this by ensuring that the RPL field of any selector is set to the CPL of the calling routine. The ARPL (adjust requested privilege level) instruction performs this function. When this is done, the



Application passes the ring 0 selector (which is illegal for it to use) to the ring 0 routine. The ring 0 routine gains access to the ring segment and writes it to disk.

Figure 5-6. Access to an operating system segment.

system can detect that the requested privilege level (RPL) of the selector is less than (numerically higher than) the DPL of the desired segment and refuse to complete the operation. Figure 5-7 shows the behavior of a secure operating system in this situation.

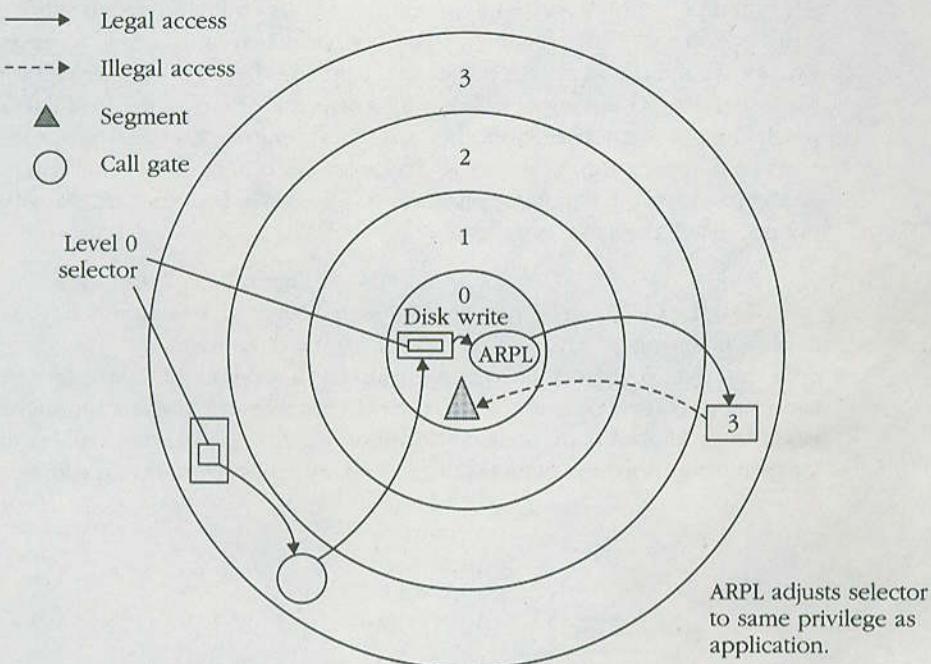


Figure 5-7. Secure operating system using ARPL.

The TI bit of a selector identifies the table from which the descriptor is selected. When TI is set to 0, the selector refers to the $index^{th}$ descriptor in the GDT. A selector value of 0033H, for example, points to the GDT descriptor number 6. The first slot in the global descriptor table, GDT(0), is never used. A selector value of 0* is used as a null selector. The null selector can be loaded into a data segment register without triggering a protection fault.

When TI is set to 1, the index refers to a descriptor in the current LDT. LDT(0) can be used to hold a valid descriptor. LDTs are usually created on a per task basis and serve two purposes. First, because a selector is 16 bits and the index field is only 13 bits, you can address a maximum of 8192 descriptors. Multiple LDTs allow you to store more descriptors. If there were only one LDT as there is only one GDT, an operating system might run out of space to store descriptors.

Second, the LDT also gives you increased security. Figure 5-8 on the following page represents an operating system that uses only the GDT to store descriptors. The

* The RPL portion of the null selector is ignored, so any of the values 0, 1, 2, or 3 are valid null selectors.

descriptors below 100 point to various operating system objects and are all ring 0 objects. GDT(100) is a ring 3 descriptor for the code segment of application A, and GDT(101) is the data segment descriptor, also in ring 3. Descriptors 102 and 103 are the descriptors for the code and the data of application B.

Any attempt by application A to access outside its code and data segments results in a protection violation. However, what if application A attempts to forge a selector? That is, what if the application tries to create an otherwise valid selector for a segment that doesn't belong to it? Creating a selector for any of the first 100 GDT slots results in a protection violation because the operating system descriptors are ring 0 objects. If application A creates a selector for GDT(103), however, it can potentially access (or destroy) data for application B. The 80386 prevents access between rings but not inside the same ring.

Figure 5-9 shows the 80386 solution to the problem. If each application is given its own LDT, the GDT can be reserved for system use. All descriptors in the GDT point to objects in rings 0, 1, or 2. The LDT for each task contains the ring 3 (application) code and data segments. Each application has a separate LDT, so a forged selector can refer to objects only in the GDT, which are more privileged and therefore inaccessible, or to objects in its own LDT. Thus, the LDT defines a virtual address space for the application, and each task has a separate, nonoverlapping address space.

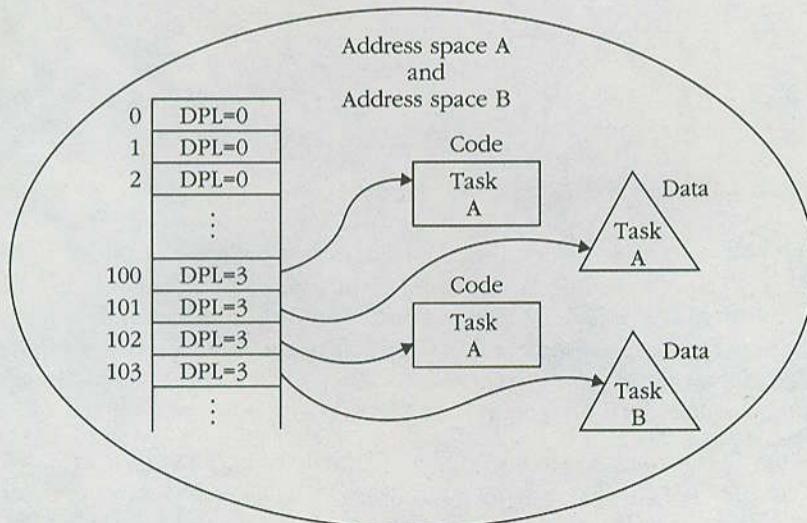


Figure 5-8. Operating system using only the GDT.

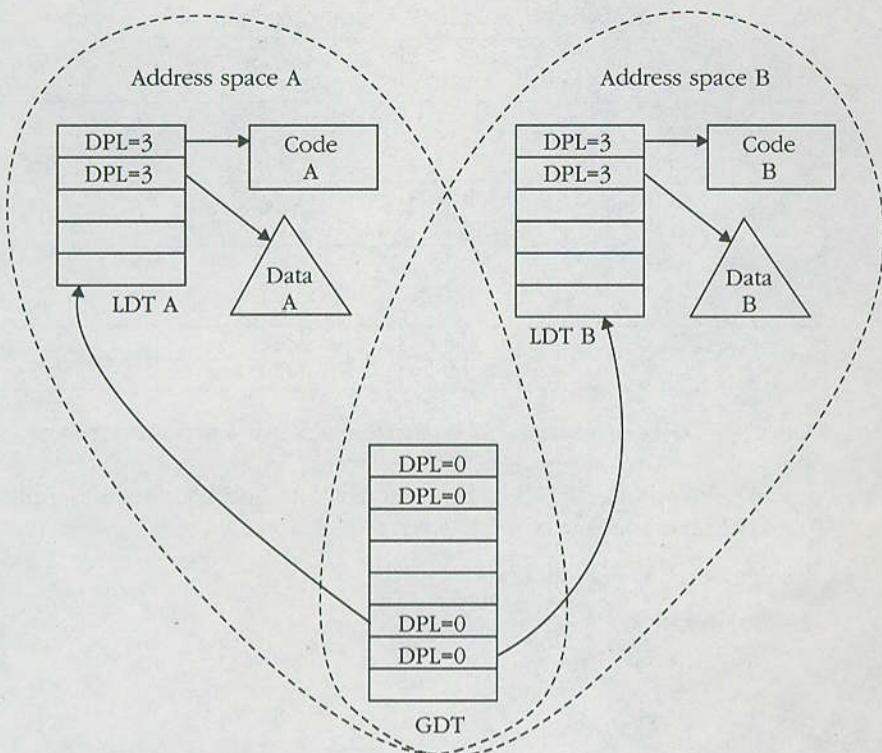


Figure 5-9. Operating system using a GDT and an LDT.

As Figure 5-9 indicates, an LDT is also a system object with its own descriptor. The next section illustrates the general format of descriptors in the 80386.

Descriptor Formats

Figure 5-10 on the following page illustrates the three forms of a descriptor. The following are the descriptor types: program memory segments, system segments, and gates. Program memory segment descriptors were introduced in Chapter 3. System segment descriptors describe LDTs and TSSs. Like program memory segment descriptors, system segment descriptors describe regions of memory and have a base and a limit. However, you cannot load a descriptor for an LDT or a TSS into a segment register and read or write the contents as data. For an operating system to update an LDT or a TSS, it must create a memory segment descriptor with the same base address and limit, called an *alias*. Programs such as debuggers, which let you modify your program's code segments, must also create aliases because code segments are not writable under the 80386 protection rules.

63	48	47	32	31	16	15	0				
Base 24..31	G	-	0	A V L	Limit 16..19	P	DPL S 0	Type	Base address 0..23	Limit 0..15	
63	48	47	32	31	16	15	0				
Base 24..31	G	B	0	A V L	Limit 16..19	P	DPL S 1	E X C E W R	A	Base address 0..23	Limit 0..15
63	48	47	32	31	16	15	0				
Offset 16..31		P	DPL S 0	Type	0	Dword count	Selector	Offset 0..15			

Figure 5-10. General descriptor format: system, memory, and gate descriptors.

System segments are identified by a value of 0 in the S bit of the descriptor. The TYPE field can hold any of the following values:

0—Unused (invalid descriptor)

1—80286 TSS

2—LDT

3—Busy 80286 TSS

9—80386 TSS

11—Busy 80386 TSS

A gate descriptor does not delineate a memory region and therefore has no base address or limit fields. Instead, a gate points to another descriptor via a selector. Call, interrupt, and trap gates must contain the selector for a code segment and an offset into the segment. Task gates hold a selector for a TSS, and the offset portion of the descriptor is unused.

Gate descriptors, like system segment descriptors, have the S bit set to 0 and can contain one of the following values in the TYPE field:

4—80286 call gate

5—Task gate

6—80286 interrupt gate

7—80286 trap gate

12—80386 call gate

14—80386 interrupt gate

15—80386 trap gate

TYPE field values of 8, 10, and 13 are reserved for future Intel processors.

Descriptor types 1, 3, 4, 6, and 7 are used on the 80286. Operating systems designed for the 80286 (such as OS/2) run without modification on the 80386, so these descriptor types are fully supported. A native mode system, however, or one that supports both 16-bit and 32-bit programs, uses full 32-bit descriptors. You can use 16-bit code and data descriptors in a 32-bit system, but using 16-bit system descriptors such as task state segments can lead to difficulties.

Multitasking

I have previously shown how the 80386 uses call gates to implement interlevel subroutine calls. Interrupt and trap gates are discussed later in this chapter. The following sections show how the 80386 can use the remaining system objects (TSSs, LDTs, and task gates) to implement robust multitasking operating systems.

Simply defined, a task is “a sequence of related actions leading to the accomplishment of some goal.” In a computer, the resources required to accomplish the goal are usually included in the definition of a task—that is, the amount of memory, CPU time, disk space, and so on.

The term *multitasking* refers to the ability of a computer to execute more than one task simultaneously. The 80386 cannot execute more than one instruction stream at once, but it can execute one instruction stream, switch to another, execute it, switch to a third, execute it, switch back to the original, and so on. Because the CPU executes so rapidly, all tasks appear to execute simultaneously. *Concurrency* and *multiprogramming* are synonyms for multitasking.

An executing task is called a *process*. Thus, some people refer to multitasking as multiprocesssing. Others, however, use the word *multiprocessing* to refer to systems in which multiple CPUs or processors are running simultaneously. To avoid confusion, I do not use the term multiprocessing, and I refer to computers with more than one CPU as multiprocessor systems.

Assume that each task in a computer is implemented by a single program; therefore, multiple programs must share the CPU. Various strategies exist for sharing the CPU, but to discuss and compare these strategies is beyond the scope of this book. At some level, each system must turn over control of the CPU from one task to another.

The first task might be in the middle of a computation when control is wrested from it and passed to another task; when the first task resumes, it must be able to continue processing as though nothing had happened. All the registers that the task was using must be restored to their original values when that task regains control.

The 80386 hardware supports this kind of task switching via the TSS. Figure 5-11 on the following page depicts the memory layout of the TSS. Each TSS has only one descriptor, which defines its base memory address and limit. Figure 5-11 shows the TSS descriptor format immediately below the TSS. To allow access to the TSS by different privilege levels or via interrupts, you must use task gates.

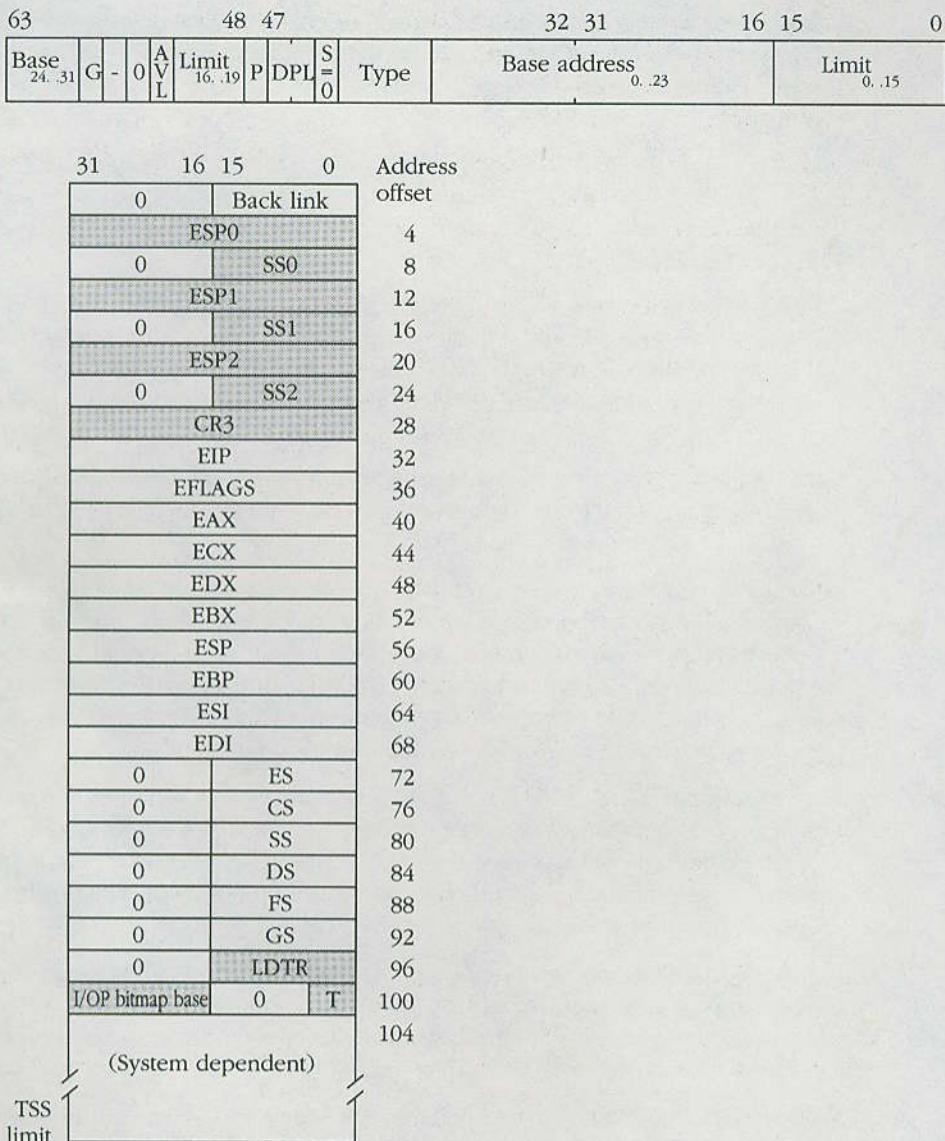


Figure 5-11. Task state segment and descriptor.

The TSS descriptor is similar to that of a typical memory segment because the TSS is a system segment; however, the S bit is 0. The TYPE field for a TSS contains either a binary 1001B or 1011B (9 or 11). The variable bit is called the *busy bit*. This bit is set to 1 in the currently executing task and in any tasks that have called the current task, establishing a chain of nested tasks. Any attempt to invoke a task that is marked as busy triggers an exception.

The selector in the task register (TR) identifies the current task. Usually, this register is loaded once at initialization time and then is managed by the task switch operation. Loading TR does not cause a task switch; it does identify the active TSS, however.

When a task switch occurs, the state of the currently executing task is saved in its TSS, and the CPU registers are loaded from the image of the new or destination TSS. The task register contains a selector for the currently active TSS. TSS descriptors can be located only in the GDT.

Part of the TSS in Figure 5-11 is gray. The gray portion indicates values that are not stored in the outgoing TSS during a task switch, although new values are loaded from the destination TSS. If any gray value changes during execution of the task, the operating system must ensure that the TSS is kept current. The application cannot change these values; they require kernel support (privilege level 0) to be modified.

The bulk of the TSS holds copies of the 80386 general register set: EAX–EDI, the segment registers, EFLAGS, and EIP. In addition, the TSS contains these fields:

Back link—The selector of the TSS that was previously executing.

SS_n, ESP_n—The stack pointers for ring *n* execution, as discussed in the section on call gates.

CR3—Control register 3, which defines the physical memory address of the page tables for the task.

LDTR—The selector of the LDT for the task.

T—The “trap on task switch” bit. A debug fault (interrupt 1) occurs when this bit is set to 1 in the incoming TSS.

I/O bitmap base—A 16-bit offset into the TSS that indicates the start of the I/O permission bitmap. If this field is set to 0, no I/O permission bitmap exists.

System dependent—The portion of the TSS that the operating system can use to store any operating system-specific information about the task.

I/O permission bitmap—The field that starts at the offset indicated by the I/O bitmap base and continues to the end of the TSS or to the base plus 8192.

Task switching

Four events can cause a task switch on the 80386:

- The current task executes a FAR CALL or JMP instruction in which the selector points to a TSS descriptor.
- The current task executes a FAR CALL or JMP instruction, and the selector points to a task gate.

- The current task executes an IRET instruction to return to the previous task. An IRET causes a task switch only if the NT (nested task) bit of the EFLAGS register is set to 1.
- An interrupt or exception occurs, and the IDT entry for the vector is a task gate.

For any task switch, the following events take place:

1. If the task switch is not caused by a hardware interrupt, an exception, or an IRET, the descriptor privilege rules are checked. The DPL of the descriptor (TSS or task gate) must be numerically less than the current task's CPL and the selector's RPL.
2. The present bit and limit of the descriptor for the current (outgoing) TSS is checked to ensure that the TSS is present and can hold at least 104 bytes of state information. If so, the current machine state is saved; otherwise an exception occurs.
3. The present bit and limit of the descriptor for the new (incoming) TSS is checked. If the TSS is not present or is too small, an exception occurs; otherwise all the register images are loaded. If the value of CR3 has changed, the TLB cache (see Chapter 7) is flushed.

At this point, all the general and segment registers are loaded, but the 80386 shadow registers are not. CS might have a value of 217FH, but the descriptor for selector 217FH has not been loaded. The state of the outgoing task has been saved, however, and any exceptions that occur are in the context of the new state, even if the CS descriptor is not present or is invalid.

4. The linkage to the outgoing task is established. What happens next depends on what caused the task switch.
 - a. If the task switch was caused by a JMP instruction, the TSS descriptor of the outgoing task is marked as not busy, and the incoming task descriptor is identified as a busy TSS.
 - b. If the task switch was caused by an interrupt or a CALL instruction, the outgoing task remains busy, and the incoming task is also marked as a busy TSS. Additionally, the NT bit of the EFLAGS register is set to 1, and the back link field of the incoming TSS is set to the selector of the outgoing TSS.
 - c. If the task switch was caused by an IRET instruction, the outgoing task is set to not busy.
5. The task switched (TS) bit in CR0 is set to 1, and the current privilege level for the incoming task is taken from the RPL field of the CS selector in the TSS.

6. The LDTR shadow registers are loaded if the LDTR contains a valid selector. If the LDTR value is 0 (the null selector), no action is taken. If the selector is invalid or if the new LDT is not present, an exception occurs.
7. The descriptors for CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS are loaded into the 80386 shadow registers in that order. All descriptors are tested for privilege violations (CPL has already been established) and must be marked present; otherwise an exception occurs.
8. The local enable bits in DR7 are cleared to 0.
9. If the T bit of the incoming TSS is set to 1, a debug fault (interrupt 1) occurs.
10. The new task begins executing by fetching the instruction at CS:EIP.

I/O permission bitmap

Two conditions determine whether a task is allowed to perform I/O: the I/O privilege level and the I/O permission bitmap. The IOPL bits in the EFLAGS register determine the I/O privilege level. The IOPL defines the least privileged level that can perform an I/O instruction without restriction. For example, if IOPL = 2, I/O instructions can be performed by procedures executing at levels 0, 1, or 2. An attempt to execute an instruction by a ring 3 application must be further validated by the I/O permission bitmap.

If the CPL of the current task is greater than IOPL (that is, if I/O is restricted for that task), the I/O permission bitmap is checked, which protects the I/O address space on an individual I/O port basis. The TSS stores an I/O permission bitmap for every task. The bitmap begins at the offset in the TSS specified by the 16-bit I/O map base value. The I/O map base value must be greater than or equal to 68H.

The I/O permission bitmap is a maximum of 8192 bytes, with one bit for each of the 65,536 I/O ports. If the bit in the bitmap corresponding to the I/O port is set to 1, then the task does not have access to the port, and a general protection fault will occur if the task attempts to execute an I/O instruction at that port.

The I/O permission bitmap is not required to be 8192 bytes. The limit field of the TSS descriptor specifies the end of the bitmap. If the I/O map base value is greater than or equal to the limit value, the TSS contains no I/O permission bitmap. All ports that do not have a bitmap position in the TSS are protected from access.

Figure 5-12 on the following page shows a sample bitmap. The task with this TSS can access ports 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12. A subroutine in this task can access byte ports 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12, word ports 8 and 10, or dword port 8.

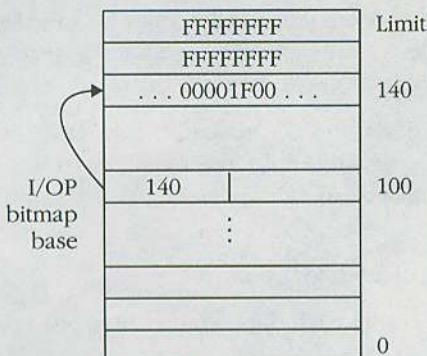


Figure 5-12. I/O permission bitmap in TSS.

Interrupts and Exceptions

Interrupt is a term that defines a variety of control transfers on the 80386. The specific items implied by this term are true interrupts (hardware interrupts) and *exceptions*, which are further subdivided into *traps*, *faults*, and *aborts*.

All interrupts and exceptions share a common feature: The current execution location (CS:EIP) and flags register (EFLAGS) are saved on the stack, and control transfers to a software routine called an *interrupt handler* via a gate in the interrupt descriptor table (IDT). The 80386 supports a maximum of 256 descriptors in the IDT. Every interrupt or exception is associated with one of these interrupt numbers. Interrupt numbers 0 through 31 are reserved for specific purposes relating to the 80386 processor; the operating system can assign numbers 32 through 255.

The kinds of interrupts and exceptions are:

Interrupts—True interrupts are caused by hardware signals that originate outside the CPU. Two pins on the 80386, NMI and INTR, signal interrupts. Pulling the NMI pin low activates a nonmaskable interrupt. The NMI interrupt always invokes the routine associated with interrupt vector (IDT entry) 2.

An active signal on the INTR line causes a maskable interrupt. The 80386 does not respond to a maskable interrupt unless the IF bit of the EFLAGS register is set to 1. When the IF bit is 0, interrupts are not recognized and are said to be *masked*. If the processor responds, it issues an interrupt-acknowledge bus cycle, and the interrupting device must respond with an interrupt number. Use only values 32–255 for maskable interrupts.

Traps—These are conditions that the 80386 regards as errors and detects after the execution of a software instruction. The saved instruction pointer (CS:EIP) on the stack points to the instruction immediately after an instruction that has trapped.

A classic example of a trap is the INTO instruction. When INTO is executed, the processor checks the value of the overflow flag (OF). If OF = 1, the 80386 vectors through IDT descriptor 4.

All software interrupt (INT) instructions are handled as traps. To issue one of these instructions, however, a procedure must have access privilege to the IDT descriptor for the interrupt number. For example, if a ring 3 application executes an INT 47 instruction, the descriptor at IDT(47) must have DPL = 3; otherwise, a protection fault occurs. This mechanism prevents applications from issuing INT instructions for vectors associated with hardware interrupts because the gates for these vectors point to operating system code that runs at high privilege levels, usually ring 0.

Faults—When the 80386 detects an error *during* the processing of an instruction (for example, when the instruction's operand is stored in a page frame marked not present), a fault occurs. A specific interrupt number is associated with each fault condition. The instruction pointer saved on the stack after a fault occurs points to the instruction that caused the fault. Thus, the operating system can correct the condition and resume executing the instruction.

Aborts—When an error is so severe that some context is lost, the result is an abort. It might be impossible to determine the cause of an abort, or it might be that the instruction causing the abort is not able to be restarted.

The following table lists all of the exceptions handled by the 80386:

80386 Exceptions

<i>Interrupt Number</i>	<i>Class</i>	<i>Description</i>
0	Fault	Divide error
1	Fault or trap	Debugger interrupt
2	Interrupt	Nonmaskable interrupt
3	Trap	Breakpoint
4	Trap	Interrupt on overflow (INTO)
5	Fault	Array boundary violation (BOUND)
6	Fault	Invalid opcode
7	Fault	Coprocessor not available
8	Abort	Double fault
9	Abort	Coprocessor segment overrun
10	Fault	Invalid TSS
11	Fault	Segment not present
12	Fault	Stack exception
13	Fault	General protection violation
14	Fault	Page fault
15	Reserved	
16	Fault	Coprocessor error
17-31	Reserved	
32-255	Interrupt or trap	System dependent

One class of error is more severe than an abort. If the processor is unable to continue processing an exception, it shuts down. In a protected-mode environment, the system should shut down only if a hardware failure occurs. To prevent shutdown, the vectors that handle the double fault (interrupt 8) and invalid TSS (interrupt 10) conditions should be separate tasks, and IDT entries 8 and 10 should be task gates. This approach allows the 80386 to load a new machine state from which to handle the exceptions. If this is not done, the exception handler might be running in the same environment that caused the failures and might not be able to continue processing.

Interrupt gates, trap gates, and task gates

The only types of descriptors that can reside in the IDT are interrupt gates, trap gates, and task gates. Task gates in the IDT are identical to those in the GDT and operate in the same manner.

When a task gate is invoked with an interrupt or with an exception, the machine state is saved in the existing TSS, and a new state is loaded from the TSS associated with the task gate. Thus, an interrupt can have its own address space, including its own page tables and LDT. In addition, the interrupt handler is prevented from using too much of the interrupted application's stack and from corrupting any registers. A task switch takes longer to execute than a gate transfer, however, and the advantages of invoking a task gate must be weighed against performance considerations.

The most common entries in the IDT are interrupt gates and trap gates. These descriptors have identical formats—only the type code is different. Figure 5-13 illustrates the descriptor format for interrupt gates. The only difference in behavior between the two gates is that when an interrupt gate is activated the IF bit of the EFLAGS register is cleared to 0. Hardware interrupts are masked until the interrupt handler deems it safe to reenable them. Transferring control through a trap gate does not modify the interrupt flag.

The behavior of interrupt gates and trap gates is similar to that of call gates. Although interrupt gates and trap gates do not contain a word count field, they can point to code segments of specific privilege levels or to conforming segments. Figure 5-14 shows the layout of the stack when an interrupt handler is invoked.

63	48 47		32 31	16 15	0
Offset 16..31	P DPL 0	S 0	Type	0	Selector Offset 0..15

Figure 5-13. Interrupt gate and trap gate descriptor format.

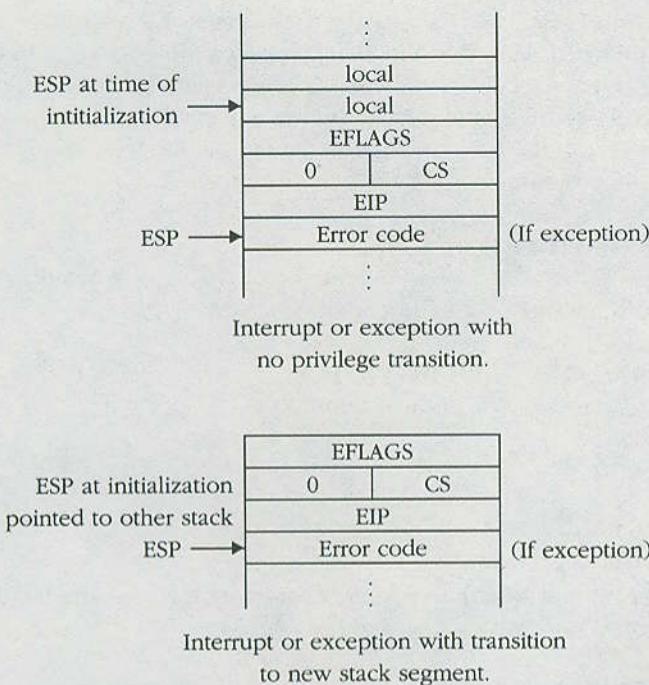


Figure 5-14. Interrupt stack without and with privilege transition.

An interrupt handler must return to the calling routine via an IRET instruction. The IRET restores the original instruction pointer, flags, and stack segment. If the NT (nested task) bit was set in the EFLAGS register, a task switch to the original TSS also occurs. The programmer should remove any error code (generated by the fault) from the stack before returning from the interrupt handler.

80386 processor exceptions

The following sections explain the faults, traps, and aborts that can occur during 80386 program execution. Some exceptions cause a control transfer via the IDT; others cause an error code to be pushed onto the stack as well. If an error code is pushed, it is pushed onto the stack of the interrupt handler; that is, it is pushed after any privilege level or task transition. Exceptions that cause error codes to be pushed onto the stack are indicated in the following sections with the symbol *[ec]*. The value of the error code is either 0 or as defined in the following illustration:

31	16 15	2 1 0
Undefined	Selector index	T I E 1 X

The selector index and TI fields are taken from the selector of the segment associated with the exception. Instead of an RPL field, however, the error code has an I bit and an EX bit. The I bit is set to 1 when the index refers to an IDT index, and the TI bit is ignored. When I = 0, the TI bit indicates whether the selector is from the GDT or from the current LDT. If the EX bit is set to 1, the fault was caused by an event outside the executing program.

Interrupt 0—Divide (fault)

A divide fault occurs if division by zero is attempted or if the result of a divide operation does not fit into the destination operand.

Interrupt 1—Debugger (fault or trap)

This exception is triggered by one of these conditions:

Debug register breakpoint

Single step trap

Task switch trap

The “Debugging” section later in this chapter covers the triggering and handling of debug traps in detail.

Interrupt 2—NMI (interrupt)

IDT vector 2 is reserved for the hardware NMI condition. No exceptions trap through vector 2.

Interrupt 3—Breakpoint (trap)

Debuggers use the breakpoint interrupt (INT 3), which is covered in the “Debugging” section later in this chapter.

Interrupt 4—Overflow (trap)

The overflow trap occurs after an INTO instruction has executed if the OF bit is set to 1. The INTO instruction is useful in languages such as Ada that require arithmetic instructions either to produce a valid result or to raise an exception.

Interrupt 5—Bounds check (fault)

Like interrupt 4, the bounds check trap occurs as the result of a software instruction. The BOUND instruction compares an array index with an upper bound and a lower bound. If the index is out of range, the processor traps to vector 5.

Interrupt 6—Invalid opcode (fault)

An interrupt 6 fault occurs if:

- The processor tries to decode a bit pattern that does not correspond to any legal machine instruction.

- The processor tries to execute an instruction that contains invalid operands.
- The processor tries to execute a protected-mode instruction while running in real mode or in virtual 8086 mode.

Opcodes that are illegal on the 8086 or cause an invalid opcode fault on the 80286 do not always cause an exception when the 80386 executes in real mode. The opcodes might correspond to new instructions that are valid in any 80386 operating mode.

Interrupt 7—Coprocessor not available (fault)

When a computer does not support an 80287 or 80387 coprocessor, the operating system can set the EM bit of register CR0 to indicate NDP software emulation. If the EM bit of register CR0 is set, an interrupt 7 fault occurs each time a floating-point instruction is encountered.

This fault also occurs if the MP bit of CR0 is set and the 80386 executes a WAIT or floating-point instruction after a task switch. The task switch sets the TS bit to 1. The operating system can clear TS after a task switch to prevent the fault from occurring. The 80386 uses this method to signal that the state of the math coprocessor needs to be saved so that it can be used by another task.

Interrupt 8—Double fault (abort) [ec]

Processing an exception sometimes triggers a second exception. For example, suppose that a divide fault occurs during the processing of an application and that the trap gate for interrupt 0 points to a conforming segment so that the privilege level does not change. Now suppose that the user stack does not have room for the CS, EIP, and EFLAGS pushed by the divide fault. The condition of being unable to process the divide exception correctly would result in a double fault.

Not all exception pairs result in double faults. In some cases, most notably when getting access to the fault handler causes a page fault, the second fault is processed first, and then control transfers to the initial exception handler. The following table shows the exception pairs that trigger a double fault:

<i>Initial Exception</i>	<i>Double Fault if Followed By</i>
0 (Divide fault)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
9 (NDP segment overrun)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
10 (Invalid TSS)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
11 (Not present)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
12 (Stack fault)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
13 (General protection)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13
14 (Page fault)	0, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14

A task gate can best handle the double fault vector, although a secure ring 0 segment usually works. You should use the method best suited for placing the system in a

known state because the processor shuts down if a third fault occurs while the 80386 is trying to start the interrupt 8 exception handler.

The shutdown state is similar to the halt state. Only a processor reset or NMI (if the NMI vector is valid) can bring the processor out of shutdown. A special shutdown signal is placed on the bus so that external hardware can detect the shutdown.

An error code of 0 is pushed onto the stack when a double fault exception occurs.

Interrupt 9—Coprocessor segment overrun (abort)

The coprocessor segment overrun exception is signaled when a floating-point instruction causes a memory access that runs beyond the end of a segment. If the starting address of a floating-point operand is outside the segment limit, a general protection fault (interrupt 13) occurs rather than an interrupt 9.

The segment overrun exception is classified as an abort because the instruction cannot be restarted. You must use the FNINIT instruction to reinitialize the 80387 coprocessor. The CS:EIP saved on the stack will point to the offending instruction.

Interrupt 10—Invalid task state segment (fault) [ec]

A variety of causes can trigger an interrupt 10 because the TSS contains a number of descriptors. The 80386 pushes an error code onto the stack to aid in diagnosing the error condition. The following table lists invalid TSS fault conditions and the value of the error code pushed onto the stack for each condition. The items are listed in the order in which they are checked by the CPU.

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Error Code Value</i>
Outgoing TSS limit < 103	TSS index : TI : EXT
Incoming TSS limit < 103	TSS index : TI : EXT
LDT selector has TI = 1	LDT index : TI : EXT
LDT descriptor has S = 1	LDT index : TI : EXT
LDT descriptor TYPE != 2	LDT index : TI : EXT
LDT descriptor not present	LDT index : TI : EXT
CS selector is null	CS index
CS descriptor has S = 0	CS index
CS descriptor not executable	CS index
CS conforming, DPL > CPL	CS index
CS not conforming, DPL != CPL or DPL < RPL	CS index
SS selector is null	SS index
SS selector RPL != CPL	SS index
SS descriptor has S = 0	SS index
SS descriptor not writable	SS index
The following checks are made for all other selectors in the order DS, ES, FS, and GS:	
Descriptor has S = 0	DS, ES, FS, or GS index
Descriptor is execute only	DS, ES, FS, or GS index
Descriptor not conforming, DPL < CPL or DPL < RPL	DS, ES, FS, or GS index

The CPL value is taken from the RPL of the incoming CS selector. If one of the memory segment descriptors is marked not present, a not present fault or stack fault occurs rather than the invalid TSS fault. The TSS load stops at the point of the fault, and the other exception handler must ensure that the remaining segment registers get loaded.

Interrupt 11—Not present (fault) [ec]

The not present interrupt lets you implement virtual memory via the 80386 segmentation mechanism. An operating system can mark a memory segment as not present and swap its contents out to disk. The interrupt 11 fault is triggered when an application needs to access the segment.

This fault occurs when the 80386 tries to gain access to a descriptor that is not present ($P = 0$). Loading DS, ES, FS, or GS triggers the fault, as does a FAR CALL or JMP that either loads CS with a segment marked not present or accesses a gate whose descriptor is marked not present. In addition, the LLDT and LTR instructions cause descriptors to be loaded and can trigger the fault.

A segment fault that occurs when loading the SS register results in a stack fault (interrupt 12) rather than in a not present fault. Additionally, when the LDTR is loaded during a task switch rather than by the LDTR instruction, an invalid TSS exception occurs if the descriptor has $P = 0$.

The CS and EIP that are pushed onto the stack as a result of the exception usually point to the offending instruction. Also pushed is an error code that identifies the selector involved in the fault. The only time that CS:EIP does not point to the offending instruction is when a task switch occurs and a selector in the new task image causes the not present exception.

In this case, the CS:EIP points to the first instruction of the new task. The selectors are loaded in the order SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS, and the task switch terminates at the point of the fault. The interrupt 11 fault handler must handle the fault and validate the remaining selectors. If the interrupt 11 fault handler is invoked via a task gate, this happens on the IRET that ends interrupt 11. If a trap gate invokes the interrupt, however, the fault handler must test each selector with the LAR instruction.

Interrupt 12—Stack (fault) [ec]

A task gate should handle this exception because the state of the stack is unknown when a stack fault occurs. You can use a level 0 trap gate, but if a stack fault occurs at ring 0, the trap to the interrupt 12 handler results in an immediate double fault.

A stack fault with an error code of 0 occurs if a normal instruction refers to memory beyond the limits of the stack segment. This includes instructions such as PUSH and POP, and instructions that use an SS: segment override or use EBP as a base register. In addition, the ENTER instruction causes the same fault if it causes ESP to be decremented beyond the lower bound of the segment. Instructions such as SUB ESP, 10 do not cause stack faults.

If the stack fault is triggered by loading SS with a not present selector or if the fault occurs during gated transition between privilege rings, an error code indicating the offending selector is pushed onto the stack. Loading SS with invalid descriptors (out of range, segment not writable, and so on) results in a general protection fault rather than a stack fault.

When the error code is 0, this usually means that a given stack segment is too small. If the operating system supports expand-down segments, it can expand the stack of the faulting application. The saved CS:EIP points to the faulting instruction, which can always be restarted; however, the same caveat that applies to task switches and not present exceptions also applies to stack faults. See the final paragraph under "Interrupt 11—Not present (fault)[ec]" for more details.

Interrupt 13—General protection (fault) [ec]

Any condition not covered by some other exception triggers a general protection fault. This fault usually indicates that the program has been corrupted and should be "terminated with prejudice," as the old UNIX phrase goes.

The exception to this rule is that V86-mode tasks trigger general protection faults when the system needs to be "virtualized." For example, a V86 task that tries to disable interrupts or issue a software interrupt instruction triggers a general protection fault when IOPL < 3. In such a case, the interrupt handler must determine the proper behavior and return control to the faulting task.

The operating system can restart any instruction that triggers a general protection fault, although doing so is often inappropriate. An error code is always pushed onto the stack as part of the exception; in many cases, however, the value is 0. When the value is not 0, the value indicates the selector that caused the exception.

Interrupt 14—Page (fault) [ec]

The page fault interrupt lets you implement virtual memory on a demand-paged basis. An interrupt 14 occurs whenever an access to a page directory entry or page table entry refers to an entry with the present bit set to 0. The operating system makes the page present, updates the table entry, and restarts the faulting instruction. A page fault also occurs when a paging protection rule is violated. In this case, the operating system needs to take other appropriate action.

When a page fault occurs, the CR2 register is loaded with the linear address that caused the fault, and an error code is pushed onto the stack. The page fault error code is different from that of the other exceptions and has this format:

31		3	2	1	0
	Undefined	U	W	S	P

The three low-order bits of the error code provide more information about why the address in CR2 caused the fault. The P bit is set to 1 if the fault was a page protection fault rather than a page not present fault. The W/R bit is set to 1 if the faulting instruction was attempting to write to memory. The bit is cleared to 0 if the fault occurred during a read. Finally, the U/S bit is set to 1 if the faulting instruction was executing in user mode and is cleared to 0 if the instruction was a supervisor instruction. (User mode and supervisor mode are discussed in Chapter 7.)

Because of the large number of divergent memory accesses that occur during a task switch, operating system designers should ensure that important task tables (the GDT, application TSS, and application LDT) are resident in memory before executing the task switch. The situations that arise if page faults occur during a task switch are not impossible to deal with, but system design is simpler if you avoid them.

Interrupt 15

This vector is reserved for future Intel processors.

Interrupt 16—Coprocessor error (fault)

This exception occurs under two conditions:

- When the ERROR\ pin is active at the start of an ESC (numeric coprocessor) instruction
- When the EM bit of CR0 is 0 at the start of a WAIT instruction

Interrupts 17–31

These vectors are reserved for future Intel processors.

Interrupts 32–255

These vectors are available for use by an operating system. The system can install interrupt, trap, or task gates in any IDT slot corresponding to one of these interrupts. The interrupt handlers can be invoked by software INT *n* instructions or by hardware that signals the 80386 via the INTR pin.

Interrupt masking and priority

The only programming mechanisms for masking interrupts are the CLI/STI instructions, which affect the hardware INTR line. However, other situations prevent certain types of interrupts, either by design or because a more important interrupt is pending. Interrupts have the following priority ranking:

1. Nondebug faults
2. Trap instructions (software interrupts INT 0, INT 3, INT *n*)
3. Debug traps for the current instruction
4. Debug faults for the pending instruction
5. Hardware NMI
6. Hardware INTR interrupt

For example, if a page fault and a debug fault are triggered on the same instruction, the page fault takes priority, and the debug fault is masked. However, when the page fault handler completes its operation and restarts the faulting instruction, the debug fault is retriggered.

Other interrupt masking conditions occur when:

- An NMI is triggered. Further NMIs are masked until the next IRET instruction occurs.
- A debug fault occurs. Debug faults cause the RF bit in the EFLAGS register to be set, masking additional debug interrupts. The processor clears RF upon successfully completing an instruction.
- The SS register is loaded. Hardware interrupts (both NMI and INTR) and debug exceptions (including single step) are masked for the duration of one instruction after SS is loaded. Thus, the ESP register can load without risk of invoking an interrupt handler with an invalid stack pointer. The instruction that loads ESP can, however, receive a page fault, and the interrupt 14 routine will be invoked with an invalid stack pointer, possibly leading to a double fault. You can avoid this by loading both SS and ESP using a single instruction, LSS.

Debugging

Traditionally, microprocessors have never contributed much to solving the problem of debugging. Debugging on microprocessors has been accomplished with breakpoint instructions and with the ability to single step (execute one instruction at a time); but for difficult problems, programmers have had to turn to in-circuit emulators or hardware-assisted debuggers.

As microcomputer systems become more sophisticated, hardware's ability to determine what is going on inside the CPU diminishes. For example, assume that a programmer wants to be notified that a particular data structure has been modified. Because of paging, the structure might not be in contiguous memory. The operating system's virtual memory capability allows it to move the program out from under the eye of the debugging hardware, and thus the program's linear and symbolic addresses bear no relation to the generated hardware addresses.

Fortunately, the 80386 designers recognized these problems and added features to the processor that system software can use to aid in debugging. Four mechanisms trigger debug interrupts under different conditions: trap flag, task switch trap, breakpoint registers, and software breakpoint.

Trap flag

Setting the TF bit in the EFLAGS register causes a single-step fault (interrupt 1) to occur before the next instruction. The 80386 clears the TF bit before invoking the handler pointed to by IDT(1), although the saved image of EFLAGS on the stack has the trap flag set.

When a software interrupt instruction (INT, INTO) is executed, the TF bit is cleared. A debugger should not attempt to single step an INT instruction but should place a breakpoint either at the destination of the gate pointed to by INT or immediately after the INT instruction.

A call gate does not clear the trap flag, so a debugger should check all FAR CALLs and JMPs to see whether they cause a change in privilege level. If so, programmers should not be allowed to single step into code more privileged than their applications.

Task switch trap

When the T bit of a TSS is set to 1, switching to the TSS's task invokes the debugger fault (interrupt 1). The fault does not occur until after the contents of the TSS are loaded and before the first instruction of the task is executed.

Breakpoint registers

The debug registers (DR0–DR7) implement four address breakpoints. When the registers are correctly initialized, each identifies a linear address. If the processor accesses that address, a debugger fault (interrupt 1) occurs. The debug registers are described in detail in “Programming the debug registers” in this chapter.

Software breakpoint

The single-byte INT 3 (0CCH) instruction triggers this interrupt. By replacing the first byte of an instruction with an INT 3, a debugger can cause a breakpoint to occur when the execution stream reaches the INT 3. Because the software interrupts are classified as traps, the saved CS and EIP on the stack point to the byte immediately after INT 3. To restart the program, the debugger must replace the 0CCH value with the first byte of the original instruction, decrement EIP so that it points to the start of the instruction, and execute an IRET to return from the interrupt handler.

This method of implementing breakpoints is much clumsier than using the debug registers because it requires creating a writable alias for a code segment, saving the original instruction byte, replacing the instruction with an INT 3, and undoing the above when the breakpoint has been triggered. However, because the debug registers allow only four active breakpoints at once, a reasonable tradeoff is to use debug registers for data space breakpoints and INT 3 for code space breakpoints.

Programming the debug registers

Figure 5-15 on the following page shows the layout of the debug registers. To load a value into one of the registers, use a MOV DR x , reg instruction. Similarly, using MOV reg, DR x reads the contents of a debug register into one of the 32-bit general registers.

The first four registers (DR0–DR3) are address registers. The linear address of a desired breakpoint must be loaded into one of these registers. The debug registers are not affected by paging. Only the linear address (from the descriptors) is used to match a breakpoint address. Debug registers DR4 and DR5 are reserved for future Intel microprocessors.

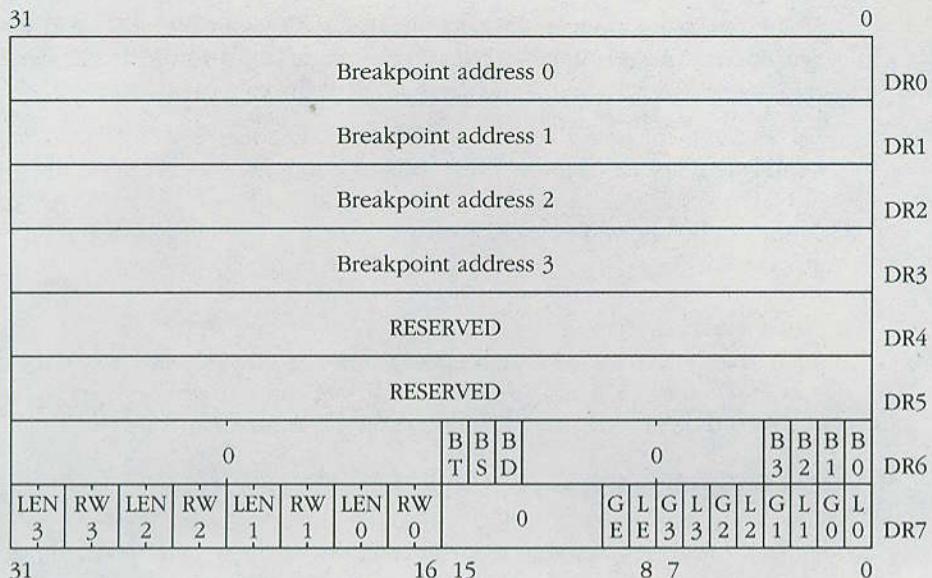


Figure 5-15. Debug registers.

Register DR6 is the status register. It indicates the condition(s) that lead to the interrupt. A bit is set to 1 in DR6 if the condition associated with the bit has been met. The following table identifies the bits and the reasons for the interrupt.

Bit	Reason
B0	Breakpoint register 0 triggered
B1	Breakpoint register 1 triggered
B2	Breakpoint register 2 triggered
B3	Breakpoint register 3 triggered
BD	Intel ICE hardware active
BS	Single step (TF set to 1)
BT	TSS T bit set to 1

Bits B0–B3 are set to 1 if the breakpoint in DR0–DR3 was matched during execution, even if the breakpoint was *not* enabled and did not cause the debug fault.

When Intel ICE-386 hardware is used, the debug registers are reserved for the in-circuit emulator. The BD bit is set to 1, and any attempt to place (MOV) a value in one of the debug registers triggers an interrupt 1.

The debug interrupt handler must clear the contents of register DR6. The CPU sets bits, but bits can be cleared only programmatically.

DR7 is the debug control register. Placing an address in DR0–DR3 will not enable a breakpoint. The enable bit(s) in DR7 must be set, as must the breakpoint length and condition.

The LEN n fields let you specify the length of breakpoint n . The length values are encoded as follows:

- 00**—Byte / breakpoint legal at any address
- 01**—Word (2 bytes) / breakpoint must be on even address
- 10**—Reserved for future use
- 11**—Dword (4 bytes) / breakpoint address must be on dword boundary

The R/W n field lets you specify the type of memory access that triggers breakpoint n . This field is encoded as shown below:

- 00**—Execution breakpoint
- 01**—Memory write breakpoint
- 10**—Reserved for future use
- 11**—Memory read or write breakpoint

When R/W is set to 00B, an execution breakpoint, the corresponding LEN field also must be set to 00B. An execution breakpoint is triggered only if the breakpoint address is set to the first byte of the instruction. If any prefix bytes are part of the instruction, the breakpoint must be set to the address at the first prefix byte.

The L n and G n bits allow breakpoints to be locally or globally enabled. If neither the L nor the G bit is set, the breakpoint is disabled and does not trigger an interrupt, although the corresponding bit in DR6 is set if the breakpoint condition is met.

If only the L bit is set, the breakpoint is locally enabled. A task switch clears the L bits. The system should mark the T bit in the TSS of the task using locally enabled breakpoints so that an interrupt 1 occurs when the task is reactivated. Then, the L bits can be reset.

If the G bit is set, the breakpoint is globally enabled and can be disabled only by clearing G to 0. Setting both the L and G bits equals setting the G bit.

Register DR7 contains two other bits, LE and GE. When either bit is set, it enables the exact match condition. When exact match is enabled, the 80386 processor slows to ensure that the interrupt 1 fault reports the instruction that triggered the breakpoint. If LE and GE are 0, the 80386 might get ahead of the debug unit because of the internal parallelism in the processor, and the CS and EIP on the interrupt handler stack might point one or two instructions beyond the one that triggered the fault. The performance loss is not significant, and LE and GE should be enabled. The difference between the two bits is that LE is cleared after a task switch, as are the L n bits.

Triggering the debug interrupt

The following table shows how the address and control fields define a breakpoint condition and gives examples of instructions that do or do not trigger the breakpoint. The table assumes a base address of CS = 0003A000H and DS = 0004C000H.

<i>Debug Register Settings</i>	<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Break-point</i>	<i>Reason</i>
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 00B, LEN0 = 00B	MOV AL, [20]	N	Execution breakpoint
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 11B, LEN0 = 00B	MOV AL, [20]	Y	Byte 4C020H read
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 10B, LEN0 = 00B	MOV AL, [20]	N	Breakpoint on write access only
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 11B, LEN0 = 11B	MOV AL, [23]	Y	Breakpoint covers 4 bytes
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 11B, LEN0 = 11B	INC DWORD PTR [01E]	Y	Dword extends into breakpoint area
DRO: 0004C020H DR7: LEO = 0, RW0 = 11B, LEN0 = 11B	INC DWORD PTR [01E]	N	Breakpoint not enabled
DRO: 0003A000H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 00B, LEN0 = 00B	CS:0000 MOV AL, 37H	Y	Execution breakpoint
DRO: 0003A001H DR7: LEO = 1, RW0 = 00B, LEN0 = 00B	CS:0000 MOV AL, 37H	N	Execution breakpoint not at first byte of instruction

MEMORY ARCHITECTURE: PAGING

Paging is used to implement virtual memory based on fixed-size blocks called *pages*. Paging is probably the most widely used virtual memory technique on today's minicomputers and mainframes.

Like segmentation, paging translates virtual addresses into physical addresses. Addresses are translated by mapping fixed-size blocks of memory into physical memory locations called *page frames*. Consider a physical memory system composed of page frames 0, 1, 2, and 3, each having 10 bytes of memory. A virtual address consists of a frame name and an offset, so assume that the frames have the names A, B, C, and D. The memory system also contains a page table for converting the virtual address into a physical address. Figure 6-1 shows how virtual address C7 is mapped into physical address 17. The arrows indicate the page mapping.

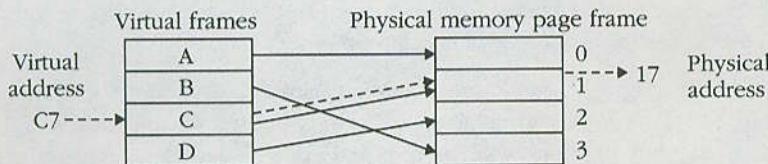


Figure 6-1. Translating a virtual address to a physical address.

Segmentation and paging are similar: A name and an offset are translated to an address. This mapping is the essence of virtual memory. However, segmentation and mapping are also different. Assume that any virtual address from the previous example consists of a two-digit number and that the digit in the 10's place is the frame name, rather than a letter, as in Figure 6-1. A virtual memory translation would resemble Figure 6-2 on the following page. In this example, virtual address 27 is translated to physical address 17.

Because pages have a fixed size, a virtual address can be easily separated into a name and an offset. A page table lookup converts every virtual address into a physical address.

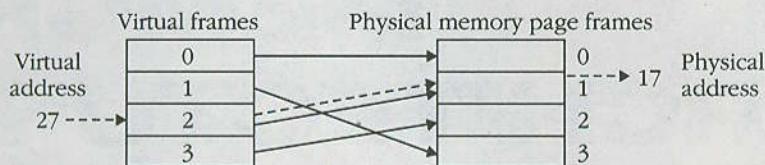


Figure 6-2. Virtual address translation of fixed-size elements.

Advantages and Disadvantages

A fixed page size is the key to the advantages of paging over segmentation. Because a disk is usually the secondary storage for a virtual memory system, you can choose page sizes that map well into the sector size of the disk. Paging also avoids the fragmentation problem of segmentation. Every time a page is swapped out, another page fits exactly into the freed page frame.

Another advantage of paging is that allocation for a large object (for example, a memory segment) does not have to be contiguous. An object that was contained in virtual pages 1 and 2 in Figure 6-2 would not be stored in consecutive physical memory locations.

Finally, paging is invisible to the programmer. Unlike segmentation, which requires you to know the virtual name (segment) and offset of an object in memory, paging requires you to know only one address. The virtual address is broken down into its components by the virtual memory mechanism in the hardware.

Paging isn't perfect. Using paging means losing the protection rings implemented with segmentation. Paging is also subject to a different kind of fragmentation, called *internal fragmentation*, which occurs when you store objects that do not fit into a page or a sequence of pages. For example, if the page size is 10 bytes, an 11-byte object requires two pages, which wastes memory.

Additionally, paging incurs more overhead than does segmentation. In a segmented system, the table lookups that are needed to convert a virtual address to a physical one occur only when a new segment is loaded. In a paged system, a virtual-to-physical translation must be performed for every memory access. This would not be an issue if the entire page table could be stored in the CPU, but processors with gigabyte address spaces require very large page tables.

These problems are not insurmountable, however. You can implement a simple protection scheme with paging alone, plus, on the 80386, you can use segmentation and paging together. Internal fragmentation is not usually as serious as segment fragmentation, and the 80386 uses parallelism and a special cache called the translation lookaside buffer (TLB) to help alleviate the page translation overhead.

Paging on the 80386

The size of a page frame on the 80386 is 4096, or 2^{12} , bytes. Paging is enabled when the PG bit of CR0 is set to 1. (Once paging is enabled, usually by operating system software, it will probably not be disabled.) Translation treats the linear address generated by the segmentation unit as a virtual address and performs page mapping on it. Thus, memory references on the 80386 go through the following stages:

Segment:offset → linear address → physical address

A linear address is a 32-bit value. To interpret it as a virtual address, take the high-order 20 bits as a frame name, and use the low-order 12 bits as an offset into the 4096-byte page. To generate a 32-bit physical address, each entry in the page table must translate the frame name to a frame address. Frame address 0 corresponds to physical addresses 0–4095, frame address 1 identifies physical addresses 4096–8191, and so on. A page table entry must also provide additional page status bits for a protection model and for swapping. Thus, an 80386 page table entry has this format:

31	12 11	0
Page frame address 31...12	Avail 0 0 D A 0 0 U / S R / W P	

The bits marked 0 are reserved for use by future Intel processors. The field marked *Avail* can be used by system programmers to mark pages that are shared among tasks, to hold usage information, or to store other paging data. The page frame address becomes the high-order bits of the physical address. The 80386 sets the D (dirty) bit to 1 when a write operation occurs within the specified page. The CPU sets the A (accessed) bit to 1 when any memory access (read, write, or fetch) occurs within the page.

The U/S and R/W bits are part of paging's protection mechanism. They are discussed in this chapter's "Page Protection" section.

When the P (present) bit is set to 1, the page is present in memory. If P = 0, the page is assumed to be swapped to disk, and any attempt to access the page results in a page fault (interrupt 13). When P = 0, all other bits in the page table (31–1) are irrelevant to the 80386 and can be used by the system programmer. Frequently, a swapped page's location on disk is stored in those bits when the page is not present.

Page Tables and Page Directories

Each page is 2^{12} bytes, and physical address space is 2^{32} bytes, so 2^{20} (more than 1 million) page table entries are required to implement a virtual-to-physical translation table. Because each entry takes up 4 bytes, a page table requires 4 MB of memory. If a frame address alone indicated the page table entry, the page table would require 4 MB of contiguous memory. In a multitasking system that provides a separate virtual address space for each task, each task requires a 4 MB block of memory in addition to its code and data.

The solution to this space problem, swapping out the page table, cannot be implemented with a simple, one-level page table. For example, if a program tries to access address x , the page table entry (PTE) for x must be brought into memory. Because the page table is itself paged, the PTE for $PTE(x)$ must be brought into memory first. Swapping continues until the initial page of the page table is swapped in.

A better solution, the one implemented by the 80386, is a two-level page table. In this scheme, the virtual name component of the virtual address (the high-order 20 bits) is split into two parts. The high-order 10 bits are used as an index into a *page directory*. A page directory entry (PDE) points to a scaled-down page table that contains 1024 entries. The 10 bits left over in the virtual address select the page table entries from the page table. Figure 6-3 illustrates the two-level page structure.

This structure solves the problem of swapping out the page table because the initial lookup goes through the page directory. The page directory, with 1024 32-bit entries, takes up only 4 KB and is permanently stored in memory. Each page table also takes up 4 KB (fits right into a page!) and has 1024 page table entries.

Register CR3 contains the physical address of the page directory for a task. CR3 is the only 80386 register that contains a physical memory address. A page directory entry has the same format as a page table entry except that the D bit is unused and the A bit is set to 1 whenever one of the page tables pointed to by the page directory is used.

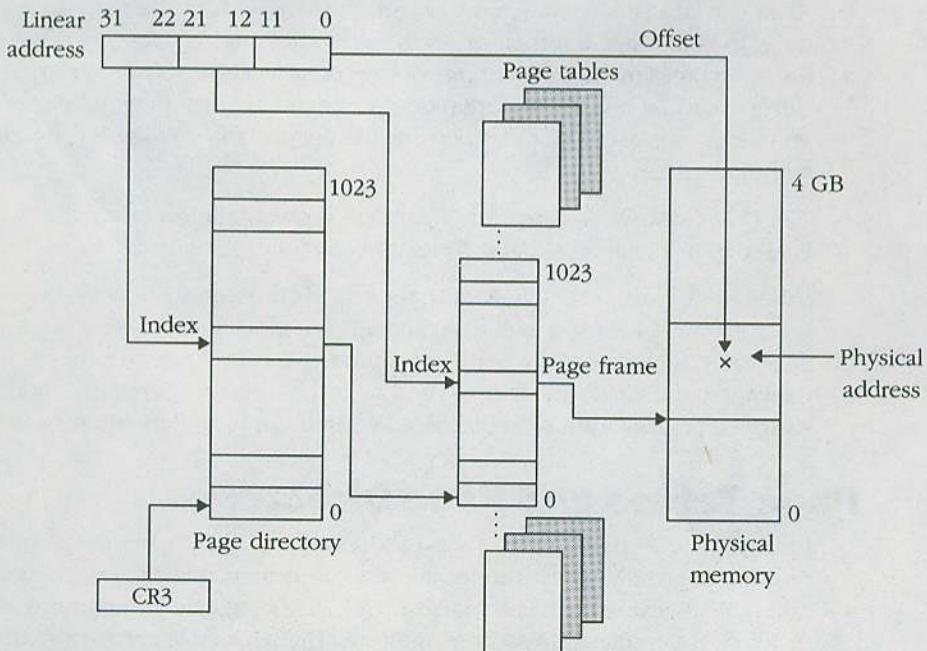


Figure 6-3. 80386 page table/directory structure.

A detailed example

Figure 6-4 shows a linear address that is translated to a physical address via paging. Assume that an instruction refers to the linear address 13A49F01H. The frame name (13A49H) is split into a directory index (04EH) and a page table index (249H). The page directory is at the address specified by register CR3, location 1C000H. The page directory element number 04EH is selected. It contains the value 3A7A2xxxH, where *xxx* represents the page status bits. If the present bit is set, the page table begins at location 3A7A2000H, and page table entry number 249H is selected. In the example, this entry contains the value 2C115xxxH, where *xxx* represents the contents of the status bits. The offset of the linear address is appended to the page frame to yield a physical address of 2C115F01H.

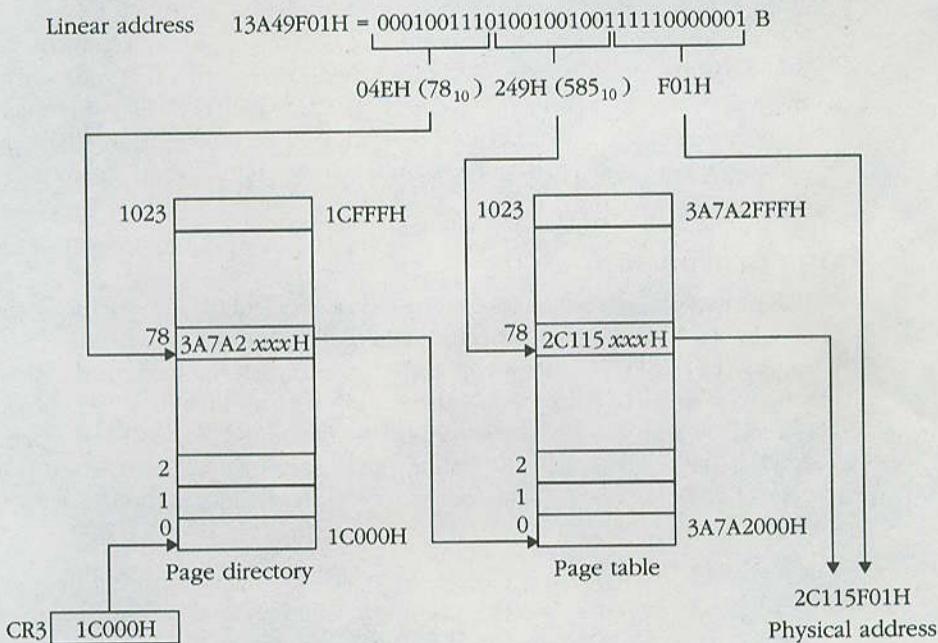


Figure 6-4. Page translation process.

As the example shows, referring to a single memory location when paging is enabled requires three references: a memory read of the page directory, a read of the page table, and the target memory access.

The Translation Lookaside Buffer

To eliminate the extra bus cycles that paging imposes on memory references, the 80386 contains the TLB, a content-addressable cache memory. The TLB stores the 32 most frequently used page table entries and page directory entries on chip. Whenever a page table request occurs, the TLB is checked first. If the table entry is

found (a "cache hit"), the 80386 translates the address with no additional memory overhead. More than 98 percent of all references result in a cache hit, leaving less than 2 percent of all memory references degraded by additional cycles.

The TLB is flushed whenever register CR3 is loaded with a new base address. Because the table entries are cached on the 80386 chip, maintaining page table consistency in multiprocessor environments is important. When one processor modifies a page table (that may be in another processor's cache) or a page directory, the processor must signal the other processors and force them to flush their TLBs. The other processors must then load the modified tables. The LOCK prefix should precede any accesses to the page tables to eliminate simultaneous access.

Page Faults

If a page descriptor is marked not present (P = 0), a page fault (interrupt 14) occurs. When this happens, register CR2 stores the linear address that caused the fault, and an error code is pushed onto the stack. Page faults can also be caused by violations of the page protection rules, described in the next section. Chapter 5 contains additional information about page faults in the section called "Interrupts and Exceptions."

Page protection

The format of a page directory entry and of a page table entry includes bits marked U/S and R/W. The U/S bit specifies whether a page is a user page (U/S = 1) or a supervisor page (U/S = 0). A supervisor page cannot be used by any procedure running with a CPL of 3. However, a procedure with a CPL of 0, 1, or 2 can access a supervisor page. User pages are accessible regardless of the CPL. If a page directory entry is marked with U/S = 0, only a supervisor procedure can access pages in the page table pointed to by that directory entry, regardless of the U/S setting in the individual page table entries.

For a user level program (CPL = 3), access to individual pages can be restricted further with the R/W bit. A user level program can read or can execute any user level pages but can write to a page only if the R/W bit is set to 1 in the page directory and in the page table entries. A supervisor level program can read or can write pages regardless of the settings of the R/W bits. The rules are summarized by these formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{read_access(addr)} &= (\text{CPL} < 3) \mid (\text{PDE(U/S)} = 1 \& \text{PTE(U/S)} = 1) \\ \text{write_access(addr)} &= (\text{CPL} < 3) \mid (\text{read_access(addr)} \& \text{PDE(R/W)} = 1 \& \\ &\quad \text{PTE(R/W)} = 1) \end{aligned}$$

When a user level process loads a selector, issues a software interrupt, or generates an access to the GDT, LDT, TSS, or IDT to load a descriptor, system table reads and writes are treated as supervisor level accesses. Pushing values onto an inner-ring

stack segment is also treated as a supervisor level access. If the system tables had to be stored in user level pages, they would be less secure than if stored in supervisor level pages.

Combined Paging and Segmentation

Although simulating a flat address space is possible in the 80386, most systems will probably use some segmentation. No special restrictions apply when combining segmentation and paging, although observing certain rules can make life easier for the operating system designer.

For example, segments do not need to fit into a single page or into a multiple of n pages; a page can contain portions of more than one segment, or vice versa. However, memory management is easier if all segments are multiples of 4096 bytes. You can mark all segment limits as page granular (G = 1 in the segment descriptor), and each segment limit field will contain the number of pages required to hold the segment, less one.

To support page protection, an operating system should implement at least level 0 and level 3 segment protection rings. This is not a problem, even in systems simulating a flat memory architecture. All user level programs can share the same level 3 code segment and level 3 data segment, and the operating system can use two level 0 segments. Both sets of segments can map into the same linear address space, so the use of different selectors will be invisible except for the privilege level.

Multitasking

Operating system designers can choose to support either a single memory map (one for each task) or multiple memory maps (one for the system and one for each application). A single virtual memory space is the simplest approach; however, any system that supports multiple virtual 8086-mode tasks needs a different set of page tables for each V86 task. In V86 mode, each task accesses linear addresses 0 to 1 MB. There must be a separate physical address space for each linear address space. Figure 6-5 on the following page shows how V86 tasks can be mapped to physical memory.

The 80386 supports different page tables for each task by saving and restoring the CR3 register in the task state segment. To save itself from having one 4 MB page table per task, an operating system can limit the linear address space of an application to a subset of paging's 32-bit, 4 GB virtual memory size.

For example, if an operating system limits each application to 8 MB of linear address space, it needs to manage only two page tables and the page directory. Each unused page directory entry is marked not present (P = 0). Trying to access an illegal memory address results in a page fault, and the operating system can tell whether the fault represents a swapped-out page or an illegal memory reference. Figure 6-6 on the following page illustrates such a system.

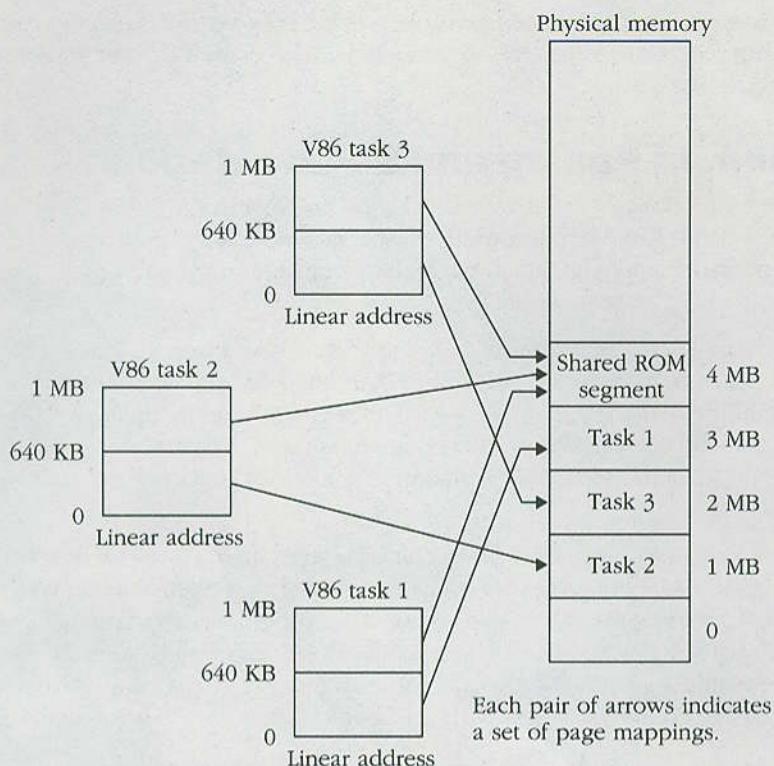


Figure 6-5. Mapping V86 tasks to physical memory.

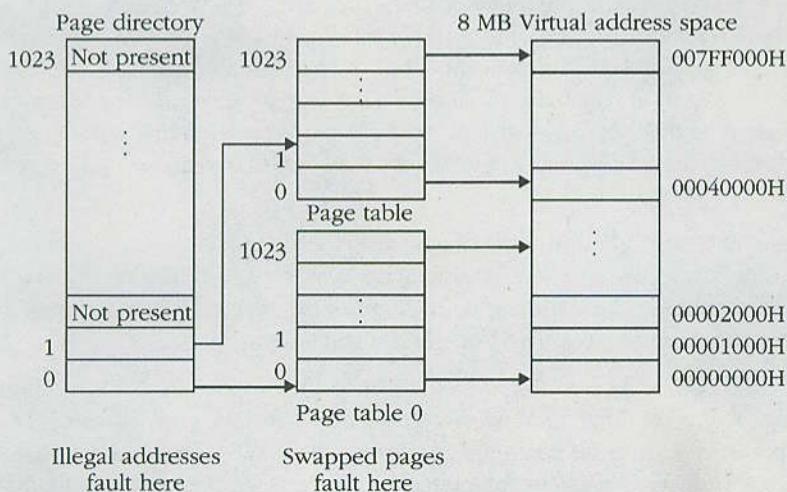


Figure 6-6. Page tables required to support 8 MB of memory.

Application designers should know address space restrictions. Some operating systems might have a way to request a larger virtual address space with a system call, but others might not.

Performance is another concern for application designers in a demand-paged system. A key to system performance is the size of the application's *working set*. The working set is the number of application pages that the operating system tries to keep in physical memory at one time.

For example, assume that an application is computing the sum of two arrays into a third array, as represented by the following program fragment:

```
int a[1024], b[1024], c[1024];
.
.
.
for (i = 0; i < 1024; i++)
    a[i] = b[i] + c[i];
```

The code for the program resides in one page, and each array (a, b, and c) resides in a separate page. If the operating system provided a working set of three pages per application, this program would run slowly because two pages would have to be swapped to disk for every *for* loop iteration. Figure 6-7 illustrates the swap.

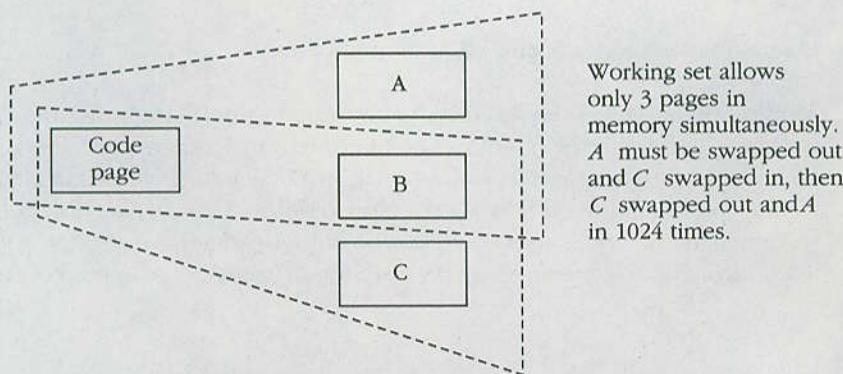


Figure 6-7. Swapping a working set.

Most operating systems provide working sets much larger than three pages per application, but applications with large memory requirements might see similar results. If you write an application that requires a large amount of memory, you might improve its performance by changing the program's *locality of reference*.

The previous program fragment needs access to many pages for every cycle through the loop. If this program were running under the operating system described previously, you could increase its performance by changing the data structure so that a_i , b_i , and c_i reside in the same page.

```

struct {
    int a, b, c;
} block[1024];

for (i = 0; i < 1024; i++)
    block[i].a = block[i].b + block[i].c;

```

The program now runs with only two page swaps, as shown in Figure 6-8.

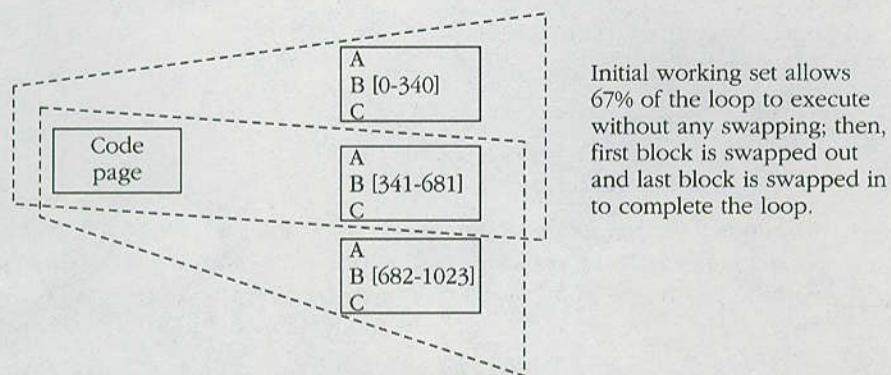


Figure 6-8. Reducing swapping via locality of reference.

Application designers should consider how paging affects their programs. Although many designers will see no impact on their programs, others might need to modify code. A classic example is a program such as a LISP interpreter, which manipulates a large number of linked-list data structures. Unless a mechanism forces locality of reference on the lists, a user could end up with lists that have pointers to cells scattered throughout the address space, resulting in excessive swapping overhead.

THREE IN ONE

In earlier chapters I alluded to the 80386's ability to run software written for previous Intel microprocessors. This chapter explores this ability and discusses how to make the most of it.

The 80386 provides an almost ideal upgrade path from previous generations of Intel processors. In real mode, the 80386 can run 8086-family programs. It can switch into protected mode and execute 80286 software. The native mode of the 80386 expands the protected-mode capabilities with 32-bit operations and eliminates the 64 KB segment restrictions of the 80286. Virtual 8086 mode also lets you run real-mode programs in protected mode; this is advantageous because there are many more real-mode applications available than protected-mode applications.

Real Mode

When the 80386 is powered up or reinitialized via the hardware RESET\ line, the CPU is in real (real-address) mode. In real mode, all of the CPU's protection features are disabled, paging is not supported, and program addresses correspond to physical memory addresses. The address space is limited to 1 MB of physical memory. Real mode is compatible with the 8086, the 8088, the 80186, the 80188, and the real mode of the 80286. Minor differences between real mode on the 80386 and other processors are listed in Appendix F.

When the 80386 is reset, the registers are initialized to the values shown in the table on the following page.

Register	Value	Explanation
DH	3	3 for 80386
DL	<id>	Identifies revision number of CPU
EFLAGS	2	
IDTR	0 (base), 3FFH (limit) (see below)	
CS	F000H	Descriptor base set to FFFF0000H
IP	FFF0H	First instruction at FFFFFFFFOH
SS	0	Base address 0
ESP	?	Undefined, load SS:ESP before using stack
DS	0	Base address 0
ES	0	Base address 0
FS	0	Base address 0
GS	0	Base address 0
CRO	0000000x0H	Bit 4 = 1 if 80387 present, 0 otherwise Bits 5–30 are undefined

Memory addressing

The 80386's use of shadow registers (segment descriptor caches) provides a key to understanding real-mode memory addressing. Each 80386 segment register that holds a selector has an invisible component called a shadow register. In protected mode, every time a selector is loaded into a segment register, the contents of the descriptor indicated by the selector are loaded into the shadow portion. In real mode, the shadow register is loaded with a computed value rather than with a value extracted from a descriptor. Figure 7-1 illustrates the shadow registers.

When the 80386 is reset, the shadow registers for segments other than CS are loaded with a base address value of 0 and a limit of 0FFFFH, with attributes set to 16-bit addressing; 16-bit instruction set; read, write, and execute ability; and privilege level 0. The CS shadow registers are set with the same limit and access bits as the other shadow registers, but have a base address of FFFF0000H. Except for the registers listed in the above table, 80386 registers are undefined.

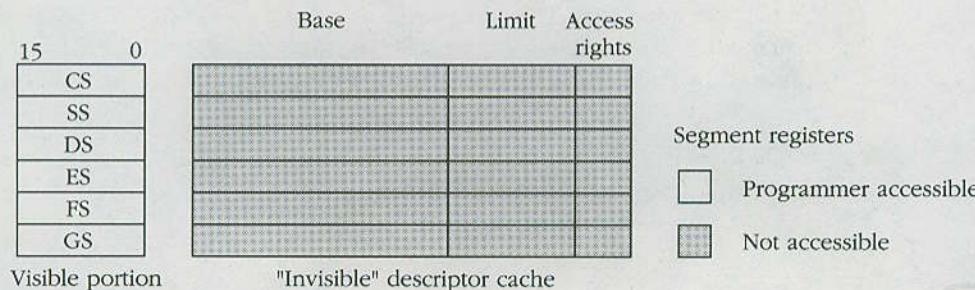


Figure 7-1. 80386 shadow registers.

At reset, the limit portions of the shadow registers are set to 0FFFFH, which indicates a 64 KB segment. The access rights portion is set to a value indicating that the segment is readable, writable, and executable and that 16-bit addressing and operand modes are enabled. These values remain constant while the processor is in real mode, and only the base address value is altered. Each time a segment register is loaded, the base address portion of the shadow register is set to 16 times the value of the selector. For example, loading DS with the value of 001AH sets the base address of the DS segment to 01A0H. Because all the segments in real mode are 64 KB, the segment addressable via DS extends from 01A0H to 1019FH. Figure 7-2 illustrates physical address generation in real mode.

The highest segment base address that can be generated in real mode is 0FFFF0H, 16 bytes short of 1 MB. Because that segment extends for 64 KB, memory beyond 1 MB can be addressed. Thus, 80386 real-mode addressing is somewhat incompatible with that of the 8086, which hardware address lines limit to 1 MB. Generally, this limitation can be ignored because 8086 programs do not use it. If needed, external hardware can be added to the 80386 to limit system address space to 20 bits while operating in real mode.

The reset state of the CS shadow register does not follow the “selector times 16” rule. Because the initial base address for the code segment is set to FFFF0000H, ROMs that handle processor reset can be placed at the end of the address space. The first CALL or JMP instruction that loads CS after reset forces the base address into the first megabyte of address space.

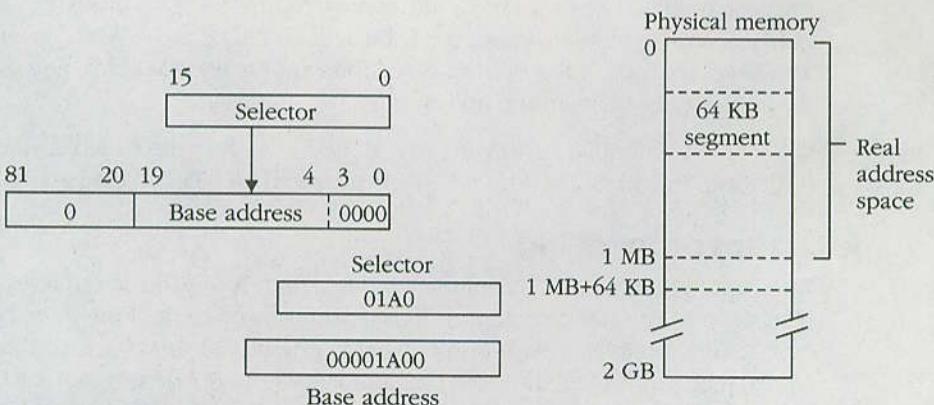


Figure 7-2. Real-mode addressing.

16-bit instruction set

The predefined shadow register values cause another side effect. The D bit in the access rights field is always set to 0 in real mode. Thus, the 80386 is forced to operate in 16-bit mode unless it encounters an OPSIZ or ADRSIZ prefix.

To understand how the D bit works, examine the 8086 instruction set. Most 8086 instructions execute with either a byte operand or a word operand. The byte/word indicator is encoded in one bit in the instruction. For example, the opcode for negating a byte operand is 11110110B, and the opcode for negating a word operand is 11110111B.

Rather than invent new opcodes for 32-bit (dword) operands, 80386 designers changed the meaning of the opcode bit that signifies a word operand. When executing in a native-mode (32-bit) segment, where the D bit in the segment descriptor is set to 1, executing opcode 11110110B means negate *byte* and 11110111B means negate *dword*. The instructions refer to bytes and dwords rather than to bytes and words. When the D bit of a descriptor is set to 0, however, the opcodes retain their original meanings.

The D bit also affects address computation for memory operands and the stack. When D = 0, corresponding to the 8086, the 16-bit registers are used in calculating segment offsets, as in MOV AL, [SI+8]. When D = 1, corresponding to the 32-bit native mode of the 80386, the same opcode bits cause the memory address to be calculated using the 32-bit registers, and the instruction becomes MOV AL, [ESI+8]. When D = 0 in stack segment descriptors, PUSH and POP instructions access 16-bit operands. When D = 1, 32-bit pushes and pops are executed.

The OPSIZ and ADRSIZ prefixes can override the current D bit setting for an instruction. Thus, 32-bit native-mode instructions can be prefixed to use 16-bit operands, and 16-bit code can be prefixed to access 32-bit operands and 32-bit addressing modes. The new 80386 addressing features (such as indexing) are not available in segments that have the D bit set to 0 unless the ADRSIZ prefix is used. You need not specify the prefix instructions; use extended-addressing mode, and the assembler will insert the prefix.

When using extended addressing in real mode, observe the 64 KB segment size limitation. In real mode, address offsets greater than 65535 return an interrupt 13.

Interrupt processing

Interrupt handling is different in real mode than it is in protected mode. As in protected mode, the IDTR contains the base address and limit of the interrupt table. For 8086 compatibility, the base is initialized to physical address 0 with a limit of 3FFH. In real mode, however, the interrupt table does not hold descriptors; each interrupt has a 32-bit selector:offset address that points to the routine to be invoked when an interrupt occurs. Thus, each entry is 4 bytes rather than 8 bytes. Figure 7-3 illustrates the real-mode interrupt vector table.

Processing of an interrupt in real mode is similar to that in protected mode except for the use of vectors instead of descriptors. A software or hardware interrupt causes the 16-bit FLAGS register to be pushed onto the stack, followed by the current CS and IP. The IF and TF flags are cleared to 0, disabling interrupts and single-stepping.

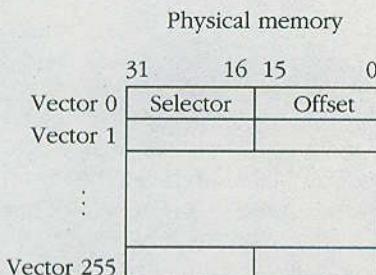


Figure 7-3. Real-mode interrupt vector table.

The pointer from the interrupt table is loaded into CS and IP, and processing continues at the new location. Automatic task switching and interrupt gates are not present because no descriptor tables exist in real mode. The vector in the interrupt table specifies a new execution address only.

Real-mode restrictions

You can use all the instructions added to the Intel 80386 architecture since the introduction of the 8086, with the exception of:

LAR
 LLDT
 LSL
 LTR
 SLDT
 STR
 VERR
 VERW

Real mode does not support the ways that these instructions access protected-mode selectors and descriptors. Executing one of these instructions returns an undefined opcode fault (interrupt 6).

You can execute all other 80386 instructions. Real-mode programs can access any 80386 register, including the control, debug, and test registers.

Real mode does not support paging. Setting the PG bit in register CR3 to enable paging causes a protection fault.

Appendix F outlines the differences among the operations of the 8086, the 80286 in real mode, and the 80386.

Protected Mode

Setting the low-order bit of CR0 to 1 switches the processor into protected mode. The processor will run in protected mode even if no setup is done. That is, it will run until the first interrupt, FAR program transfer, or segment register load. At this point, the processor needs to access a descriptor table. Because the 80386 depends on descriptor tables, the system will shut down if the descriptor tables have not been initialized.

Protected-mode initialization requires you to set up a global descriptor table and interrupt descriptor tables and to create a task state segment for the first process. The initial descriptor tables may be stored in ROM, but they must be copied to RAM before setting the GDTR and IDTR to point to them because the 80386 needs to write to the descriptors as well as read from them.

Figure 7-4 shows a simple initial GDT. This GDT would be sufficient to run additional startup code. You could also build the operating system image in real mode and then switch into protected mode. An advantage of switching into protected mode as soon as possible after reset is that the 80386 hardware can help trap startup bugs early in the code development cycle.

In Figure 7-4, GDT(0) is unused because a selector value of 0 is treated as a special case, a NULL pointer. Thus, any descriptor at GDT(0) will never be used. GDT(1) points to the GDT as a writable data segment, allowing the operating system to add, delete, and change descriptors as needed. GDT(2) points to the IDT as a writable data segment for the same reason. GDT(3) defines the TSS for the startup task, GDT(4) defines the task's data segment, and GDT(5) defines the task's code segments, which are in ROM.

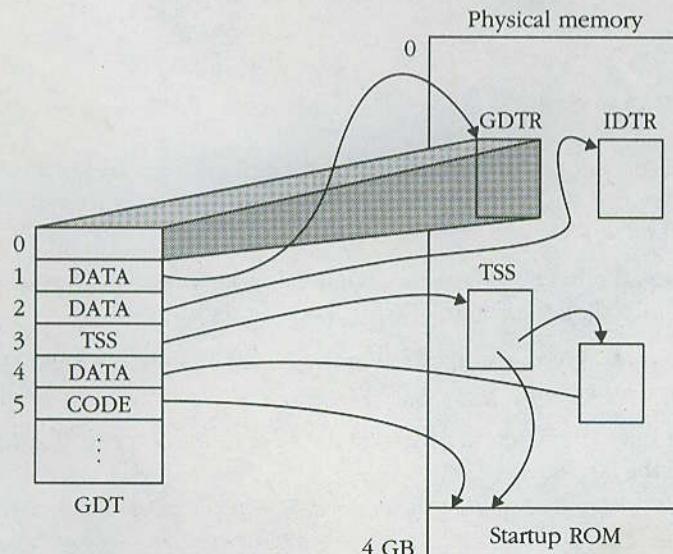


Figure 7-4. A simple GDT.

Before enabling protected mode, the GDTR must be loaded with the address and limit of the GDT. The IDT should contain gates that point to code that traps any faults that occur during startup. The IDTR is initialized to point to the IDT, and TR is loaded with the selector of GDT(3). The PM bit is then set in the CR0 register to enable protected mode. Next, a FAR jump instruction loads the CS register with a valid protected-mode descriptor. Finally, the stack segment, stack pointer, and data segment registers are loaded. The initialization will build the rest of the operating system, enable paging, and start application programs.

80286 compatibility

Protected-mode 80286 code executes on the 80386 if the fourth word of each descriptor is initialized to 0. Descriptors are 64 bits on the 80286, as on the 80386, but the last 16 bits are unused. In the 80386, the extra bits specify the high order of the base address and the limit fields and contain the G and D control bits. These new fields should be set to 0, restricting segment limits to 64 KB and activating the 16-bit instruction set (which is compatible with the 80286).

The 80286 and the 80386 operate similarly; the few differences in operation concern performance and newly implemented features and instructions. The 80386 allows the LOCK prefix to precede the following instructions only when they modify memory:

ADC	INC
ADD	NEG
AND	NOT
BT	OR
BTC	SBB
BTR	SUB
BTS	XCHG
DEC	XOR

Illegal use of the LOCK prefix results in a protection fault on the 80386. Additionally, the 80286 locks all of physical memory during the instruction; on the 80386, the locked area is the memory region with the same starting address and length as the operand of the locked instruction.

The machine status word (MSW) is the low-order 16 bits of register CR0. The MSW is initialized to 0FFF0H on the 80286, but it is initialized to 0 on the 80386. Registers that are specified as undefined at reset might have different values than they do on the 80286.

At reset, the base address of the CS register is different on the 80386 than it is on the 80286. The CS register is set to the last 16 bytes of address space on both processors, but the 80286 supports only 24-bit addresses; the 80386 supports 32-bit addresses.

Returning to real mode

In general, an operating system should not switch the 80386 to real mode after running in protected mode. Returning to real mode compromises operating system security because real mode is more vulnerable to crashes. To run real-mode programs, create special tasks that run in virtual 8086 (V86) mode. The next section discusses this process.

If you must return to real mode, follow this procedure: If paging is enabled, turn it off by branching to a routine whose linear and physical addresses are the same, clearing the PG bit in CR0, and moving 0 into CR3 to flush the TLB.

The attribute bits in each segment descriptor must be set to values compatible with real-mode operation (that is, they must be byte granular segments with a limit of 0FFFFH, and the B and D bits must be 0). CS must be marked executable, and SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS should be writable segments. (Change the CS selector by issuing a FAR jump or call instruction.)

Disable interrupts, and load the IDTR with a base address of 0 and a limit of 3FFH. Clear the PE bit of the CR0 register to return to real mode, and execute a FAR jump to flush the 80386 instruction queue and initialize CS to a valid real-mode base address.

Once you load the stack pointer (SS:SP) and the other segment registers, programs can continue processing in real mode.

Virtual 8086 Mode

Just as virtual memory allows the processor to create the impression of memory that isn't really there, virtual 8086 mode allows the 80386 to create the illusion of multiple 8086 processors. This illusion is so nearly complete that multiple 8086-based operating systems can run under a supervisory protected-mode operating system. For example, assume that the native-mode operating system for an 80386 computer is UNIX and that support for V86 mode is built in. In addition to running multiple UNIX tasks, the user can run a copy of MS-DOS and a word processor in a V86 window. The user can also invoke another virtual 8086 session running a spreadsheet under Windows. Each V86 task believes that it is running on a separate 8086 machine but actually runs concurrently with host operating system tasks.

V86 mode was designed for the 80386 in response to the negative reaction toward 80286 protected mode. Application designers developed a large software base for the 8086 family under MS-DOS. The 8086 and 8088 processors support only real-mode programming, and MS-DOS is sensitive to the mapping between selector values and physical addresses. When Intel introduced the 80286, developers found that MS-DOS programs had problems running in protected mode.

If MS-DOS were less sensitive to physical addressing, most applications could be easily ported to 80286 protected mode. Operating systems such as Concurrent CP/M and Microsoft Windows created environments that relied less on the idiosyncrasies of real mode, but because of DOS's wide popularity the marketplace demanded support of real mode.

V86 mode was Intel's response to the demand for support of real mode. The 80386's paging and multitasking capabilities enabled designers to implement V86 mode, which overcomes the 1 MB nonprotected limitations of real mode. Because a TSS contains an image of all the general registers, it is the basis of a register image for a virtual machine (in this case, an 8086). Additionally, the TSS contains the extra information needed for protected mode: the inner-ring stack pointers and the page map base register (CR3). The operating system creates a V86 task by setting the VM bit in the EFLAGS image of the task's TSS.

When a task is invoked and the EFLAGS register is loaded (setting the processor's VM bit), the task's code portion behaves as if it were running in real mode. The task does not use descriptors; base addresses are generated by multiplying the selector value by 16. The difference between real mode and V86 mode is that real-mode addresses are *physical addresses* and V86-mode addresses are *linear addresses* that can be mapped via paging hardware.

Thus, the executing program makes the same assumptions about selectors and addresses that a real-mode program does, but the paging hardware, under control of the native-mode supervisor, controls which physical addresses are used by the V86 task. The entire 4 GB address space is available for remapping the V86 task's addresses. The other issue that designers of the 80386 had to face was integrating real-mode programs into a secure, protected-mode environment.

Memory references were not a problem. The paging hardware can isolate the V86-mode program address space from protected-mode programs, preventing data corruption. Besides memory, the only external interfaces to the 80386 CPU are I/O ports and interrupts.

I/O in V86 mode

In protected mode, the I/O privilege level (IOPL) determines whether a procedure can perform I/O instructions. In V86 mode, IOPL protects the interrupt flag (IF), and I/O port protection is performed through the I/O permission bits in the TSS. V86-mode programs run in ring 3; thus, they cannot alter the value of IOPL.

The CPL of a V86-mode task is always 3. If the system IOPL is less than 3, the instructions on the following page return a general protection fault (interrupt 13) with an error code of 0. I/O instructions are not IOPL-sensitive in V86 mode.

CLI
INT
IRET
LOCK
POPF
PUSHF
STI

If the system runs with an IOPL of 3, the V86-mode task will execute the instructions above without triggering the general protection fault. This creates a problem because these instructions modify the interrupt flag. Although 80386 performance may be higher when IOPL = 3, this operating mode is not recommended. Allowing a V86-mode task to disable interrupts could result in a data loss or a system shutdown. For example, the following two-line assembly program locks the system and requires a complete power cycle to bring the system back on line:

```
cli
11: jmp 11
```

Designing a reliable system that runs V86-mode tasks with IOPL = 3 requires hardware support and cannot be implemented with software alone. For example, a watchdog timer can be connected to the NMI interrupt, forcing control back to the operating system if an application appears to have crashed the system.

The I/O permission bitmap of the V86 task state segment determines whether the I/O instruction executes or causes an exception. Figure 7-5 illustrates the I/O permission bitmap in a V86 task state segment.

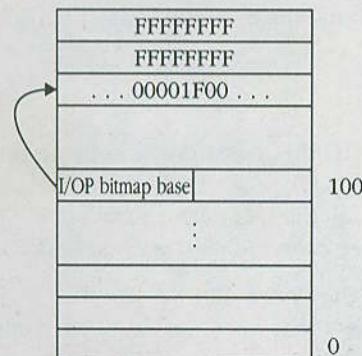


Figure 7-5. I/O permission bitmap.

A tradeoff exists between performance and protection. If you allow all tasks to issue I/O instructions, more than one task might access a device simultaneously. However, if you trap all I/O instructions, programs might run slowly. A compromise is to mark I/O address space as inaccessible until the first fault occurs. By trapping the first I/O instruction to a given port, the operating system can determine whether another task is using the device. If not, the permission bits for the faulting task can be modified to grant access to the specific device, and the task can resume processing at full speed. If some other task is accessing the device, the faulting task can be suspended or terminated.

Memory-mapped devices must be controlled through paging hardware. Pages that correspond to device addresses can be marked “not present” to cause a fault, or they can be mapped to other devices or memory locations for subsequent processing. (The latter is effective for display devices.)

Interrupt handling in V86 mode

Because V86 mode is part of the protected-mode environment, interrupts are handled through the standard protected-mode IDT. The interrupt causes the processor to switch to an inner-ring stack segment. The stack segment's selector is taken from the TSS and is a standard protected-mode selector, as opposed to the value of SS that the V86-mode task is using. Hardware interrupts are fielded by the routines or tasks designated by the gates in the IDT. Software interrupt instructions in the V86 task usually refer to routines in the virtual machine operating system; they are unlikely to correspond to the vectors implemented by the supervisory operating system. Therefore, any operating system that supports V86 tasks must be aware of two possible outcomes of a software INT instruction executed by a V86-mode program.

The most likely outcome is a general protection fault (interrupt 13). Because V86 tasks execute at privilege level 3, accessing a more privileged ring's descriptor causes a general protection fault. The interrupt 13 fault handler must detect when it has been invoked due to a software interrupt instruction from a V86 task.

The error code on the stack indicates the vector that caused the general protection fault. The handler can fetch the contents of the V86 interrupt vector from the V86 task image and branch back to the V86 routine.

A less likely outcome occurs only when IOPL = 3 and when the gate in the IDT has a level 3 descriptor. In this case, the software interrupt causes a branch to the routine pointed to by the gate. This routine must be in ring 0 to prevent a general protection fault. Any interrupt routine that can be invoked by a level 3 gate in the IDT must examine the VM bit in the EFLAGS image on the stack to determine whether the interrupt handler was invoked by a standard protected-mode routine or by a V86 task.

Whenever an interrupt occurs while the processor is executing a V86-mode task, control moves to a ring 0 code segment. Control may transfer directly to ring 0, or it may transfer to the general protection fault handler (which must be in ring 0). The ring 0 stack is slightly different when control comes from a V86 task than when it comes from a protected-mode procedure. All segment registers are pushed onto the ring 0 stack when an interrupt or trap occurs in a V86 task. Figure 7-6 illustrates the differences in the stacks. Note that an error code will also be pushed for certain exception interrupts.

In addition to the extra values pushed onto the stack, all segment registers are reloaded during the transition through the gate. DS, ES, FS, and GS are loaded with a null selector (0), SS is loaded from the ring 0 stack selector in the TSS for the V86 task, and CS is loaded with the descriptor from the interrupt or task gate.

The segment registers must be loaded with new values if the executing task is a V86 task. Before an interrupt, the segment registers contain real-mode style segment addresses, which are not valid selectors for the protected-mode interrupt handler. When the interrupt handler returns via the IRET instruction, the 80386 checks the saved EFLAGS image in the level 0 stack. If the saved VM bit is set, the CPU recognizes that it is returning to a V86-mode task and reloads the segment registers with the saved values on the stack.

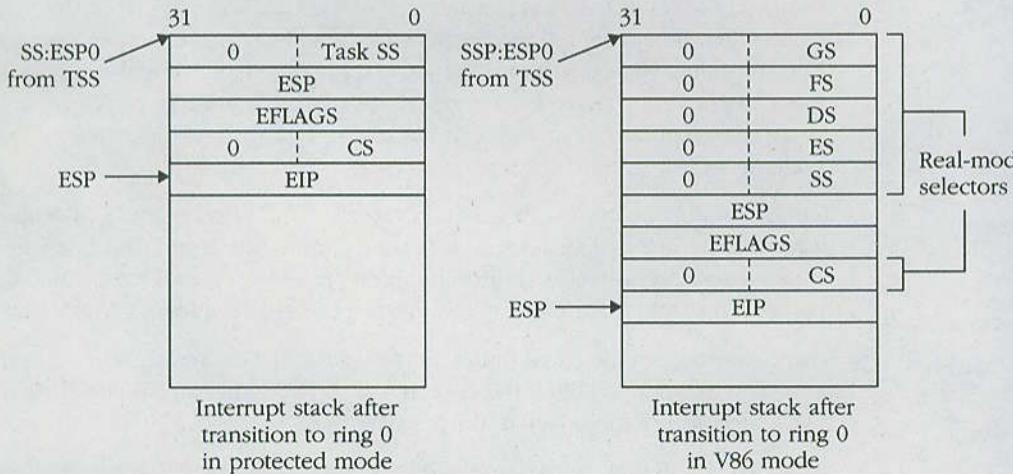


Figure 7-6. Ring 0 interrupt stacks: V86 vs protected mode.

THE 80386/80387 INSTRUCTION SET REFERENCE

This chapter of *The 80386 Book* provides a reference for the 80386 and 80387 instruction sets. The instructions are in alphabetical order, with floating-point instructions following the 80386 instruction pages.

The experienced user can find information with a quick glance at the first part of an instruction; a less experienced user can refer to the detailed descriptions and examples.

Operators

The following reference pages use these operators:

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Operator</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
+	Addition	&	Boolean AND
-	Subtraction	>	Greater than
*	Multiplication	<	Less than
/	Division	>>	Shift right
~	Not	<<	Shift left
=	Equal to	≤	Less than or equal to
!=	Not equal to	≥	Greater than or equal to
|	Or	←	Assignment
^	Exclusive OR		

MNEMONIC. Used by the assembler to represent the instruction.	PROCESSOR TYPE. Processors that support the instruction. Note that earlier processors supported only 8-bit or 16-bit forms.	OPERAND SIZES. When many different operands may be used, this field indicates legal sizes. If the instruction requires more than one operand, they are assumed to be the same size. Unless otherwise stated, 8 = 8-bit operands; 16 = 16-bit operands; 32 = 32-bit operands; 16p = The instruction accepts 16-bit operands by using the 32-bit form and the OPSIZ instruction prefix.																																						
NAME. Name of the instruction.																																								
SYNTAX. Generic instruction format.	CALL Near Procedure Call	80386/80186/80286/80386 (16p/32)																																						
OPERATION. Pseudocode operation description.	Syntax CALL dest																																							
	Operation push(EIP) EIP \leftarrow dest																																							
DESCRIPTION. Description of the instruction.	Legal Forms <table border="1"> <tr> <td>dest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CALL offset : EIP \leftarrow EIP + offset</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CALL mem : EIP \leftarrow [mem]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CALL reg : EIP \leftarrow [reg]</td> </tr> </table>	dest	CALL offset : EIP \leftarrow EIP + offset	CALL mem : EIP \leftarrow [mem]	CALL reg : EIP \leftarrow [reg]																																			
dest																																								
CALL offset : EIP \leftarrow EIP + offset																																								
CALL mem : EIP \leftarrow [mem]																																								
CALL reg : EIP \leftarrow [reg]																																								
FAULTS. Faults that may be triggered by the instruction. The abbreviations used include: #UD (undefined opcode) #NP (not present) #TS (task switch) #GP (general protection) #SF (stack fault) #PF (page fault) A value in parentheses indicates that an error code is pushed onto the stack.	Description This instruction pushes the address of the next instruction (EIP) onto the stack. The instruction pointer is then set to the value specified by the operand. If the operand is an immediate value, the new instruction pointer is relative to the current position. If the operand is a memory address or a register, the subroutine address is taken indirectly from the operand. Flags <table border="1"> <tr> <td>OF</td> <td>DF</td> <td>IF</td> <td>TF</td> <td>SF</td> <td>ZF</td> <td>AF</td> <td>PF</td> <td>CF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> </table> Faults <table border="1"> <tr> <td>PM</td> <td>RM</td> <td>V8086</td> </tr> <tr> <td>12 #NSUD</td> <td>#GP(0)</td> <td>INT 13</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13 #GP(0)</td> <td>#PF(0)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>14 #PF(cc)</td> <td>#PF(cc)</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> Example <table border="1"> <tr> <td>CALL SORT</td> <td>: Call direct</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LEA EBX, FN TABLE</td> <td>: Get pointer to address table</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MOV EAX, 3</td> <td>: Select third function</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CALL [EBX+EAX*4]</td> <td>: Call it</td> </tr> </table>	OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	PM	RM	V8086	12 #NSUD	#GP(0)	INT 13	13 #GP(0)	#PF(0)		14 #PF(cc)	#PF(cc)		CALL SORT	: Call direct	LEA EBX, FN TABLE	: Get pointer to address table	MOV EAX, 3	: Select third function	CALL [EBX+EAX*4]	: Call it	LEGAL FORMS. Legal forms of the instruction. reg = one of the general registers EAX, ESI, BX, DL, BP, DX, etc. mem = a memory operand [021AH], [EBP+EAX * 3], [ECX+7], etc. idata = an immediate data value (32, 17A3H, etc.) sreg = a segment register. offset = an offset from the current CS:IP.
OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF																																
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-																																
PM	RM	V8086																																						
12 #NSUD	#GP(0)	INT 13																																						
13 #GP(0)	#PF(0)																																							
14 #PF(cc)	#PF(cc)																																							
CALL SORT	: Call direct																																							
LEA EBX, FN TABLE	: Get pointer to address table																																							
MOV EAX, 3	: Select third function																																							
CALL [EBX+EAX*4]	: Call it																																							
		FLAGS. OF = Overflow flag. DF = Direction flag. IF = Interrupt enable flag. TF = Trap flag. SF = Sign flag. ZF = Zero flag. AF = Auxiliary flag. PF = Parity flag. CF = Carry flag. An "x" in a box indicates that the specified bit is modified by the instruction. An "?" in a box means that the specified bit value remains unchanged. A "0" or "1" in a box means that the instruction sets the specified bit to that value.																																						
EXAMPLE. Code that illustrates use of the instruction.		173																																						

AAA

8086/80186/80286/80386

ASCII Adjust After Addition

(8)

Syntax

AAA

Operation

```

if (AF | ((AL & 0FH) > 9)) then
    AL ← (AL + 6) & 0FH
    AH ← AH + 1
    CF, AF ← 1
else
    CF, AF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

AAA

Description

This instruction ensures that an ASCII or BCD addition results in a valid BCD digit. After executing an ADD or ADC instruction that leaves a single BCD or ASCII digit in register AL, execute AAA to produce a valid BCD result.

If the value in AL produces a decimal overflow, the BCD digit is forced into the legal range (0–9), and AH is incremented. The high-order nibble is zeroed so that AL contains only the resulting single BCD digit, and the AF and CF flags are set to 1.

If no overflow occurs, the AF and CF flags are reset to 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	X	-

Faults

None.

Example

MOV	AL, '5'	; Binary 35H
ADD	AL, '7'	; Add binary 37H yielding 6CH
AAA		; AL ← 02H, AH ← AH + 1, decimal carry set
OR	AL, 30H	; Convert resulting digit to ASCII '2'

AAD

8086/80186/80286/80386

ASCII Adjust Before Division

(16)

Syntax

AAD

Operation

$$\begin{aligned} AL &\leftarrow AH * 10 + AL \\ AH &\leftarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$
Legal Form

AAD

Description

This instruction supports BCD division. Before execution, the AL register should contain a single, unpacked BCD digit. The AH register should hold the next higher-order BCD digit. After executing the AAD instruction, AX contains the binary equivalent of the two BCD digits. You can then issue the divide instruction, which leaves a binary result.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	X	X	-	?	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV     AH, '4'           ; High-order digit
MOV     AL, '2'           ; Low-order digit (AX = ASCII 42)
AND     AX, 0FOFH         ; Convert to unpacked BCD
AAD
MOV     BL, 6              ; Divisor for 42/6
DIV
OR      AL, 30H           ; Convert result to ASCII '7'

```

AAM

8086/80186/80286/80386

ASCII Adjust After Multiplication

(8)

Syntax

AAM

Operation

$$\begin{aligned} \text{AH} &\leftarrow \text{AL} \text{ div } 10 \\ \text{AL} &\leftarrow \text{AL} \text{ mod } 10 \end{aligned}$$

Legal Form

AAM

Description

The AAM instruction converts the result of a single-digit BCD multiplication (a value 0–81) in the AX register to two unpacked BCD digits, the high-order digit in AH and the low-order digit in AL.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	X	X	-	?	-

Faults

None.

Example

MOV	AL, 4	; Multipland
MOV	AH, 8	; Multiplier
MUL	AH	; AX \leftarrow 20H, 32 decimal
AAM		; AH \leftarrow 3, AL \leftarrow 2
OR	AX, 3030H	; Convert to ASCII '32'

AAS

8086/80186/80286/80386

ASCII Adjust After Subtraction

(8)

Syntax

AAS

Operation

```

if (AF | (AL & 0FH) > 9) then
    AL ← (AL - 6) & 0FH
    AH ← AH - 1
    CF, AF ← 1
else
    CF, AF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

AAS

Description

This instruction ensures that an ASCII or BCD subtraction results in a valid BCD digit. After executing a SUB or SBB instruction that leaves a single BCD or ASCII digit in register AL, execute AAS to produce a valid BCD result.

If the value in AL produces a decimal borrow, the BCD digit is forced into the legal range (0–9) and AH is decremented. The high-order nibble is zeroed so that AL contains only the resulting single BCD digit, and the AF and CF flags are set to 1.

If no borrow occurs, the AF and CF flags are reset to 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	X	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV     AL, '5'          ; 35H
SUB     AL, '7'          ; Subtract 37H yielding 0FEH
AAS
OR      AL, 30H          ; AL ← 08H, carry set indicating "borrow"
                        ; Convert result back to ASCII '8'

```

ADC

8086/80186/80286/80386

Add with Carry

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxADC *dest*, *src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *dest* + *src* + CF**Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
ADC	reg,	idata
ADC	mem,	idata
ADC	reg,	reg
ADC	reg,	mem
ADC	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction adds the contents of the *dest* and *src* operands, increments the result by 1 if the carry flag is set, and stores the result in the location specified by *dest*. The operands must be of the same size. If the operands are signed integers, the OF flag indicates an invalid result. If the operands are unsigned, the CF flag indicates a carry out of the destination.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Example

```
; Subroutine to add two 64-bit integers
ENTER 0, 0          ; Create stack frame
MOV    EAX, [EBP+8]  ; Get low-order of first value
MOV    EDX, [EBP+12] ; Get high-order of first value
ADD    EAX, [EBP+16] ; Add low-order bits, generating carry
ADC    EDX, [EBP+20] ; Add high-order bits with previous carry
LEAVE          ; Undo stack frame
RET             ; Return with value in EDX:EAX
```

ADD

8086/80186/80286/80386

Integer Addition

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxADD *dest*, *src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *dest* + *src***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
ADD	reg.	idata
ADD	mem,	idata
ADD	reg,	reg
ADD	reg,	mem
ADD	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction adds the contents of the *dest* and *src* operands and stores the result in the location specified by *dest*. The operands must be of the same size. If the operands are signed integers, the OF flag indicates an invalid result. If the operands are unsigned, the CF flag indicates a carry out of the destination. If the operands are unpacked BCD digits, the AF flag indicates a decimal carry.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF	
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

ADD	AL, [4211A]	; 8-bit addition
ADD	AX, 34	; 16-bit immediate value addition
ADD	ESI, [EBP+8]	; 32-bit memory addition to register

AND

8086/80186/80286/80386

Boolean AND

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxAND *dest, src***Operation**

dest \leftarrow *dest* & *src*
 CF \leftarrow 0
 OF \leftarrow 0

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
AND	reg,	idata
AND	mem,	idata
AND	reg,	reg
AND	reg,	mem
AND	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction performs a bit-by-bit AND operation on the *dest* and *src* operands and stores the result in the *dest* operand. The AND operation is defined as follows:

0 & 0 = 0

0 & 1 = 0

1 & 0 = 0

1 & 1 = 1

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
0	-	-	-	X	X	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
AND      AL, 0FH          ; Zero high-order nibble of AL
AND      EBX, ECX         ; Compute EBX  $\leftarrow$  EBX & ECX
AND      BYTE PTR[EBP+6], 7FH ; Mask off high-order bit of memory operand
```

ARPL

80286/80386

Adjust RPL Field of Selector

(16)

SyntaxARPL *dest, src***Operation**

```

if (dest.RPL < src.RPL) then
    dest.RPL ← src.RPL
    ZF ← 1
else
    ZF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
ARPL	reg.	reg
ARPL	mem.	reg

Description

System software uses this instruction to modify a selector's requested privilege level (RPL) field. Both the *dest* and *src* operands must be valid selectors.

If the RPL of the *dest* operand is numerically less than the RPL of the *src*, that is, if the *dest* selector is more privileged, the *dest* selector's RPL is lowered to match that of the *src*, and the ZF flag is set to 1. If the *dest* selector is less privileged (numerically higher) than the *src*, the ZF flag is cleared to 0, and the *dest* operand is not modified.

Operating system routines that are passed selectors from applications should use ARPL to ensure that the calling routine has not passed a selector with a higher privilege than the application is allowed. Use the calling routine's CS register as the *src* operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

MOV	AX, [EBP+12]	; Get parameter off the stack
ARPL	AX, [EBP+2]	; Adjust to caller's RPL (previous CPL) by
		; using CS of return address on stack
JNZ	bad_param	; Branch if caller passed a bad selector

BOUND

80186/80286/80386

Check Array Boundaries

(16p/32)

SyntaxBOUND *dest*, *src***Operation**

```
if ((dest < src[0]) | (dest > src[1])) then
    INT 5
endif
```

Legal Form

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
BOUND	reg.	mem

Description

This instruction compares the *dest* operand, which must be a register containing a signed integer, with two values, a lower bound stored at the address specified by *src*, and an upper bound stored in the following location. The bounds can be 16-bit or 32-bit values.

If the *dest* value is less than the lower bound or greater than the upper bound, an interrupt 5 occurs. The return address pushed onto the stack by the exception is the starting address of the BOUND instruction that caused the interrupt.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
5	INT 5	INT 5
6*	#UD()	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

*The undefined opcode fault occurs only if the instruction encoding of the BOUND instruction specifies an *src* operand that is a register.

Example

```
VC_LIMITS:  
    DD  1, 20          ; Bounds for 20-element array  
    VC  DD  20 DUP (?) ; Array storage area  
    .  
    .  
    MOV  EAX, [EBP-6]    ; Get array index  
    BOUND EAX, VC_LIMITS ; Check against limits
```

BSF

80386

Bit Scan Forward

(16p/32)

SyntaxBSF *dest, src***Operation**

```

if (src = 0) then
    ZF ← 1
    dest ← ???
else
    ZF ← 0
    temp ← 0
    while (bit(src, temp) = 0)
        temp ← temp + 1
    dest ← temp
endif

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
BSF	reg.	reg
BSF	reg.	mem

Description

This instruction scans the *src* operand and writes the bit position of the first 1 bit in *src* to the destination register. If the *src* operand is 0, the ZF flag is set to 1, and the instruction ends with the *dest* register in an undefined state.

If the *src* operand is not 0, each bit is examined, beginning with bit 0, until a 1 bit is found. The bit position of the first 1 bit (index) is stored in the *dest* register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	x	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
XOR    ECX, ECX      ; Index into sector map
L1:  BSF    EAX, SECTORS[ECX*4] ; Scan a dword
      JNZ    GOT_ONE    ; Branch if any bits set
      INC    ECX         ; Go on to next dword
      CMP    ECX, TABLE_SIZE ; Done searching?
      JL     L1          ; No, scan next table entry
      JMP    NO_SECTORS  ; No bits set in entire table
GOT_ONE:
```

BSR

80386

Bit Scan Reverse

(16p/32)

SyntaxBSR *dest, src***Operation**

```

if (dest in [AX, BX, CX, DX, SI, DI, BP, SP]) then
    startbit ← 15
else
    startbit ← 31
endif
if (src = 0) then
    ZF ← 1
    dest ← ???
else
    ZF ← 0
    temp ← startbit
    while (bit(src, temp) = 0)
        temp ← temp - 1
    dest ← temp
endif

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
BSR	reg,	reg
BSR	reg,	mem

Description

This instruction scans the *src* operand in reverse, searching for a 1 bit beginning at the high order of the *src* operand. If the *src* operand is 0, the ZF flag is set to 1, and the instruction ends with the *dest* register in an undefined state.

If the *src* operand is not 0, each bit is examined, beginning with the high-order bit (either 15 for word operands or 31 for byte operands), until a 1 bit is found. The bit position (index) of the first 1 bit is stored in the *dest* register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	x	-	?	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Example

```

MOV    ECX, SEM_MAX-1      ; Index of last entry in
                           ; semaphore table
L1:   BSR    EAX, SEMAPHORE[ECX*4]  ; Scan for non-zero bits
      JNZ    found_it        ; Branch if valid index
      LOOP   L1              ; Decrement CX, loop back
                           ; if not zero
      none_found:           ; Get here
                           ; if entire table is zero

```

BT

Bit Test

80386

(16p/32)

SyntaxBT *dest, index***Operation**CF \leftarrow BIT(*dest, index*)**Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>index</i>
BT	reg,	idata
BT	mem,	idata
BT	reg,	reg
BT	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction tests the bit specified by the operands and places the value of the bit into the carry flag.

The *index* operand holds a bit index into the bit string specified by *dest*, which can be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or a memory location. The state of the bit is copied into the carry flag.

If the *index* operand is an immediate data value, it can range from 0 through 31. If the *index* is held in a register, it can take on any integral value. Some assemblers might let you specify immediate *index* values greater than 31. If so, they modify the effective address by an appropriate value so that the *index* can be scaled back to between 0 and 31.

BT does not accept byte operands, so do not use it with memory-mapped I/O devices because the instruction causes either the 16-bit word or the 32-bit word containing the selected bit to be read. This could affect more than one I/O device register. You should use a single-byte MOV instruction to read the I/O register and then test the contents of the register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

MOV    EAX, 192          ; Bit index
BT     SEMAPHORES, EAX   ; Test semaphore number 192
JC     sem_set           ; Branch if the bit was set

```

BTC

80386

Bit Test and Complement

(16p/32)

SyntaxBTC *dest*, *index***Operation**

$$CF \leftarrow \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index})$$

$$\text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index}) \leftarrow \neg \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index})$$
Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>index</i>
BTC	reg,	idata
BTC	mem,	idata
BTC	reg,	reg
BTC	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction copies the bit specified by the operands into CF, then complements the original value of the bit in the *dest* operand.

The *index* operand holds a bit index into the bit string specified by *dest*, which can be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or a memory location. The state of the bit is copied into the carry flag, and the bit of the *dest* operand is complemented.

If the *index* operand is an immediate data value, it can range from 0 through 31. If the *index* is held in a register, it can take on any integral value. Some assemblers might let you specify immediate *index* values greater than 31. If so, they modify the effective address by an appropriate value so that the *index* can be scaled back to between 0 and 31.

BTC does not accept byte operands, so do not use it with memory-mapped I/O devices because the instruction causes either the 16-bit word or the 32-bit word containing the selected bit to be read. This could affect more than one I/O device register. You should use a single-byte MOV instruction to read the I/O register and then test the contents of the register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

MOVZX    EAX, BYTE PTR [04A2H] ; Read memory byte into 32-bit register
BTC      EAX, 2                 ; Test and complement bit number 2
MOV      [04A2H], AL             ; Write modified byte back to memory
JC       bitset                ; Branch if the bit was set

```

BTR**Bit Test and Reset**

80386

(16p/32)

SyntaxBTR *dest*, *index***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CF} &\leftarrow \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index}) \\ \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index}) &\leftarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$
Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>index</i>
BTR	reg.,	idata
BTR	mem.,	idata
BTR	reg.,	reg
BTR	mem.,	reg

Description

This instruction copies the bit specified by the operands into CF, then clears the original bit in *dest* to 0.

The *index* operand holds a bit index into the bit string specified by *dest*, which can be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or a memory location. The state of the bit is copied into the carry flag, and the bit of the *dest* operand is cleared to 0.

If the *index* operand is an immediate data value, it can range from 0 through 31. If the *index* is held in a register, it can be any integer. Some assemblers might let you specify immediate *index* values greater than 31. If so, they modify the effective address by an appropriate value so that the *index* can be scaled back to between 0 and 31.

BTR does not accept byte operands, so do not use it with memory-mapped I/O devices because the instruction causes either the 16-bit word or the 32-bit word containing the selected bit to be read. This could affect more than one I/O device register. You should use a single-byte MOV instruction to read the I/O register and then test the contents of the register.

When using a BTR instruction to implement a signaling function in a multiprocessor environment, the LOCK instruction prefix should immediately precede any BTR instruction that modifies shared memory.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
BTR    MY_FLAG, 7          ; Zero the high-order bit of byte MY_FLAG
JNC    NOT_SET             ; Bit was already reset
```

BTS

80386

Bit Test and Set

(16p/32)

SyntaxBTS *dest*, *index***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CF} &\leftarrow \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index}) \\ \text{BIT}(\text{dest}, \text{index}) &\leftarrow 1 \end{aligned}$$
Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>index</i>
BTS	reg.,	idata
BTS	mem.,	idata
BTS	reg.,	reg
BTS	mem.,	reg

Description

This instruction copies the specified bit into CF, then sets the original bit in *dest* to 1.

The *index* operand holds a bit index into the bit string specified by *dest*, which can be a 16-bit or 32-bit register or a memory location. The state of the bit is copied into the carry flag, and the bit of the *dest* operand is set to 1.

If the *index* operand is an immediate data value, it can range from 0 through 31. If the *index* is held in a register, it can be any integer. Some assemblers might let you specify immediate *index* values greater than 31. If so, they modify the effective address by an appropriate value so that the *index* can be scaled back to between 0 and 31.

BTS does not accept byte operands, so do not use it with memory-mapped I/O devices because the instruction causes either the 16-bit word or the 32-bit word containing the selected bit to be read. This could affect more than one I/O device register. You should use a single-byte MOV instruction to read the I/O register and then test the contents of the register.

When using a BTS instruction to implement a semaphore function in a multiprocessor environment, the LOCK instruction prefix should immediately precede any BTS instruction that modifies shared memory.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
BTS      MY_FLAG, 7      ; Set the high-order bit of byte MY_FLAG
JC       WAS_SET         ; Bit was already set
```

CALL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Far Procedure Call

(32p/48)

SyntaxCALL *dest***Operation**

```
push(CS)
push(EIP)
CS:EIP ← dest
```

Legal Forms

<i>dest</i>	
CALL	idata ; CS:EIP ← idata
CALL	mem ; CS:EIP ← [mem]

Description

The far procedure call saves the current code segment selector and the address of the next instruction (EIP) on the stack. Control then transfers to the destination specified by the operand. The operand can be an immediate selector:offset value or the address of a 48-bit FAR pointer in memory.

The selector can point to another code segment, a call gate, a task gate, or a task state segment. If the selector points to a gate or TSS, the offset portion of the CALL is ignored. If the selector points to a code segment, control transfers to the specified offset within that segment.

All flags are affected by a task switch.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
10	#TS(0)		
10	#TS(sel)		#TS(sel)
11	#NP(sel)		#NP(sel)
12	#SS(0)		
12	#SS(SS)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
	#GP(CS)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
CALL    16A3:0000      ; Direct call
CALL    FWORD PTR [005AH] ; Indirect call
```

CALL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Near Procedure Call

(16p/32)

SyntaxCALL *dest***Operation**

```
push(EIP)
EIP ← dest
```

Legal Forms

dest
CALL offset ; EIP ← EIP + offset
CALL mem ; EIP ← [mem]
CALL reg ; EIP ← [reg]

Description

This instruction pushes the address of the next instruction (EIP) onto the stack. The instruction pointer is then set to the value specified by the operand.

If the operand is an immediate value, the new instruction pointer is relative to the current position. If the operand is a memory address or a register, the subroutine address is taken indirectly from the operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
CALL    SQRT          ; Call direct
LEA     EBX, FN_TABLE ; Get pointer to address table
MOV     EAX, 3          ; Select third function
CALL    [EBX+EAX*4]     ; Call it
```

CBW

8086/80186/80286/80386

Convert Byte to Word

(8)

Syntax

CBW

Operation

```

if BIT(AL, 7) then
    AH ← OFFH
else
    AH ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

CBW

Description

This instruction sign-extends the byte in AL to AX.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV      AL, TINY      ; Read a byte into AL
CBW      ; Convert to 16-bit signed integer
ADD      BX, AX

```

CDQ

80386

Convert Doubleword to Quadword

(32)

Syntax

CDQ

Operation

```

if (BIT(EAX, 31) = 1) then
    EDX ← OFFFFFFFFH
else
    EDX ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

CDQ

Description

This instruction sign-extends the 32-bit EAX register to a 64-bit dword. It is most frequently used before the integer divide instruction, which operates on a 64-bit dividend.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV      EAX, [400H]      : Copy dividend to EAX
CDQ      : Extend to 64 bits
IDIV    DWORD PTR [20H]    : Divide

```

CLC

8086/80186/80286/80386

Clear Carry Flag

()

Syntax

CLC

OperationCF \leftarrow 0**Legal Form**

CLC

Description

This instruction clears the carry flag in the EFLAGS register to 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0

Faults

None.

Example

NO_ERROR:

CLC

; Clear carry

RET

; Return from subroutine with success
; indicated by CF

CLD

8086/80186/80286/80386

Clear Direction Flag

()

Syntax

CLD

OperationDF \leftarrow 0**Legal Form**

CLD

Description

This instruction clears the direction flag in the EFLAGS register to 0. When DF is 0, any string instructions increment the index registers (ESI or EDI).

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

```
MOV ECX, STR_LEN           ; String move count
CLD                      ; Clear direction flag
REP MOVSB                 ; Copy the string
```

CLI

8086/80186/80286/80386

Clear Interrupt Flag

()

Syntax

CLI

OperationIF \leftarrow 0**Legal Form**

CLI

Description

This instruction clears the interrupt bit in the EFLAGS register to 0, disabling hardware interrupts (except NMI). The procedure executing the CLI instruction must be of equal or higher privilege than the current IOPL, that is, CPL \leq IOPL, or a general protection fault occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
13 #GP(0)		#GP(0)

Example

```

CLI                                ; Disable interrupts
MOV AL, SEMAPHORE                 ; Get memory value
DEC AL                                ; Decrement counter
JZ done                                ; Skip if value was 0
MOV SEMAPHORE, AL                   ; Update
DONE:
STI                                ; Enable interrupt

```

CLTS

80286/80386

Clear Task Switched Bit

()

Syntax

CLTS

Operation

BIT(CR0, 3) ← 0

Legal Form

CLTS

Description

This instruction clears the task switched (TS) bit in the CR0 register to 0. The TS bit allows the 80386 to efficiently manage the 80387. Whenever a task switch occurs on the 80386, the CPU sets the TS bit to 1. If the TS bit is 1 when a coprocessor escape (ESC) or WAIT instruction executes, a coprocessor not available fault (int 7) occurs.

The fault handler can clear the TS bit, save the NDP state, load the NDP state for the current task, and return to the instruction that faulted. Switching between tasks that do not use the 80387 will not cause the fault, and you can avoid the overhead of saving and restoring the NDP state.

Only procedures running at a CPL of 0 can execute CLTS without causing a general protection fault.

CLTS is valid in real mode to allow initialization for protected mode.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
13 #GP(0)		#GP(0)

Example

```
CLTS                                ; Clear task switched bit
CALL SWAP_NDP_STATE                 ; Save/restore math coprocessor state
```

CMC

8086/80186/80286/80386

Complement the Carry Flag

()

Syntax

CMC

Operation

 $CF \leftarrow \neg CF$

Legal Form

CMC

Description

The carry bit of the EFLAGS register is complemented; that is, if the initial value of the carry bit is 0, it is set to 1. If the initial value is 1, the flag is cleared to 0 as a result of the instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x

Faults

None.

Example

```

BT      EAX, 1          ; Test a bit, save in CF
JC      EXIT            ; Bit was set--we're done
JMP    TRY AGAIN       ; Not ready yet
EXIT:
      CMC              ; Return, CF clear
      RET

```

CMP

Compare Integers

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxCMP *op1, op2***Operation**NULL $\leftarrow op1 - op2$ **Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
CMP	reg,	idata
CMP	mem,	idata
CMP	reg,	reg
CMP	reg,	mem
CMP	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction subtracts the contents of *op2* from *op1* and discards the result. Only the EFLAGS register is affected. The following table illustrates how the flags are set based on the operand values.

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Signed Compare</i>	<i>Unsigned Compare</i>
<i>op1 > op2</i>	ZF = 0 and SF = OF	CF = 0 and ZF = 0
<i>op1 ≥ op2</i>	SF = OF	CF = 0
<i>op1 = op2</i>	ZF = 1	ZF = 1
<i>op1 ≤ op2</i>	ZF = 1 and SF ≠ OF	CF = 1 or ZF = 1
<i>op1 < op2</i>	SF ≠ OF	CF = 1

If *op1* is a 16-bit or 32-bit operand and *op2* is an 8-bit immediate value, *op2* is sign-extended to match the size of *op1*.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF	
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

```
CMP     AL, [4211A]      ; 8-bit compare
CMP     AX, [BX+3]        ; 16-bit real/virtual mode
CMP     CX, [EBP+8][EAX*2] ; 16-bit protected mode
CMP     ESI, 7             ; 32-bit compare with sign-extended operand
```

CMPS

8086/80186/80286/80386

Compare String

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

CMPS

Operation

```

when opcode is (CMPSB, CMPSW, CMPSD) set opsize ← (1, 2, 4)
NULL ← DS:[ESI] - ES:[EDI]
if (DF = 0) then
    ESI ← ESI + opsize
    EDI ← EDI + opsize
else
    ESI-opsize
    EDI-opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

CMPSB	; Compare string byte
CMPSW	; Compare string word
CMPSD	; Compare string doubleword

Description

This instruction subtracts the memory operand pointed to by DS:ESI from the operand at ES:EDI and discards the result, as in the CMP instruction. The size of the operand is either a byte, word, or doubleword, depending on the opcode used. The flags are set as the comparison dictates, and the contents of ESI and EDI are modified, either incremented by the size of the operand, or decremented, depending on the setting of the DF bit in the EFLAGS register. ESI and EDI are incremented when DF = 0.

You can precede the CMPS instruction with either the REPE or REPNE prefix to repeatedly compare operands while the ZF bit remains 1 (REPE) or 0 (REPNE). Register ECX holds the maximum compare count.

You can also apply a segment override prefix to the CMPS instruction to override the DS segment of the DS:[ESI] operand. You cannot override the ES segment assumption for the EDI operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

LEA	ESI, standard	; DS:ESI points to default
LES	EDI, [EBP+12]	; ES:EDI loaded from stack frame
MOV	ECX, 31	; Count is a constant
CLD		; Ensure direction flag set correctly
REPE CMPSB		; Compare byte string
JNE	not_eq	; Branch if strings not equal

CWD

8086/80186/80286/80386

Convert Word to Doubleword

(16)

Syntax

CWD

Operation

```

if (BIT(AX, 15 - 1)) then
    DX ← 0FFFFH
else
    DX ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

CWD

Description

This instruction sign-extends the word in AX to the DX:AX register pair. The preferred 16-bit to 32-bit conversion instruction is CWDE. CWD is used by the 8086 and 80286, which do not have 32-bit registers.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV      AX, divisor      ; Get 16-bit divisor
CWD      CX                ; Extend to DX:AX
DIV      CX                ; 16-bit division

```

CWDE

80386

Convert Word to Doubleword Extended

(16)

Syntax

CWDE

Operation

```

if (BIT(EAX, 15) = 1) then
    EAX ← EAX | FFFF0000H
else
    EAX ← EAX & 0000FFFFH
endif

```

Legal Form

CWDE

Description

This instruction sign-extends the 16-bit value in AX to a full 32 bits in the EAX register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV      AX, short_int      ; Get 16-bit signed value
NEG      AX,                ; Convert to negative number
CWDE

```

; Return 32-bit result

DAA

8086/80186/80286/80386

Decimal Adjust AL After Addition

(8)

Syntax

DAA

Operation

```

if (AF | (AL & 0FH) > 9) then
    AL ← AL + 6
    AF ← 1
else
    AF ← 0
endif
if (CF | (AL > 9FH)) then
    AL ← AL + 60H
    CF ← 1
else
    CF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

DAA

Description

This instruction ensures that AL contains a valid decimal result after an addition of two packed BCD values.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

None.

Example

```

MOV      AL, 72H          ; 72 in packed decimal
ADD      AL, 19H          ; Yields 8BH in AL
DAA      ; Adjusts AL to 91H

```

DAS

8086/80186/80286/80386

Decimal Adjust AL After Subtraction

(8)

Syntax

DAS

Operation

```

if (AF | ((AL & 0FH)) > 9) then
    AL ← AL - 6
    AF ← 1
else
    AF ← 0
endif
if (CF | (AL > 9FH)) then
    AL ← AL - 60H
    CF ← 1
else
    CF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Form

DAS

Description

This instruction ensures that AL contains a valid decimal result after a subtraction of two packed BCD values.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

None.

Example

MOV	AL, 42H	; 42 in packed decimal
SUB	AL, 13H	; Yields 2FH in AL
DAS		; Adjusts AL to 29H

DEC

8086/80186/80286/80386

Decrement

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxDEC *op1***Operation** $op1 \leftarrow op1 - 1$ **Legal Forms**

DEC	<i>op1</i>	reg
DEC		mem

Description

This instruction subtracts the value 1 from *op1*. DEC is frequently used to decrement indexes and therefore does not affect the carry flag (CF). In other respects, it is equivalent to the instruction:

SUB *op1*, 1**Flags**

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		#SS(0)
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

DEC ESI ; Decrement contents of ESI

DIV

8086/80186/80286/80386

Unsigned Division

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxDIV *op1***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{low}(acc) &\leftarrow acc / op1 \\ \text{high}(acc) &\leftarrow acc \text{ modulo } op1 \end{aligned}$$
Legal Forms

DIV	<i>op1</i>
DIV	reg
	mem

Description

This instruction divides the value in the accumulator register or register pair by *op1*, storing the quotient in the low-order portion of the accumulator and the remainder in the high-order portion. The following table illustrates the registers used as accumulators, depending on the size of *op1*.

<i>Size of op1</i>	<i>Dividend</i>	<i>Quotient</i>	<i>Remainder</i>
Byte	AX	AL	AH
Word	DX,AX	AX	DX
Dword	EDX,EAX	EAX	EDX

If the dividend is 0 or if the quotient is too large to fit in the result accumulator, a divide error fault (interrupt 0) occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
0	INT 0	INT 0	INT 0
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
MOV      EAX, dividend
CWDE
DIV      EBX          ; Convert 32-bit operand to 64 bits
MOV      quotient, EAX ; 32-bit divide
MOV      remainder, EDX ; Save result
```

ENTER

80186/80286/80386

Enter New Stack Frame

()

Syntax

ENTER *locals*, *nesting*

Operation

```

nesting ← max (nesting, 31)
push (EBP)
temp ← ESP
if (nesting > 0) then
    nesting ← nesting - 1
    while (nesting > 0)
        EBP ← EBP - 4
        push (SS:[EBP])
        nesting ← nesting - 1
    endwhile
    push (temp)
endif
EBP ← temp
ESP ← ESP - locals

```

Legal Forms

<i>locals</i>	<i>nesting</i>
ENTER	idata.

Description

This instruction sets up the stack frame used by high-level languages. The form ENTER *n*,0 is equivalent to the instructions:

```

PUSH EBP
MOV EBP, ESP
SUB ESP, n

```

This saves the previous frame pointer (EBP), sets the frame to the current stack top (ESP), and allocates space for local variables. Parameters passed to the procedure are addressed as positive offsets from EBP, and local variables are addressed as negative offsets from EBP.

When the second operand is greater than 0 (which happens only in languages that allow nesting of procedure definitions), the pointers to previous stack frames are pushed onto the stack to allow addressing of stack-resident variables whose scopes are outside the current stack frame.

Languages such as FORTRAN and C do not allow lexical procedure nesting, so they always use ENTER with a nesting operand of 0. Pascal, Modula-II, and Ada allow procedure nesting, and compilers for those languages generate the more complex form of ENTER.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
ENTER 4, 0           ; Create stack frame with
                      ; space for a dword local
```

HLT

8086/80186/80286/80386

Halt

()

Syntax

HLT

Legal Form

HLT

Description

This instruction stops all further processing on the 80386. No other instructions will execute until the processor is reset or an interrupt occurs. An NMI interrupt always brings the processor out of the halt state. The IF flag must be 1 for any other hardware interrupt to be acknowledged. After processing the interrupt, execution continues with the instruction immediately following HLT.

You must execute at a CPL of 0 to issue a HLT instruction; otherwise, a general protection fault occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
13	#GP(0)		#GP(0)

Example

```
STI
L1: HLT          ; Idle, processing only interrupts
      JMP L1
```

IDIV

8086/80186/80286/80386

Integer (Signed) Division

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxIDIV *op1***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{low}(\text{acc}) &\leftarrow \text{acc} / \text{op1} \\ \text{high}(\text{acc}) &\leftarrow \text{acc} \bmod \text{op1} \end{aligned}$$
Legal Forms

	<i>op1</i>
IDIV	reg
IDIV	mem

Description

This instruction divides the value in the accumulator register or register pair by *op1*, storing the quotient in the low-order portion of the accumulator and the remainder in the high-order portion. The following table illustrates the registers used as accumulators, depending on the size of *op1*.

<i>Size of op1</i>	<i>Dividend</i>	<i>Quotient</i>	<i>Remainder</i>
Byte	AX	AL	AH
Word	DX,AX	AX	DX
Dword	EDX,EAX	EAX	EDX

If the dividend is 0 or if the quotient is too large to fit in the result accumulator, a divide error fault (interrupt 0) occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
0	INT 0	INT 0	INT 0
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
MOV      EAX, [ESP+14]      ; Get dividend
CDQ
IDIV    ECX                 ; Convert to 64 bits
```

IMUL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Integer (Signed) Multiplication

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxIMUL *op1*, [*op2*, [*op3*]]**Operation***dest* \leftarrow multiplier * multiplicand**Legal Forms**

	<i>op1</i>	<i>op2</i>	<i>op3</i>	
IMUL	reg			; acc \leftarrow acc * reg
IMUL	mem			; acc \leftarrow acc * mem
IMUL	reg, reg			; <i>op1</i> \leftarrow <i>op1</i> * <i>op2</i>
IMUL	reg, mem			; <i>op1</i> \leftarrow <i>op1</i> * <i>op2</i>
IMUL	reg, idata			; <i>op1</i> \leftarrow <i>op1</i> * <i>op2</i>
IMUL	reg, reg, idata			; <i>op1</i> \leftarrow <i>op2</i> * <i>op3</i>
IMUL	reg, mem, idata			; <i>op1</i> \leftarrow <i>op2</i> * <i>op3</i>

Description

This instruction multiplies signed, two's complement integers. The flags are left in an unknown state except for OF and CF, which are cleared to 0 if the result of the multiplication is the same size (byte, word, or dword) as the multiplicand.

In the single operand form of the instruction, the result is placed in AX if *op1* is a byte, DX:AX if *op1* is a word, and EDX:EAX if *op1* is a dword.

In the forms of IMUL that use 2 or 3 operands, the operands must all be the same size.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
x	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

IMUL ECX ; EDX:EAX \leftarrow EAX * ECX
 IMUL AL, CH, 7 ; AL = CH * 7

IN**8086/80186/80286/80386****Input from I/O Port****(8/16p/32)****Syntax**IN *acc*, *port***Operation**ACC \leftarrow (port)**Legal Forms**

	<i>acc</i>	<i>port</i>
IN	acc,	idata
IN	acc,	DX

Description

This instruction reads a byte, word, or dword into the specified accumulator from the designated I/O port. If you use an immediate data value in the instruction, you can address only the first 256 ports. If the port is specified in the DX register, you can access any of the 65536 ports.

IN is a privileged instruction. A procedure that attempts to execute an input instruction must satisfy one of two conditions to avoid a general protection fault.

If the procedure that executes an IN instruction has I/O privilege (that is, if its CPL is numerically less than or equal to the IOPL field in the EFLAGS register), the input instruction executes immediately.

If the procedure does not have I/O privilege, the I/O permission bitmap for the current task is checked. If the bit(s) corresponding to the I/O port(s) is cleared to 0, the input instruction executes. If the bit(s) is set to 1, or the port(s) is outside the range of the bitmap, a general protection fault occurs. See Chapter 5 for more details on this feature.

If the IN instruction is encountered while in V86 mode, only the I/O permission bitmap is tested. The IOPL value is not a factor in validating access to the port.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
13 #GP(0)		#GP(0)

Example

```
IN      AX, 72H          ; Input a 16-bit value
       ; from ports 72H and 73H
MOV    DX, crt_port
IN      AL, DX          ; Input a byte value
```

INC**Increment**

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxINC *op1***Operation** $op1 \leftarrow op1 + 1$ **Legal Forms**

<i>op1</i>	
INC	reg
INC	mem

Description

This instruction adds the value 1 to *op1*. This instruction is often used to increment indexes and therefore does not affect the carry flag (CF). In other respects, it is equivalent to the instruction:

ADD *op1*, 1**Flags**

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0)
		#PF(ec)

Example

INC ESI ; Increment contents of ESI

INS

80186/80286/80386

Input String from I/O Port

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

INS

Operation

```

when opcode is (INSB, INSW, INSD), set opsize ← (1, 2, 4)
ES:[EDI] ← port(DX)
if (DF = 0) then
    EDI ← EDI + opsize
else
    EDI ← EDI - opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

INSB	:	Input string byte
INSW	:	Input string word
INSD	:	Input string doubleword

Description

This instruction allows the location specified by ES:[EDI] to receive data input from the I/O port contained in the DX register. An 8-bit operation (INSB) adjusts the address in EDI by 1, a 16-bit operation (INSW) adjusts EDI by 2, and a 32-bit operation (INSD) adjusts EDI by 4. The memory offset in EDI is incremented if the DF bit is 0 or is decremented if DF is 1.

Like the IN instruction, the INS instruction is privileged. The executing procedure must have a CPL equal to or numerically less than the IOPL, or access to the port specified in DX must be granted by the I/O permission bitmap in the TSS.

You can use the REP prefix with the INS instruction. Using the prefix causes register ECX to be interpreted as an instruction count.

A segment override prefix does not affect the INS instruction. The destination segment is always ES.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
13	#GPC(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

LEA      EDI, new_val      ; Set up destination pointer
MOV      DX, 370H          ; Set up port address
CLD
INSD    new_val           ; Input 32-bit value to new_val
INSD    new_val + 4        ; Input value to new_val + 4

```

INT

8086/80186/80286/80386

Software Interrupt

(O)

SyntaxINT *vector***Operation**

```

push(EFLAGS)
push(CS)
push(EIP)
TF ← 0
if (IDT(vector).TYPE = INTERRUPT_GATE) then
  IF ← 0
endif
CS:EIP ← destination(IDT(vector))

```

Legal Form

	<i>vector</i>
INT	idata

Description

This instruction saves the current flags and execution location on the stack, and the *vector* operand indicates the IDT entry that is selected. The gate from the IDT determines the new execution location.

If the processor encounters the INT instruction while in V86 mode, the 80386 switches to the ring 0 stack (SS0:ESP0) taken from the V86 task state segment before processing the interrupt. Because the processor is running in ring 0, the IDT entry must have a DPL of 0; otherwise, a general protection fault occurs.

The INT 3 instruction is usually encoded as a single byte (0CCH) and used as a breakpoint instruction for debuggers.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	X	0	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
10	#TS(sel)		
11	#NP(sel)		
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

INT 42 ; Make a system-dependent OS call

INTO

8086/80186/80286/80386

Interrupt on Overflow

(O)

Syntax

INTO

Operation

```
if (OF) then
    INT 4
endif
```

Legal Form

INTO

Description

This instruction executes an INT 4 instruction if the overflow bit (OF) in the EFLAGS register is 1. See the INT instruction for further details.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	x	0	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
10	#TS(sel)	
11	#NP(sel)	
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Example

```
ADD    ECX, VECTOR[EDI*4] ; Arithmetic operation
INTO                      ; Check for overflow
```

IRET

8086/80186/80286/80386

Interrupt Return

()

Syntax

IRET

Operation

```

if (NT = 1) then
    task_return (TSS.back_link)
else
    pop (EIP)
    pop (CS)
    pop (EFLAGS)
endif

```

Legal Form

IRET

Description

This instruction signals a return from an interrupt or, if the NT (nested task) bit is set to 1, a task switch from the current task to the one that invoked it.

When the new value of EFLAGS is popped from the stack, the IOPL bits are modified only if the CPL is 0.

Chapter 5 discusses transitions across protection rings and task switching.

If the IRET instruction executes while the processor is in V86 mode, a general protection fault occurs. It is the responsibility of the fault handler to emulate the real-mode IRET for the V86 task.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	X	X	X	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
11		
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Example

IRET

Jcc

8086/80186/80286/80386

Jump if *Condition*

()

Syntax

Jcc offset

Operation

```
if (cc) then
    EIP ← EIP + sign_extend(offset)
endif
```

Legal Forms

OF = Overflows

JA	offset	; Jump above (unsigned x > y) / CF = 0 & ZF = 0
JAE	offset	; Jump above or equal / CF = 0
JB	offset	; Jump below (unsigned x < y) / CF = 1
JBE	offset	; Jump below or equal / CF = 1 | ZF = 1
JC	offset	; Jump if carry / CF = 1
JCXZ	offset	; Jump if CX = 0
JECXZ	offset	; Jump if ECX = 0
JE	offset	; Jump equal / ZF = 1
JG	offset	; Jump greater (signed x > y) / SF = OF & ZF = 0
JGE	offset	; Jump greater or equal / SF = OF
JL	offset	; Jump less (signed x < y) / SF != OF & ZF = 0
JLE	offset	; Jump less or equal / SF != OF
JNA	offset	; Jump not above (JBE)
JNAE	offset	; Jump not above or equal (JB)
JNB	offset	; Jump not below (JAE)
JNBE	offset	; Jump not below or equal (JA)
JNC	offset	; Jump no carry / CF = 0
JNE	offset	; Jump not equal / ZF = 0
JNG	offset	; Jump not greater / SF != OF & ZF = 1
JNGE	offset	; Jump not greater or equal (JL)
JNL	offset	; Jump not less (JGE)
JNLE	offset	; Jump not less or equal (JG)
JNO	offset	; Jump no overflow / OF = 0
JNP	offset	; Jump no parity / PF = 0
JNS	offset	; Jump no sign / SF = 0
JNZ	offset	; Jump not 0 / ZF = 0
JO	offset	; Jump if overflow / OF = 1
JP	offset	; Jump if parity / PF = 1
JPE	offset	; Jump parity even / PF = 1
JPO	offset	; Jump parity odd / PF = 0
JS	offset	; Jump if sign / SF = 1
JZ	offset	; Jump if 0 / ZF = 1

Description

The *Jcc* instructions test the conditions described for each mnemonic. If the condition holds true, the processor branches to the specified location. If the condition is false, execution continues with the instruction following the jump.

More than one mnemonic exists for the same condition. This lets you write the test in a manner most appropriate for the condition. For example, after OR EAX, EAX you would use JZ, and after CMP EAX,ESI you would use JE; both mnemonics test for ZF = 1.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
13	#GP(0)	

Example

DEC	AL	; Decrement AL
JZ	reached_zero	; Branch if zero

JMP

8086/80186/80286/80386

Near Jump

()

SyntaxJMP *dest***Operation**EIP \leftarrow *dest***Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>	
JMP	offset ; EIP \leftarrow EIP + offset
JMP	reg ; EIP \leftarrow reg
JMP	mem ; EIP \leftarrow [mem]

Description

This instruction loads a new value into the instruction pointer (EIP). Subsequent instructions are fetched beginning at the new location.

When you use the immediate form of the instruction, the data value is an offset from the current EIP. The other forms are indirect branches, that is, the new value of EIP is taken from the operand register or memory location.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

JMP new_label	; Direct, relative branch
JMP ECX	; Branch indirect
JMP DWORD PTR [EBP+12]	; Branch to routine whose ; address is on stack

JMP

8086/80186/80286/80386

Far Jump

(O)

SyntaxJMP *dest***Operation**CS:EIP \leftarrow *dest***Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>		
JMP	idata	; CS:EIP \leftarrow data
JMP	mem	; CS:EIP \leftarrow [mem]

Description

A far jump instruction modifies both CS and EIP. In the immediate form of the instruction, a new 48-bit pointer is specified. In the indirect form, the *mem* operand points to a 48-bit selector:offset pointer.

The new CS selector can be a code segment selector (where the branch is to the specified offset within the code segment), or the selector can be a call gate, task gate, or task state segment. In this case, the offset portion of the JMP is ignored, and the new value of EIP is taken from the gate or the incoming TSS. If the jump causes a task switch, all flags are subject to change as EFLAGS reloads from the new task's TSS. Chapter 5 discusses the task switch operation and the use of gates.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
10	#TS(sel)		
11	#NP(sel)		
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
JMP      21A7:000211F3H      ; Direct branch
JMP      FWORD PTR new_task  ; Branch indirect
```

LAHF

8086/80186/80286/80386

Load AH with Flags

(8)

Syntax

LAHF

OperationAH \leftarrow EFLAGS & OFFH**Legal Form**

LAHF

Description

This instruction copies the low-order byte of the EFLAGS register into AH. After the instruction executes, the AH register has the following contents:

7	0
SF	ZF

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

LAHF

SHR AH, 6

AND AH, 1

; AH now contains the ZF flag

LAR

80286/80386

Load Access Rights

(16p/32)

Syntax

LAR *dest*, *select*

Operation

```

if (check_access(select)) then
    ZF ← 1
    dest ← access_rights(descriptor(select)) & 00F?FF00H
else
    ZF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>select</i>
LAR	reg.	reg
LAR	reg.	mem

Description

This instruction allows a program to determine whether a given selector is accessible to it without causing a protection fault.

If the *select* operand contains a valid 80386 selector that is accessible to the executing procedure and the selector type is one defined below, the zero flag (ZF) is set to 1, and the access rights field of the descriptor indicated by the selector is loaded into the destination register.

If the destination register is a 16-bit register, the high-order 8 bits of the register contain the access rights field of the descriptor.

15	8	7	0
A	DPL	S	TYPE

If the destination is a 32-bit register, bits 8–15 contain the access rights, and bits 20–23 contain the access extension bits found in byte 6 of the descriptor.

31	23	20	16	15	8	7	0
TYPE		G|B|O|A		A|DPL|S|TYPE			

If the selector references a nonmemory segment with an invalid type (Type = 0, 8, 0AH, 0DH), ZF is reset and the *dest* register is not modified.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
6		INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

; Verify that variable X contains the selector of a call gate
; that can be legally invoked by the executing routine.
LAR    AX, X           ; Load access rights
JNZ    no_access       ; Branch if can't access
SHR    AX, 8           ; Move access rights to low order
AND    AX, 1FH          ; Save only S bit and TYPE
CMP    AX, 0CH          ; Test for 386 call gate
JE     is_gate          ; Branch if accessible gate

```

LEA

8086/80186/80286/80386

Load Effective Address

(16p/32)

Syntax

LEA *dest*, *src*

Operation

 $dest \leftarrow \text{address}(src)$

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
LEA	reg,	mem

Description

This instruction loads the address specified by the memory operand into the destination register. No memory access cycle takes place.

You can also use LEA to perform simple multiplication or addition as discussed in Chapter 4.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6*	#UD()	INT 6	#UD()

* The undefined opcode fault only occurs when the *src* operand is encoded as a register.

Examples

LEA	ESI, VECTOR[EBX*4]	; Load address of array element
LEA	EDI, [EAX][ECX]	; Add contents of EAX and ECX, store in EDI

LEAVE

80186/80286/80386

Leave Current Stack Frame

()

Syntax

LEAVE

Operation

```
MOV ESP, EBP
POP EBP
```

Legal Form

LEAVE

Description

LEAVE is the counterpart of the ENTER instruction. ENTER is executed immediately after a procedure call to set up a new stack frame. LEAVE is executed before a RET instruction to release the returning procedure's stack frame.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13	13	#G0(0)

Example

```
ENTER 4,0           ; First instruction of procedure
.
.
.
LEAVE              ; Clean up stack frame
RET               ; And return to caller
```

LGDT

80286/80386

Load GDT Register

()

SyntaxLGDT *op***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GDTR.limit} &\leftarrow [\text{op}] \\ \text{GDTR.base} &\leftarrow [\text{op} + 2] \end{aligned}$$
Legal Form

	<i>op</i>	
LGDT	mem	

Description

This instruction loads the GDTR register specifying the address and limit of the global descriptor table (GDT). The operand must point to a data structure in memory whose first 16 bits contain the limit of the global descriptor table and whose next 32 bits contain the linear base address of the GDT.

Loading the GDTR does not invalidate the currently active descriptors; however, subsequent references to selectors load descriptors from the new GDT.

A procedure must have a CPL of 0 to issue the LGDT instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6*	#UD()	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

* The undefined opcode fault only occurs when the instruction is encoded with a register value for *op*.

Example

LGDT initial_table

LIDT

80286/80386

Load IDT Register

()

SyntaxLIDT *op***Operation**

IDTR.limit \leftarrow [*op*]
 IDTR.base \leftarrow [*op* + 2]

Legal Form

<i>op</i>	
LIDT	mem

Description

This instruction loads the IDTR register and specifies the address and limit of the interrupt descriptor table (IDT). The operand must point to a data structure in memory whose first 16 bits contain the limit of the interrupt descriptor table and whose next 32 bits contain the linear base address of the IDT.

After loading the IDTR, any software or hardware interrupts, faults, or traps will cause an access to the new IDT.

A procedure must have a CPL of 0 to issue the LIDT instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6* #UD()	INT 6	#UD()
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

* The undefined opcode fault only occurs when the *op* operand is encoded as a register.

Example

```
LIDT    new_int_table    ; Load IDT register
```

LLDT

80286/80386

Load LDT Register

(16)

SyntaxLLDT *op***Operation**LDTR \leftarrow *op***Legal Forms***op*

LLDT reg

LLDT mem

Description

This instruction loads a selector into the LDTR register and specifies a new local descriptor table (LDT). The operand to LLDT must contain a valid local descriptor table selector or the value 0.

Active descriptors that refer to the previous LDT are not invalidated; however, subsequent selector references load descriptors from the new LDT.

If the LDTR is loaded with the value 0, all LDT selector references that cause a memory reference result in a general protection fault.

The executing procedure must have a CPL of 0 to issue the LLDT instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
6	INT 6	#UD()
11	#NP(sel)	
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
13	#GP(sel)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

LLDT task_B.ldtr ; Get access to LDT for task B

LMSW

Load Machine Status Word

80286/80386

(16)

SyntaxLMSW *op***Operation**CRO \leftarrow (CRO & FFFF0000H) | *op***Legal Forms**

<i>op</i>	
LMSW	reg
LMSW	mem

Description

This instruction loads the low-order 16 bits of the CR0 register. Use it only when running 80286 operating system code. On 32-bit systems, use the instruction MOV CR0, *reg*. Note that you can use LMSW to enter protected mode but not to leave it and that you can use MOV CR0, *reg* to both enter and leave protected mode.

A procedure must be running in ring 0 to execute LMSW.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

LMSW init_state

LOCK

8086/80186/80286/80386

Assert Hardware LOCK\ Signal Prefix

()

Syntax

LOCK

Legal Forms

LOCK

Description

The LOCK instruction prefix supports multiprocessor hardware configurations. You can use the hardware LOCK\ signal to ensure exclusive access to a particular memory byte, word, or dword. The LOCK instruction is valid only if it precedes an instruction in the list below. If you use it in combination with another instruction or in an unsupported form of one of the listed instructions, an undefined opcode fault occurs.

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Locked Form of Instruction</i>	<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Locked Form of Instruction</i>
BT	mem, <i>op</i>	OR	mem, <i>op</i>
BTS	mem, <i>op</i>	SBB	mem, <i>op</i>
BTR	mem, <i>op</i>	SUB	mem, <i>op</i>
BTC	mem, <i>op</i>	XOR	mem, <i>op</i>
XCHG	mem, reg	DEC	mem
XCHG	reg, mem	INC	mem
ADD	mem, <i>op</i>	NEG	mem
ADC	mem, <i>op</i>	NOT	mem
AND	mem, <i>op</i>		

The LOCK\ signal is asserted for the duration of the instruction, including the time required for a read-modify-write cycle. The XCHG instruction does not require the LOCK prefix because the LOCK\ signal is always asserted during a memory XCHG.

When writing software for multiprocessor systems, ensure that locked access for particular memory addresses always occurs to operands of the same size. In other words, if you use the dword at physical address 100, always get access to it as a dword and never as a byte or word. Locking is not guaranteed to operate correctly unless you observe this restriction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6 #UD()	INT 6	#UD()

Example

LOCK
BTS semaphore, 3

LODS

8086/80186/80286/80386

Load String

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

LODS

Operation

```
when opcode is (LODSB, LODSW, LODSD) set opsize ← (1,2,4)
acc ← DS: [ESI]
if (DF = 0) then
    ESI ← ESI + opsize
else
    ESI ← ESI - opsize
endif
```

Legal Forms

LODSB	; Load string byte
LODSW	; Load string word
LODSD	; Load string doubleword

Description

This instruction loads the byte, word, or dword at DS:ESI into the accumulator. If the DF bit in the EFLAGS register is 0, ESI is incremented by the size of the operand (1, 2, or 4 bytes). If DF is 1, ESI is decremented.

Because LODS is one of the 80386 string instructions, you can precede it with the REP prefix; however, the resulting instruction is useless, as it continuously overwrites the contents of the accumulator.

You can precede the LODS instruction with a segment override prefix. In such a case, the operand is taken from the specified segment.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
LEA      EBX, A_to_E      ; Address of translation table
MOV      ESI, [EBP+12]    ; Source address
LES      EDI, [EBP+16]    ; Destination
L1:    LODSB              ; Fetch byte from source
      OR     AL, AL        ; Test byte for zero
      JZ     DONE          ; Branch if zero
      XLATB              ; Translate the byte
      STOSB              ; Save translated version
      JMP    L1            ; Loop back to L1
DONE:
```

LOOPcc

8086/80186/80286/80386

Decrement ECX and Branch

()

Syntax

LOOPcc *offset*

Operation

```

ECX ← ECX - 1
if (cc & (ECX != 0)) then
    EIP ← EIP + offset
endif

```

Legal Forms

```

LOOP    offset
LOOPZ   offset
LOOPNZ  offset
LOOPE   offset
LOOPNE  offset

```

Description

These instructions support a decrement and branch operation. For all variants other than LOOP, the decrement and branch is combined with a test on the ZF bit. A loop counter is assumed in register ECX. The instruction decrements the register, and if the value of ECX is 0, no branch is taken. No flags are set as a result of the decrement operation.

If the value of ECX is not 0, the branch is taken unless the condition in the LOOPcc forms is not true.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)

Example

```
; Initialize array of temp reals to 1.0
FLD1          ; Push 1.0 onto NDP stack
LEA    ESI, array ; Starting address of array
MOV    ECX, size  ; Load loop counter
11:  FLD    ST(1), ST ; Duplicate 1.0 value on NDP stack
     FSTP   [ESI] ; Store 1.0, pop NDP stack
     LOOP   11      ; Continue while ECX not 0
     FSTP   ST(0), ST ; Done--pop last 1.0 constant off
                      ; NDP stack
```

Lseg

8086/80186/80286/80386

Load Segment Register

(16p/32)

Syntax`Lseg dest, src`**Operation** $dest \leftarrow [src]$ $seg \leftarrow [src + 4]$ **Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
LDS	reg,	mem
LES	reg,	mem
LFS	reg,	mem
LGS	reg,	mem
LSS	reg,	mem

Description

The *src* address specifies a 48-bit pointer (32-bit in real mode or V86 mode) consisting of a 32-bit offset followed by a 16-bit selector. The 32-bit offset is loaded into the *dest* register and the selector is loaded into the segment register specified by the instruction mnemonic. The 80386 protection mechanism validates the descriptor associated with the selector.

Use only the ESP register with the Lseg instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

LES	ESI, BIGPTR	; Load address of array element [EBX]
LSS	ESP, OLD_STACK	; Load a new stack pointer

LSL

80286/80386

Load Segment Limit

(16p/32)

SyntaxLSL *dest*, *select***Operation**

```

if (access_OK(select)) then
    dest ← descript(select).limit
    ZF ← 1
else
    ZF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>select</i>
LSL	reg.	reg
LSL	reg.	mem

Description

If the *select* operand is accessible to the executing program as a valid selector under the protection rules, this instruction loads the *dest* register with the segment limit from the descriptor indicated by *select* and sets ZF to 1.

If the operand is not accessible or the descriptor associated with *select* does not contain a limit field, ZF is set to 0.

The value stored in the *dest* register is always the offset of the last addressable byte in the segment (page granular limits are converted to byte granular limits). Therefore, do not use a 16-bit register as the *dest* operand, as the resulting value might be too large.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD0
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

Example

LSL EAX, [BP+12] ; Get limit of selector on stack

LTR

80286/80386

Load Task Register

(16)

SyntaxLTR *select***Operation**TR \leftarrow *select***Legal Forms***select*

LTR reg

LTR mem

Description

This instruction loads the task register with the selector specified by the operand. The TSS descriptor for the selector is marked “busy.” Loading the task register does not cause a task switch.

If the procedure that executes the LTR instruction is not running with a CPL of 0, a general protection fault occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
6		INT 6	#UD()
10	#NP(sel)		
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)		
13	#GP(sel)		
14	#PF(ec)		

Example

LTR AX ; Load task register

MOV

Move Data

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

MOV *dest*, *src*

Operation

dest \leftarrow *src*

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
MOV	reg.	idata
MOV	mem.	idata
MOV	reg.	reg
MOV	reg.	mem
MOV	mem.	reg

Description

This instruction copies the contents of the *src* operand into *dest*.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

MOV	AL, [ECX]	; Get byte from memory
MOV	ESI, 182H	; Load ESI with data value
MOV	BX, DX	; 16-bit move
MOV	AH, 7FH	; Load AH with 8-bit data

MOV

Move Selector

8086/80186/80286/80386

(16)

SyntaxMOV *dest*, *src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *src***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
MOV	sreg,	reg
MOV	sreg,	mem
MOV	reg,	sreg
MOV	mem,	sreg

Description

This instruction copies the contents of the *src* operand into the *dest* operand. If the *dest* operand is a segment register, the instruction loads the descriptor associated with the selector into the 80386 shadow registers. Privilege checks and tests for descriptor legality are made unless the selector value is 0. A protection fault occurs if 0 is loaded into the SS register.

When the SS register is loaded, all hardware interrupts (including NMI) are masked until after the next instruction executes, to allow loading of the ESP register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
10	#NP(sel)		
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

MOV	DS, AX	: Load new data segment
MOV	ES, heap_seg	: Load ES register
MOV	save_ss, SS	: Store copy of SS register

MOV

80386

Move Special

(32)

SyntaxMOV *dest*, *src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *src***Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
MOV reg,	reg

Description

This instruction copies or loads a special CPU register to or from an 80386 general register. The special registers are CR0, CR2, CR3, DR0, DR1, DR2, DR3, DR6, DR7, TR6, and TR7.

A procedure must be running at a CPL of 0 to execute this instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
13	#GP(0)	#GP(0)

Examples

```
MOV     EAX, CR0      ; Save CR0 in EAX
MOV     TR7, ECX      ; Load test register 7
```

MOVS**Move String**

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

MOVS

Operation

```

when opcode is (MOVSB, MOVSW, MOVSD) set opsize ← (1, 2, 4)
ES:[EDI] ← DS:[ESI]
if (DF = 0) then
    ESI ← ESI + opsize
    EDI ← EDI + opsize
else
    ESI ← ESI - opsize
    ESI ← ESI - opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

```

MOVSB      ; Move string byte
MOVSW      ; Move string word
MOVSD      ; Move string doubleword

```

Description

This instruction copies the memory operand pointed to by DS:ESI to the destination address specified by ES:EDI. The operand is a byte, word, or doubleword, depending on the opcode specified. The EDI and ESI registers are incremented by the size of the operand if the DF bit is 0 or decremented if the DF bit is 1.

You can apply the REP prefix to the MOVS instruction to repeat the instruction. You must place the value specifying the repeat count in the ECX register.

A segment override prefix may be applied to the MOVS instruction. It will override the DS segment of the DS:[ESI] operand. You cannot override the ES segment assumption for the EDI operand.

For dword-aligned strings, a REP MOVSD transfers data quicker than does the equivalent REP MOVSB or REP MOVSW. However, if the source and destination strings overlap, only the REP MOVSB operation works correctly.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

LEA    ESI, copyright_msg    ; Get source string
LES    EDI, [EBP+12]         ; ES:EDI loaded from stack frame
MOV    ECX, 31               ; Size of source string
CLD
REP MOVSB                  ; Ensure direction flag set correctly
                            ; Copy byte string

```

MOVSX

80386

Move with Sign Extension

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxMOV_{SX} *dest*, *src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *sign_extend(src)***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
MOV _{SX}	reg.	reg
MOV _{SX}	reg.	mem

Description

This instruction copies an 8-bit operand to a 16-bit or 32-bit destination or a 16-bit operand to a 32-bit destination and sign-extends the source operand to fit. Sign extension is performed by duplicating the high-order bit of the *src* throughout the upper bits of the *dest* operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Examples

MOV _{SX} EAX, AL	; Extend byte to dword
MOV _{SX} EDI, WORD PTR [ESI]	; Extend word to dword
MOV _{SX} CX, DL	; Extend byte to word

MOVZX

80386

Move with Zero Extension

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

MOVZX *dest*, *src*

Operation

dest \leftarrow *src*

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
MOVZX	reg.,	reg
MOVZX	reg.,	mem

Description

This instruction copies an 8-bit operand to a 16-bit or 32-bit destination or a 16-bit operand to a 32-bit destination and zero-extends the source operand to fit. Sign extension is performed by filling the upper bits of the *dest* operand with 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

MOVZX	EAX, AL	; Extend byte to dword
MOVZX	EDI, WORD PTR [ESI]	; Extend word to dword
MOVZX	CX, DL	; Extend byte to word

MUL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Unsigned Multiplication

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxMUL *src***Operation** $acc \leftarrow acc * src$ **Legal Forms**

<i>src</i>	
MUL	reg
MUL	mem

Description

This instruction performs unsigned integer multiplication and requires only one operand, the multiplier. The multiplicand is the accumulator, and the product is also stored in the accumulator. The size of the *src* operand determines which registers will be used, as illustrated in the following table:

<i>Multiplier (src)</i>	<i>Multiplicand</i>	<i>Product</i>
byte	AL	AX
word	AX	DX:AX
dword	EAX	EDX:EAX

The flags are left in an undetermined state except for OF and CF, which are cleared to 0 if the high-order byte, word, or dword of the product is 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	?	?	-	?	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
MOV    EAX, 3           ; Multiplicand
MUL    DWORD PTR [ESI]  ; Multiplier
JC     res_64           ; Branch if result requires 64 bits
MOV    res_32, EAX      ; Else store product
```

NEG**Negate Integer**

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxNEG *op***Operation***op* \leftarrow $-(op)$ **Legal Forms**

<i>op</i>	
NEG	reg
NEG	mem

Description

This instruction subtracts its operand from 0, which results in a two's complement (integer) negation of the operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
; Compute absolute value
OR    EAX, EAX          ; Test for +/--
JNS   SKIP              ; Jump if not signed (positive)
NEG   EAX              ; Negate negative number
SKIP:
```

NOP

8086/80186/80286/80386

No Operation

()

Syntax

NOP

Legal Form

NOP

Description

This instruction performs no function other than taking up space in the code segment.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

NOP ; Nothing occurs

NOT

8086/80186/80286/80386

Boolean Complement

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxNOT *op***Operation***op* $\leftarrow \sim \text{op}$ **Legal Forms**

<i>op</i>	
NOT	reg
NOT	mem

Description

This instruction inverts the state of each bit in the operand.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

NOT ECX ; Insert ECX

OR

8086/80186/80286/80386

Boolean OR

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxOR *dest, src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *dest* | *src***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
OR	reg,	idata
OR	mem,	idata
OR	reg,	reg
OR	reg,	mem
OR	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction performs a Boolean OR operation between each bit of the *src* operand and the *dest* operand. The result is stored in *dest*. The truth table defining the OR operation is as follows:

0 | 0 = 0

0 | 1 = 1

1 | 0 = 1

1 | 1 = 1

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF	
0	-	-	-	x	x	-	x	-	0

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

OR AL, 80H ; Set high bit of AL

OUT

8086/80186/80286/80386

Output to Port

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxOUT *port*, *acc***Operation***port* \leftarrow *acc***Legal Forms**

	<i>port</i>	<i>acc</i>
OUT	data,	<i>acc</i>
OUT	DX,	<i>acc</i>

Description

This instruction outputs the value in the accumulator to the specified data port. Placing an immediate value in the *port* operand field lets you address ports 0–255. You can address port addresses 0–65,535 by storing the port number in the DX register.

OUT is a privileged instruction. A procedure executing an output instruction must satisfy one of two conditions; otherwise, a general protection fault occurs.

If the procedure that executes an OUT instruction has I/O privilege (if its CPL is numerically less than or equal to the IOPL field in the EFLAGS register), the output instruction executes immediately.

If the procedure does not have I/O privilege, the I/O permission bitmap for the current task is checked. If the bit(s) corresponding to the I/O port(s) is cleared to 0, the output instruction executes. If the bit(s) is set to 1, or the port(s) is outside the range of the bitmap, a general protection fault occurs. See Chapter 5 for more details on this feature.

If the OUT instruction is encountered while in V86 mode, only the I/O permission bitmap is tested. The IOPL value is not a factor.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
13 #GP(0)		#GP(0)

Example

```
MOV      DX, 378H      ; Set port address
OUT      DX, AX      ; Write to ports 378 and 379
```

OUTS

80186/80286/80386

Output String

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

OUTS

Operation

```

when opcode is (OUTSB, OUTSW, OUTSD) set opsize ← (1,2,4)
port (DX) ← DS:[ESI]
if (DF = 0) then
    ESI ← ESI + opsize
else
    ESI ← ESI - opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

OUTSB	; Out string byte
OUTSW	; Out string word
OUTSD	; Out string doubleword

Description

This instruction outputs the byte, word, or doubleword at offset ESI to the port specified in register DX. The ESI register is adjusted by the size of the memory operand—incremented if the DF bit is 0 or decremented if DF is 1.

You can precede the OUTS instruction with the REP instruction; however, register ECX must contain a count of the number of times the OUTS instruction is to be executed.

You can apply one of the segment override prefixes to the OUTS instruction, causing the operand to be taken from the specified segment rather than the segment pointed to by DS.

Output instructions are privileged instructions. The protection checks for the OUTS instructions are the same as those for the OUT instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		#SS(0)
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
LEA    ESI, IO_CHNL_CMD    ; Get pointer to string
MOV    DX, CONTROLLER     ; Get I/O port number
MOV    ECX, 8              ; Size of I/O string
REP    OUTSD               ; Output 8 doublewords
```

POP

8086/80186/80286/80386

Pop Segment Register

(16)

SyntaxPOP *seg***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{seg} &\leftarrow \text{SS:}[\text{ESP}] \\ \text{ESP} &\leftarrow \text{ESP} + 4 \end{aligned}$$
Legal Form

<i>seg</i>	_____
POP	sreg

Description

This instruction pops a 32-bit value off the stack and stores the low-order 16 bits in the specified segment register. Register CS is not a valid destination operand, but the other segment registers (DS, ES, SS, FS, and GS) are valid.

The value stored in the segment register must be a valid selector or 0; otherwise, a protection fault occurs. (Register SS cannot be loaded with a 0.) Note also that a POP SS instruction has limited usefulness because SS and ESP are required to implement a stack. However, if you execute a POP SS, the 80386 inhibits all hardware interrupts to enable the loading of ESP and the guarding against interrupts while the stack pointer is invalid.

If the POP instruction is executed by a V86 mode task, only 16 bits are popped off the stack.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
10	#NP(sel)	
12	#SS(0)	#SS(0)
13	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

Examples

POP	GS
POP	DS

POP

8086/80186/80286/80386

Pop Value off Stack

(16p/32)

Syntax

POP *dest*

Operation

```

dest ← SS:[ESP]
if (sizeof (dest) = 16) then
    ESP ← ESP + 2
else
    ESP ← ESP + 4
endif

```

Legal Forms

<i>dest</i>	
POP	reg
POP	mem

Description

This instruction pops the current value at the top-of-stack, stores it in the *dest* operand, and adjusts the stack pointer.

For optimum performance, keep the stack on a doubleword boundary. Pushing and popping 16-bit values might alter this alignment. For this reason, it is preferable to sign-extend or zero-extend a 16-bit operand to 32 bits before pushing or popping it.

When you execute POP in V86 mode, the stack will generally be used only for 16-bit values. This does not degrade system performance. Pushing and popping 16-bit values leads to problems only when both 32-bit and 16-bit pushes and pops are mixed in the same code.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

POP ECX

POPA

Pop All General Registers

80186/80286/80386

(16)

Syntax

POPA

Operation

POP	DI
POP	SI
POP	BP
ADD	ESP, 2
POP	BX
POP	DX
POP	CX
POP	AX

Legal Form

POPA

Description

This instruction pops all 16-bit general registers except SP from the stack. Because the registers are stored as a 16-byte block of data, the POPA instruction does not affect doubleword alignment of the stack.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

POPA

POPAD

80386

Pop All General Registers

(32)

Syntax

POPAD

Operation

POP	EDI
POP	ESI
POP	EBP
ADD	ESP, 4
POP	EBX
POP	EDX
POP	ECX
POP	EAX

Legal Form

POPAD

Description

This instruction pops all 32-bit general registers except ESP from the stack.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13		INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

POPAD

POPF

8086/80186/80286/80386

Pop Stack into FLAGS

(16)

Syntax

POPF

Operation

FLAGS \leftarrow SS:[ESP]
 ESP \leftarrow ESP + 2

Legal Form

POPF

Description

This instruction pops the low-order word of the EFLAGS register from the stack. POPF provides compatibility with previous Intel microprocessors. Use the POPFD instruction in native-mode programming.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13		INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

POPF

POPFD

80386

Pop Stack into EFLAGS

(32)

Syntax

POPFD

Operation

EFLAGS \leftarrow SS:[ESP]
 ESP \leftarrow ESP + 4

Legal Form

POPFD

Description

This instruction pops the top-of-stack into the EFLAGS register. The VM and RF bits initially present in EFLAGS are not modified. The interrupt flag is modified only if CPL \leq IOPL before the POPFD, that is, if the executing procedure has I/O privilege. The IOPL field is altered only if CPL = 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13		INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

POPFD

PUSH

8086/80186/80286/80386

Push Value onto Stack

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxPUSH *op***Operation**

```

if (sizeof(op) = 16)
    ESP ← ESP - 2
else
    ESP ← ESP - 4
endif
SS:[ESP] ← op

```

Legal Forms

<i>op</i>	
PUSH	idata
PUSH	reg
PUSH	sreg
PUSH	mem

Description

This instruction pushes the operand onto the stack. The stack pointer is decremented before the value is pushed. If the operand is the ESP register, the value stored on the stack is the value that ESP had before the instruction was executed. (This instruction is different from the 8086 instruction, which pushes the new value.)

Note that pushing 16-bit registers and memory operands onto the stack changes the stack's memory alignment. It is more efficient to sign-extend or zero-extend the operand to 32 bits and push the dword. The 80386 uses segment registers to push an instruction value onto the stack.

When you execute the PUSH instruction in V86 mode, segment registers are pushed as 16-bit values. The stack will generally be used only for 16-bit values in V86 mode. This does not affect system performance because stack misalignment only occurs when both 16-bit and 32-bit values are pushed onto the stack.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

Examples

```
PUSH    7          ; Push data value
MOVSX  EAX, AX    ; Sign extend AX
PUSH    EAX        ; Then push
PUSH    array[ESI*4] ; Push memory value
```

PUSHA

80186/80286/80386

Push 16-Bit General Registers

(16)

Syntax

PUSHA

Operation

```

temp ← SP
PUSH    AX
PUSH    CX
PUSH    DX
PUSH    BX
PUSH    temp
PUSH    BP
PUSH    SI
PUSH    DI

```

Legal Form

PUSHA

Description

This instruction stores a copy of all eight 16-bit registers on the stack. This instruction provides compatibility with 80186 and 80286 software. Use the PUSHAD instruction in native-mode environments.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13		INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

PUSHA

PUSHAD

80386

Push 32-Bit General Registers

(32)

Syntax

PUSHAD

Operation

```

temp ← ESP
PUSH    EAX
PUSH    ECX
PUSH    EDX
PUSH    EBX
PUSH    temp
PUSH    EBP
PUSH    ESI
PUSH    EDI

```

Legal Form

PUSHAD

Description

This instruction stores a copy of all eight general registers on the stack. The value of ESP that is saved to the stack is the ESP value before execution of the PUSHAD instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		#GP(0)
13		INT 13	
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

PUSHAD

PUSHF

8086/80186/80286/80386

Push 16-Bit EFLAGS Register

(16)

Syntax

PUSHF

Operation

ESP = ESP - 2
 SS:[ESP] ← FLAGS

Legal Form

PUSHF

Description

This instruction pushes the low-order 16 bits of the EFLAGS register onto the stack. PUSHF provides compatibility with 16-bit processors and causes misalignment of the stack if used in native mode. Only 32-bit programs should use PUSHFD.

PUSHF causes a general protection fault in V86 mode if the executing procedure's IOPL is numerically less than 3.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13			#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

PUSHF

PUSHFD

80386

Push EFLAGS Register

(32)

Syntax

PUSHFD

Operation

$ESP = ESP - 4$
 $SS:[ESP] \leftarrow EFLAGS$

Legal Form

PUSHFD

Description

This instruction pushes the contents of the EFLAGS register onto the stack. PUSHF will cause a general protection fault in V86 mode if IOPL is less than 3.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13			#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

PUSHFD

RCL

Rotate Through Carry Left

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxRCL *dest*, *count***Operation**

```

temp ← max (count, 31)
if (temp = 1) then
    OF ← (highbit(dest) != CF)
else
    OF ← ?
endif
value ← concatenate (CF, dest)
while (temp != 0)
    x ← highbit (value)
    value ← (value << 1) + x
    temp ← temp - 1
endwhile
CF ← highbit (value)
dest ← value

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
RCL	reg,	idata
RCL	mem,	idata
RCL	reg,	CL
RCL	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction concatenates the carry flag (CF) with the *dest* operand and rotates the value the specified number of times. A rotation is implemented by shifting the value once and transferring the bit shifted off the high end to the low-order position of the value.

The OF bit is defined only if the rotate count is 1. The 80386 never rotates a pattern more than 31 times. Counts greater than 31 are masked by the bit pattern 0000001FH.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

RCL EAX, 3 ; Rotate EAX 3 bits left

RCR

Rotate Through Carry Right

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxRCR *dest, count***Operation**

```

temp ← max (count, 31)
if (temp = 1) then
    OF ← (highbit(dest) != highbit(dest << 1))
else
    OF ← ?
endif
value ← concatenate (dest, CF)
while (temp != 0)
    x ← value & 1
    value ← (value >> 1)
    highbit (value) ← x
    temp ← temp - 1
endwhile
CF ← highbit (value)
dest ← value

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
RCR	reg.	idata
RCR	mem.	idata
RCR	reg.	CL
RCR	mem.	CL

Description

This instruction concatenates the carry flag (CF) with the *dest* operand and rotates the value the specified number of times. A rotation is implemented by shifting the value once and transferring the bit shifted off the low end to the high-order position of the value.

The OF bit is defined only if the rotate count is 1. The 80386 never rotates a pattern more than 31 times. Counts greater than 31 are masked by the bit pattern 0000001FH.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

RCR EAX, 3 ; Rotate EAX 3 bits right

REP

8086/80186/80286/80386

Repeat String Prefix

()

Syntax

REP

Legal Forms

REP

REPE

REPZ

REPNE

REPNZ

Description

The repeat prefix may be applied to any string instruction (CMPS, INS, LODS, MOVS, OUTS, SCAS, STOS). When the prefix is present, the string instruction executes repeatedly based on the *count* value in the ECX register. The ZF flag is also tested when executing CMPS or SCAS.

If ECX is 0 when a repeated string instruction is encountered, the string instruction will not be executed.

Refer to the individual string instructions in this chapter for additional information.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
6 #UD()	INT 6	#UD()

Example

```

MOV      EAX, 0
MOV      ECX, 1024/4
REP     STOSD           ; initialize 1 KB of memory to 0

```

RET

8086/80186/80286/80386

Near Return from Subroutine

()

SyntaxRET *count***Operation**

EIP \leftarrow pop ();
 ESP \leftarrow ESP + *count*

Legal Forms

count

RET

RET idata

Description

This instruction restores the instruction pointer to the value it held before the previous CALL instruction. The value of EIP that had been saved on the stack is popped. If the *count* operand is present, the *count* value is added to ESP, removing any operands that were pushed onto the stack for the subroutine call.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

RET 4

; Return and pop one dword

RETF

8086/80186/80286/80386

Far Return from Subroutine

O

SyntaxRETF *count***Operation**

EIP \leftarrow pop()
 CS \leftarrow pop()
 ESP \leftarrow ESP + *count*

Legal Forms

count

 RETF
 RETF idata
Description

This variation of the RET instruction pops both a new CS and EIP from the stack. The instruction assumes that the CS value is stored as the low-order 16 bits of a dword on the stack.

If this instruction causes a privilege-level transition, the protection checks described in Chapter 5 take place.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
10	#NP(sel)	
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Example

RETF ; Rotate EAX 3 bits left

ROL

Rotate Left

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxROL *dest*, *count***Operation**

```

temp ← max (count, 31)
if (temp = 1) then
    OF ← (highbit(dest) != CF)
else
    OF ← ?
endif
while (temp != 0)
    x ← highbit (dest)
    dest ← (dest << 1) + x
    temp ← temp - 1
endwhile
CF ← highbit (dest)

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
ROL	reg,	idata
ROL	mem,	idata
ROL	reg,	CL
ROL	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction rotates the *dest* operand the specified number of times. A rotation is implemented by shifting the value once and transferring the bit shifted off the high end to the low-order position of the value.

The OF bit is defined only if the rotate count is 1. The 80386 never rotates a pattern more than 31 times. Counts greater than 31 are masked by the bit pattern 0000001FH.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

ROL EAX, 3 ; Rotate EAX 3 bits left

ROR

8086/80186/80286/80386

Rotate Right

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxROR *dest*, *count***Operation**

```

temp ← max (count, 31)
if (temp = 1) then
    OF ← (highbit(dest) != highbit(dest << 1))
else
    OF ← ?
endif
while (temp != 0)
    x ← value & 1
    value ← (value >> 1)
    highbit(value) ← x
    temp ← temp - 1
endwhile
CF ← highbit (value)
dest ← value

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
ROR	reg,	idata
ROR	mem,	idata
ROR	reg,	CL
ROR	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction rotates the *dest* operand the specified number of times. A rotation is implemented by shifting the value once and transferring the bit shifted off the low end to the high-order position of the value.

The OF bit is defined only if the rotate count is 1. The 80386 never rotates a pattern more than 31 times. Counts greater than 31 are masked by the bit pattern 0000001FH.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

ROR EAX, 3 ; Rotate EAX 3 bits right

SAHF

8086/80186/80286/80386

Store AH in EFLAGS

(8)

Syntax

SAHF

Operation

EFLAGS \leftarrow EFLAGS | (AH & 0D5H)

Legal Form

SAHF

Description

This instruction loads the contents of the AH register into bits 7, 6, 4, 2, and 0 of the EFLAGS register.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

None.

Example

SAHF

SAL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Shift Left Arithmetic

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxSAL *dest, count***Operation**

```

temp ← count & 001FH
while (temp != 0)
    CF ← highorder (dest)
    dest ← dest << 1
    temp ← temp - 1
    end
if count = 1 then
    OF ← highorder (dest) != CF
else
    OF ← ?

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
SAL	reg,	idata
SAL	mem,	idata
SAL	reg,	CL
SAL	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction shifts the *dest* operand *count* bits to the left. The arithmetic shift left (SAL) and logical shift left (SHL) are equivalent instructions.

The *count* operand must either be an immediate data value or be stored in register CL. The 80386 masks the *count* operand with 1FH so that the *count* value is never greater than 31.

If the *count* operand is 1, the overflow flag is reset to 0 when the high-order bit and the carry flag have the same value after the shift. If the high-order bit and CF have different values, OF is set to 1. If *count* is greater than 1, OF is undefined.

A left shift is equivalent to multiplying the *dest* operand by 2^{count} .

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

SAL ECX, 7
SAL WORD PTR [EBP+8], CL

SAR

8086/80186/80286/80386

Shift Right Arithmetic

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxSAR *dest, count***Operation**

```

temp ← count & 001FH
while (temp != 0)
    save ← highorder (dest)
    CF = dest & 1
    dest ← dest >> 1
    highorder (dest) = save
    temp ← temp - 1
    end
if count = 1 then
    OF ← 0
else
    OF ← ?

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
SAR	reg,	idata
SAR	mem,	idata
SAR	reg,	CL
SAR	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction shifts the *dest* operand *count* bits to the right. The shift is called arithmetic because it preserves the sign bit of the *dest* operand.

The *count* operand must be an immediate data value or it must be stored in register CL. The 80386 masks the *count* operand with 1FH so that the *count* value is never greater than 31.

If *count* is 1, the overflow is reset to 0. If *count* is greater than 1, OF is undefined.

The arithmetic right shift is similar to dividing *dest* by 2^{count} except that negative values are rounded toward negative infinity, rather than toward 0 (that is, -3 shifted left 1 rounds to -2, whereas -3 divided by 2^1 rounds to -1).

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

SAR ECX, 7
SAR WORD PTR [EBP+8], CL

SBB

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

Subtraction with Borrow**Syntax**SBB *dest, src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *dest* - *src* - CF**Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
SBB	reg,	idata
SBB	mem,	idata
SBB	reg,	reg
SBB	reg,	mem
SBB	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction subtracts the *src* operand from the *dest* operand and decrements the *dest* operand by 1 if the CF flag is set. The result is stored in *dest*.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
; 64-bit subtraction operation EDX:EAX - EBX:ECX
SUB      EAX, ECX          ; Low-order bits
SBB      EDX, EBX          ; High-order bits
```

SCAS**Scan String****8086/80186/80286/80386****(8/16p/32)****Syntax**

SCAS

Operation

```

when opcode is (SCASB, SCASW, SCASD) set opsize ← (1, 2, 4)
NULL ← acc - ES:[EDI]
if (DF = 0) then
    EDI ← EDI + opsize
else
    EDI ← EDI - opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

SCASB	:	Scan string byte
SCASW	:	Scan string word
SCASD	:	Scan string doubleword

Description

This instruction compares the value in the accumulator (AL, AX, or EAX) with the operand at ES:[EDI]. The flags are set according to the compare operation, and the EDI register is adjusted by the size of the operand. If the direction flag (DF) is 0, EDI is incremented; otherwise, it is decremented.

You can apply the REPE or REPNE prefix to the SCAS instruction. The ECX register contains a repeat count, indicating the maximum number of times the instruction should be repeated. The instruction will repeat only while the repeat condition is true, that is, when ZF = 1 for REPE (REPZ) or ZF = 0 for REPNE (REPNZ).

You cannot use a segment override prefix with SCAS. The ES register is always the destination of the string to be scanned.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

; Search for an asterisk in a string
LES    EDI, [EBP+12]      ; String pointer on stack
MOV    ECX, [EBP+20]      ; String size on stack
CLD
MOV    AL, '*'           ; Character to search for
REPNE SCASB              ; Scan
JE    MATCH              ; Branch if found

```

seg

8086/80186/80286/80386

Segment Override Prefix

O

Legal Forms

CS:
DS:
SS:
ES:
FS:
GS:

Description

The instruction that follows these prefixes takes its memory operand from the specified segment rather than from the default segment.

You cannot override the following string instructions:

INS
SCAS
STOS

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

MOV	EAX, FS:[ESI]	; Read from FS rather than DS
ADD	DS:[EBP], 7	; Write to DS rather than SS

SETcc

80386

Set Byte on *Condition*

(8)

Syntax

SETcc dest

Operation

```
if (cc) then
    dest ← 1
else
    dest ← 0
endif
```

Legal Forms

SETA dest	; Set if above (unsigned x > y) / CF = 0 & ZF = 0
SETAE dest	; Set if above or equal / CF = 0
SETB dest	; Set if below (unsigned x < y) / CF = 1
SETBE dest	; Set if below or equal / CF = 1 | ZF = 1
SETC dest	; Set if carry / CF = 1
SETE dest	; Set if equal / ZF = 1
SETG dest	; Set if greater (signed x > y) / SF = OF & ZF = 0
SETGE dest	; Set if greater or equal / SF = OF
SETL dest	; Set if less (signed x < y) / SF ≠ OF
SETLE dest	; Set if less or equal / SF ≠ OF & ZF = 1
SETNA dest	; Set if not above (SETBE)
SETNAE dest	; Set if not above or equal (SETB)
SETNB dest	; Set if not below (SETAE)
SETNBE dest	; Set if not below or equal (SETA)
SETNC dest	; Set if no carry / CF = 0
SETNE dest	; Set if not equal / ZF = 0
SETNG dest	; Set if not greater (SETLE)
SETNGE dest	; Set if not greater or equal (SETL)
SETNL dest	; Set if not less (SETGE)
SETNLE dest	; Set if not less or equal / SF = OF & ZF = 0
SETNO dest	; Set if no overflow / OF = 0
SETNP dest	; Set if no parity / PF = 0
SETNS dest	; Set if no sign / SF = 0
SETNZ dest	; Set if not 0 / ZF = 0
SETO dest	; Set if overflow / OF = 1
SETP dest	; Set if parity / PF = 1
SETPE dest	; Set if parity even / PF = 1
SETPO dest	; Set if parity odd / PF = 0
SETS dest	; Set if sign / SF = 1
SETZ dest	; Set if 0 / ZF = 1

Description

This instruction sets the *dest* byte to 1 if the condition described by the opcode is met; otherwise, the instruction clears the byte to 0.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		#SS(0)
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
SETNZ    AL
MOVZX   EAX, AL
```

SGDT

80286/80386

Store GDT Register

O

SyntaxSGDT *dest***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{dest} &\leftarrow \text{GDTR.LIMIT} \\ \textit{dest} + 2 &\leftarrow \text{GDTR.BASE} \end{aligned}$$
Legal Form

	<i>dest</i>	
SGDT	mem	

Description

This instruction writes the limit portion of the GDTR to the *dest* memory address and writes the linear base address of the GDT to the dword at *dest* + 2.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6*	#UD()	INT 6
12	#SS(0)	#UD()
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0)
		#PF(ec)

* The undefined opcode fault only occurs when the *dest* operand is encoded as a register.

Example

SGDT [300H] ; Save GDTR

SHL

8086/80186/80286/80386

Shift Left Logical

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxSHL *dest*, *count***Operation**

```

temp ← count & 001FH
while (temp != 0)
    CF ← highorder (dest)
    dest ← dest << 1
    temp ← temp - 1
    end
if count = 1 then
    OF ← highorder (dest) != CF
else
    OF ← ?

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
SHL	reg,	idata
SHL	mem,	idata
SHL	reg,	CL
SHL	mem,	CL

Description

This instruction shifts the *dest* operand *count* bits to the left. The arithmetic left shift (SAL) and logical left shift (SHL) are equivalent instructions.

The *count* operand must either be an immediate data value or be stored in register CL. The 80386 masks the *count* operand with 1FH so that the *count* value is never greater than 31.

If the *count* operand is 1, the overflow flag is reset to 0 when the high-order bit and the carry flag have the same value after the shift. If the high-order bit and CF have different values, OF is set to 1. If *count* is greater than 1, OF is undefined.

A left shift is equivalent to multiplying the *dest* operand by 2^{count} .

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

SHL ECX, 7
SHL WORD PTR [EBP+8], CL

SHLD

80386

Shift Left Double

(16p/32)

SyntaxSHLD *dest, src, count***Operation**

```
temp ← max (count, 31)
value ← concatenate (dest, src)
value ← value << temp
dest ← value
```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>	<i>count</i>
SHLD	reg.	reg.	idata
SHLD	mem.	reg.	idata
SHLD	reg.	reg.	CL
SHLD	mem.	reg.	CL

Description

This instruction concatenates the *src* operand to the *dest* operand and shifts the resulting double-size value left. The low-order bits are stored in *dest*.

The *count* operand is masked with 1FH so that no shift counts greater than 31 are used.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	x	x	-	?	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
MOV      EAX, [ESI]          ; Get low-order dword
SHLD    EAX, [ESI+4], 7       ; 64-bit shift
```

SHR**Shift Right Logical**

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxSHR *dest*, *count***Operation**

```

temp ← count & 001FH
while (temp != 9)
    CF = dest & 1
    dest ← dest >> 1
    temp ← temp - 1
    end
if count = 1 then
    OF ← highorder (dest)
else
    OF ← ?

```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>count</i>
SHR	reg.	idata
SHR	mem.	idata
SHR	reg.	CL
SHR	mem.	CL

Description

This instruction shifts the *dest* operand *count* bits to the right. The high-order bits are cleared to 0 as the low-order bits are shifted.

The *count* operand must either be an immediate data value or be stored in register CL. The 80386 masks the *count* operand with 1FH so that the *count* value is never greater than 31.

If the *count* operand is 1, the overflow flag is set to the high-order bit of the *dest* operand. If *count* is greater than 1, OF is undefined.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	-	X

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

SHR ECX, 7
SHR WORD PTR [EBP+8], CL

SHRD**Shift Right Double**

80386

(16p/32)

SyntaxSHRD *dest, src, count***Operation**

```
temp ← max (count, 31)
value ← cat (src, dest)
value ← value >> temp
dest ← value
```

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>	<i>count</i>
SHRD	reg.	reg.	idata
SHRD	mem.	reg.	idata
SHRD	reg.	reg.	CL
SHRD	mem.	reg.	CL

Description

This instruction concatenates the *src* operand to the *dest* operand and shifts the resulting double-size value right. The low-order bits are stored in *dest*.

The *count* operand is masked with 1FH so that no shift counts greater than 31 are used.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
?	-	-	-	x	x	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
MOV      EAX, [002AH]      ; Get low-order dword
SHRD    EAX, [002EH]      ; 64-bit shift
```

SIDT

80286/80386

Store IDT Register

(O)

SyntaxSIDT *dest***Operation**

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{dest} &\leftarrow \text{IDTR.LIMIT} \\ \textit{dest} + 2 &\leftarrow \text{IDTR.BASE} \end{aligned}$$
Legal Form

	<i>dest</i>	
SIDT	mem	

Description

This instruction writes the limit portion of the IDTR to the *dest* memory address and the linear base address of the IDT to the dword at *dest* + 2.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
6*	#UD()	INT 6
12	#SS(0)	#UD()
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#PF(ec)

* The undefined opcode fault only occurs when the *dest* operand is encoded as a register.

Example

SIDT	int_tab	; Get address and limit of IDT
------	---------	--------------------------------

SLDT

80286/80386

Store LDT Register

(16)

SyntaxSLDT *dest***Operation***dest* \leftarrow LDTR**Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>	
SLDT	reg
SLDT	mem

Description

This instruction stores the selector in the LDTR in the destination location.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

SLDT DX ; Put LDT selector into DX

SMSW

80286/80386

Store Machine Status Word

(16)

SyntaxSMSW *dest***Operation***dest* \leftarrow MSW**Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>	
SMSW	reg
SMSW	mem

Description

This instruction stores the low-order 16 bits of register CR0 (the 80286 machine status word) in the *dest* operand.

This instruction is provided for compatibility only. Use the MOV CR0 instruction in native mode programming.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6		
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

SMSW [DI]

STC

8086/80186/80286/80386

Set Carry Flag

O

Syntax

STC

OperationCF \leftarrow 1**Legal Form**

STC

Description

This instruction sets the carry flag (CF) in the EFLAGS register to 1.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1

Faults

None.

Example

STC ; Carry flag set to 1

STD

8086/80186/80286/80386

Set Direction Flag

()

Syntax

STD

OperationDF \leftarrow 1**Legal Form**

STD

Description

This instruction sets the direction flag (DF) in the EFLAGS register to 1. This instruction indicates reverse direction in the string instructions to decrement the index registers when DF = 1.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

None.

Example

STD ; Prepare for reverse string operation

STI

8086/80186/80286/80386

Set Interrupt Flag

()

Syntax

STI

OperationIF \leftarrow 1**Legal Form**

STI

Description

This instruction sets the interrupt flag (IF) in the EFLAGS register to 1, enabling hardware interrupts.

The executing program must have a high enough privilege (CPL \leq IOPL) to issue the STI command to avoid a general protection fault.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Fault

PM	RM	V8086
13	#GP(0)	

Example

```

CLI                      ; Disable interrupts
MOV      AL, semaphore   ; Get memory value
DEC      AL                ; Decrement counter
J2       DONE              ; Skip if value was 0
MOV      semaphore, AL    ; Update
DONE:
STI                      ; Reenable interrupts

```

STOS

Store String

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

STOS

Operation

```

when opcode is (STOSB, STOSW, STOSD), set opsize ← (1, 2, 4)
ES:[EDI] ← accum
if (DF = 0) then
    EDI ← EDI + opsize
else
    EDI ← EDI - opsize
endif

```

Legal Forms

STOSB ; Store string byte
 STOSW ; Store string word
 STOSD ; Store string doubleword

Description

This instruction writes the current contents of the accumulator (AL, AX, or EAX, depending on the opcode used) to the memory location pointed to by ES:EDI. It then increments or decrements EDI by the size of the operand, according to the DF bit in the EFLAGS register.

If you precede the STOS instruction with the REP prefix, register ECX must contain a count of the number of times STOS is to be executed. This fills memory with the value in the accumulator.

You cannot use a segment override prefix with the STOS instruction. The destination segment will always be selected by ES.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

PM	RM	V8086
12 #SS(0)		
13 #GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14 #PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
; Clear 100 bytes of memory beginning at location 0
MOV    EDI, 0           ; Base address
MOV    ECX, 100 / 4     ; Count (in dwords)
XOR    EAX, EAX         ; Clear accumulator to 0
CLD
REP    STOSD           ; Zero memory
```

STR

80286/80386

Store Task Register

(16)

SyntaxSTR *dest***Operation***dest* \leftarrow TR**Legal Forms**

<i>dest</i>	
STR	reg
STR	mem

DescriptionThis instruction stores the task register selector in *dest*.**Flags**

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

STR CX ; Store current task's selector

SUB

8086/80186/80286/80386

Subtraction

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxSUB *dest, src***Operation***dest* \leftarrow *dest* - *src***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
SUB	reg.	idata
SUB	mem.	idata
SUB	reg.	reg
SUB	reg.	mem
SUB	mem.	reg

Description

This instruction subtracts the *src* operand from the *dest* operand and stores the result in *dest*.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
X	-	-	-	X	X	-	X	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```
; 64-bit subtraction operation EDX:EAX - EBX:ECX
SUB      EAX, ECX          ; Low-order bits
SBB      EDX, EBX          ; High-order bits with possible borrow
```

TEST

8086/80186/80286/80386

Test Bits

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxTEST *dest, src***Operation**NULL \leftarrow *dest & src***Legal Forms**

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
TEST	reg,	idata
TEST	mem,	idata
TEST	reg,	reg
TEST	reg,	mem
TEST	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction performs a bit-by-bit AND operation on the *src* and *dest* operands and discards the result. The flag bits, however, are set as they would be after an AND instruction.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
0	-	-	-	x	x	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

TEST	AL, 0FH	; Check if any bits set in ; low nibble of AL
TEST	EBX, ECX	; Test EBX under mask in ECX
TEST	WORD PTR[EBP+6], 8000H	; Check whether ; 16-bit integer is negative

VERR

80286/80386

Verify Read Access

(16)

SyntaxVERR *select***Operation**

```

if (accessible(select) & read_access(select)) then
    ZF ← 1
else
    ZF ← 0
endif

```

Legal Forms*select*

VERR	reg
VERR	mem

Description

This instruction sets the ZF bit in EFLAGS to 1 if the current procedure can load the *select* operand into DS, ES, FS, or GS and can read a value from the memory segment without causing a privilege violation.

If the selector is for a descriptor that is not a memory segment, if the memory segment is not readable, or if the current procedure does not have a high enough privilege level to gain access to the segment, VERR clears ZF to 0. The VERR instruction does not generate a fault for referring to a selector that is invalid; however, a fault occurs if the instruction operand is a memory operand and the operand address is invalid.

Note that this instruction does not check the 'present' bit of the descriptor, nor does it check access at the page protection level (U/S and R/W bits of page table entries).

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

```
VERR    WORD PTR [EBP+8]    ; Check selector on stack
JZ      CONTINUE          ; Branch if OK
STC
LEAVE
RETF
CONTINUE:
```

VERW

80286/80386

Verify Write Access

(16)

SyntaxVERW *select***Operation**

```
if (accessible(select) & write_access(select)) then
    ZF ← 1
else
    ZF ← 0
endif
```

Legal Forms*select*

VERW	reg
VERW	mem

Description

This instruction sets the ZF bit in EFLAGS to 1 if the current procedure can load the *select* operand into DS, SS, ES, FS, or GS and can write a value to the memory segment without causing a privilege violation.

If the selector is for a descriptor that is not a memory segment, if the memory segment is not writable, or if the current procedure does not have a high enough privilege level to gain access to the segment, VERW clears ZF to 0. The VERW instruction does not generate a fault for referring to a selector that is invalid; however, a fault occurs if the instruction operand is a memory operand and the operand address is invalid.

Note that this instruction does not check the 'present' bit of the descriptor, nor does it check access at the page protection level (U/S and R/W bits of page table entries).

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	X	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
6	INT 6	#UD()
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	
14	#PF(ec)	

Example

```
VERW    WORD PTR [EBP+8]    ; Check selector on stack
JZ      CONTINUE          ; Branch if OK
STC
LEAVE
RET
CONTINUE:
```

WAIT

8086/80186/80286/80386

Wait Until Not Busy

()

Syntax

WAIT

Legal Form

WAIT

Description

This instruction places the 80386 into an idle state until the BUSY\ pin is inactive. If the BUSY\ pin is inactive when the instruction executes, no idle occurs. The BUSY\ pin is usually connected to a numeric coprocessor. You should execute this instruction before any 80386 instruction that will access a value stored by the coprocessor.

If both the TS (task switched) bit in register CR0 and the MP (monitor coprocessor) bit are set, a coprocessor fault occurs. If the ERROR\ pin of the 80386 is active, indicating an unmasked exception on the coprocessor, a math fault occurs.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
7 #NMC	INT 7	#NM()
16 #MF()	INT 16	#MF()

Example

```

FST      result          ; Store floating-point result
WAIT
PUSH    result          ; Wait for coprocessor to finish
CALL    fp_print        ; Push the result onto the stack
                      ; Print the value

```

XCHG**Exchange**

8086/80186/80286/80386

(8/16p/32)

SyntaxXCHG *op1, op2***Operation**

```
temp ← op1
op1 ← op2
op2 ← temp
```

Legal Forms

	<i>op1</i>	<i>op2</i>
XCHG	reg,	reg
XCHG	reg,	mem
XCHG	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction swaps the contents of two operands. If either operand is a memory operand, the bus LOCK\ signal is held active during the read and write memory cycles.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)	
13	#GP(0)	INT 13
14	#PF(ec)	#GP(0) #PF(ec)

Examples

XCHG	EAX, ECX	; Swap EAX and ECX
XCHG	AL, [ESI+10]	; Exchange AL with memory

XLATB

8086/80186/80286/80386

Translate Byte

()

Syntax

XLATB

OperationAL \leftarrow DS:[EBX+AL]**Legal Form**

XLATB

Description

This instruction uses the value of AL as a positive index into a table located at DS:EBX. It then stores the indexed table byte in AL, replacing the original value.

You can apply a segment override prefix to XLATB so that the table access location will be at EBX + AL in the specified segment.

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Faults

	PM	RM	V8086
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Example

```

LEA      EBX, A2E_TAB      ; Load offset of ASCII to EBCDIC table
LDS      ESI, SRC          ; Load source string pointer
LES      EDI, DEST_BUFF    ; Load destination string pointer
CLD      ; Set DF = 0
L1:    LODSB               ; Get byte of source string
      CS:                 ; Assume translate table resides in CS
      XLATB               ; Translate byte
      STOSB               ; Store resulting character
      OR      AL, AL         ; Test for NUL character
      JNZ     L1              ; Loop if not NUL

```

XOR

8086/80186/80286/80386

Boolean Exclusive OR

(8/16p/32)

Syntax

`XOR dest, src`

Operation

 $dest \leftarrow dest \wedge src$

Legal Forms

	<i>dest</i>	<i>src</i>
XOR	reg,	idata
XOR	mem,	idata
XOR	reg,	reg
XOR	reg,	mem
XOR	mem,	reg

Description

This instruction performs a bit-by-bit exclusive OR operation on the *src* and *dest* operands, storing the result in the *dest* operand. The XOR operation is defined as follows:

$$0 \wedge 0 = 0$$

$$0 \wedge 1 = 1$$

$$1 \wedge 0 = 1$$

$$1 \wedge 1 = 0$$

Flags

OF	DF	IF	TF	SF	ZF	AF	PF	CF
0	-	-	-	X	X	-	?	-

Faults

	<i>PM</i>	<i>RM</i>	<i>V8086</i>
12	#SS(0)		
13	#GP(0)	INT 13	#GP(0)
14	#PF(ec)		#PF(ec)

Examples

<code>XOR AL, 0FFH</code>	; Change 0s to 1s and vice versa in AL
<code>XOR EBX, ECX</code>	; Compute $EBX \leftarrow EBX \wedge ECX$

Floating-Point Instruction Set

The floating-point instruction set adds support for arithmetic functions using real numbers. The 80386 cannot directly execute floating-point instructions. However, when coupled with the 80387 numeric coprocessor, the instruction set is extended to include the instructions that are described on the following pages.

PROCESSORS

Processors that support the instruction.

MNEMONIC

Used by the assembler to represent the instruction.

NAME

Name of instruction.

LEGAL FORMS

Legal forms of the instruction.

DESCRIPTION

Description of the instruction. mem = memory operand.

EXCEPTIONS

An "x" in a box indicates that the specified exception may be generated for the instruction. A "-" in a box indicates that the specified exception is not possible. SF = Stack fault. PE = Precision exception. UE = Underflow exception. OE = Overflow exception. ZE = Zero divide exception. DE = Denormal exception. IE = Invalid operation exception.

THE 80386 BOOK

FICOM

Integer Compare

8087/80287/80387

Legal Forms

```
FICOM mem16 : compare (ST, mem16)
FICOM mem32 : compare (ST, mem32)
FICOMP mem16 : compare (ST, mem16); pop():
FICOMP mem32 : compare (ST, mem32); pop();
```

Description

The two's complement integer is converted to temp real format and compared with the top of stack. If the opcode is FICOMP, the stack is popped after the comparison. The condition codes are set in the same manner as those for FCOM.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	-	X	X

Example

Before		After	
ST	6.0	ST	13792.29731
ST (1)	13792.29731		

FICOMP WORD PTR [0FC6H]

C₁ C₂ C₃ C₄
1 0 - 0

Memory pointer is integer 6.

326

EXAMPLE

Each example shows the 80387 stack before and after execution of the instruction.

FABS

8087/80287/80387

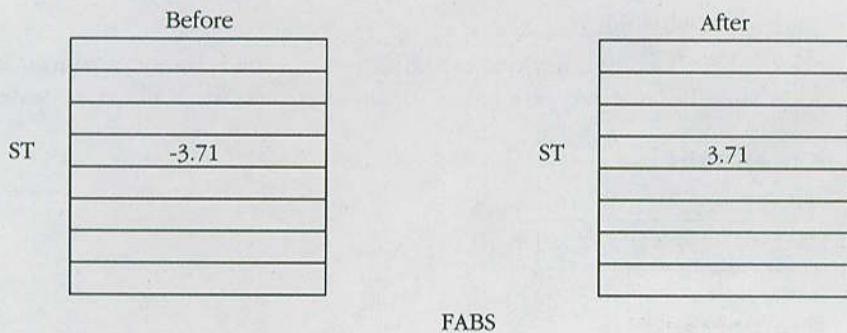
Absolute Value**Legal Form**FABS ; If (ST < 0) then ST \leftarrow ST * -1**Description**

This instruction replaces the original value of the element at the top of stack with its absolute value.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

FADD

8087/80287/80387

Addition**Legal Forms**

FADD		; ST(1) \leftarrow ST + ST(1); pop();
FADD	mem32	; ST \leftarrow ST + mem32
FADD	mem64	; ST \leftarrow ST + mem64
FADD	ST(n)	; ST \leftarrow ST + ST(n)
FADD	ST, ST(n)	; ST \leftarrow ST + ST(n)
FADD	ST(n), ST	; ST(n) \leftarrow ST(n) + ST
FADDP	ST, ST(n)	; ST \leftarrow ST + ST(n); pop();
FADDP	ST(n), ST	; ST(n) \leftarrow ST(n) + ST; pop();

Description

This instruction adds the specified floating-point operands and optionally pops the top of stack.

If you specify a memory operand, it is converted to temp real (80-bit) format before it is added to the top of stack.

If you add a floating-point value to infinity, the result is the original infinity. If you add two infinities, they must have the same sign, and the result is the same infinity.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
----	----	----	----	----	----	----

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Examples

Before

ST	4.66
ST (1)	0.21
ST (2)	13.00

After

ST	4.87
ST (1)	13.00

FADD

Before		After	
ST	4.66	ST	4.66
ST (1)	0.21	ST (1)	0.21
ST (2)	13.00	ST (2)	17.66

FADD ST(2), ST

FBLD

8087/80287/80387

BCD Load**Legal Form**

FBLD mem80 ; push(float(mem80))

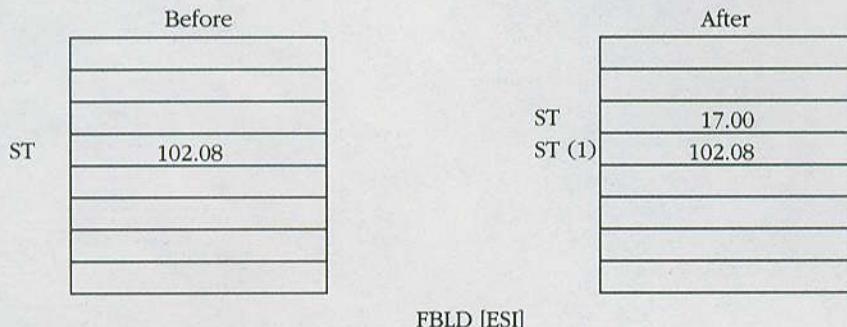
Description

This instruction converts an 80-bit, 19-digit BCD integer to a temp real and pushes it onto the stack. If the memory operand is not a valid BCD integer, an undefined value is pushed onto the stack.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

ESI points to 17 BCD.

FBSTP

8087/80287/80387

BCD Store and Pop**Legal Form**

FBSTP mem80 ; mem80 ← BCD(ST); pop();

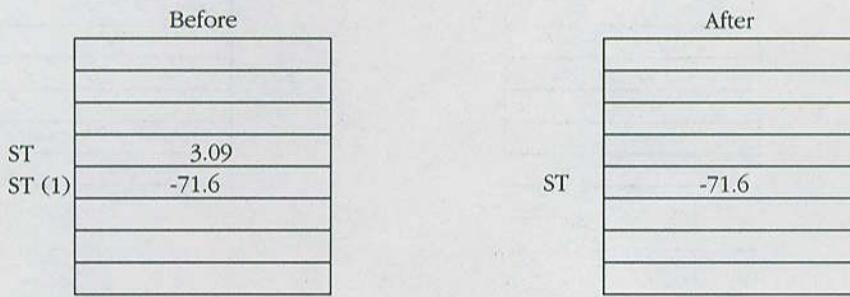
Description

This instruction rounds the top of stack to an integer, stores in memory in BCD format, and then pops the stack.

Unlike most arithmetic operations, FBSTP signals the invalid (I) exception if either operand is a quiet NaN.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
x	-	-	-	-	-	x

Example

FBSTP [0A2H]

BCD 3 is stored in memory.

FCHS**8087/80287/80387****Change Sign****Legal Form**FCHS ; ST \leftarrow ST * -1**Description**

This instruction complements the sign bit of the top of stack.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before

ST	1023.99
ST (1)	6.2001

After

ST	-1023.99
ST (1)	6.2001

FCHS

FCLEX

8087/80287/80387

Clear Exceptions

Legal Forms

FCLEX ; SW ← SW & 07FOOH
FNCLEX ; SW ← SW & 07FOOH

Description

This instruction clears the exception flags in the status word and the busy bit to 0. The FCLEX form of the instruction checks for unmasked exceptions from previous operations before clearing the status word. The FNCLEX form clears the SW bit without checking.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FCOM**Compare**

8087/80287/80387

Legal Forms

```

FCOM          ; compare ST, ST(1)
FCOM  mem32   ; compare (ST, mem32)
FCOM  mem64   ; compare (ST, mem64)
FCOM  ST(n)   ; compare (ST, ST(n))
FCOMP mem32   ; compare (ST, mem32); pop():
FCOMP mem64   ; compare (ST, mem64); pop():
FCOMP ST(n)   ; compare (ST, ST(n)); pop():
FCOMPP        ; compare (ST, ST(1)); pop(); pop();

```

Description

This instruction performs the function *compare* (*op1*, *op2*) and sets the 80387 condition code according to the result of the comparison. The 80387 stack is optionally popped once or twice.

The following table shows the condition code settings that result from the compare function. FCOM considers +0.0 and -0.0 to be equal.

Condition	C3	C2	C1	C0
<i>op1</i> > <i>op2</i>	0	0	-	0
<i>op1</i> < <i>op2</i>	0	0	-	1
<i>op1</i> = <i>op2</i>	1	0	-	0
either <i>op</i> is a NaN	1	1	-	1

The 80387 condition codes are arranged in the status word so that C3, C2, and C0 map into the same bit positions as the ZF, PF, and CF bits of the 80386 EFLAGS register. Thus, issuing the following instructions sets the 80386 flags as if the compare had been performed on the 80386.

```

FCOM    op          ; Floating point compare
FSTSW   AX          ; Store status word to AX
SAHF           ; Store AH into flags

```

You can then use any conditional jump instruction (JE, JNE, JA, JAE, JB, or JBE) to branch on the result of the compare. You can use JP to test for NaN operands.

Unlike most arithmetic operations, FCOM signals the invalid (I) exception if either operand is a quiet NaN.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Examples

Before		After	
ST	21.0	ST	-21.0
ST (1)	6.0	ST (1)	6.0
ST (2)	0.1114	ST (2)	0.1114

FCOM ST (2)

Before		After	
ST	-21.0	ST	0.1114
ST (1)	6.0		
ST (2)	0.1114		

FCOMPP

FCOS

80387

Cosine

Legal FormFCOS ; ST \leftarrow cos(ST)**Description**

This instruction computes the cosine of the value in radians at the top of stack and replaces ST with cosine.

The operand processed by FCOS must be a value between $\pm 2^{63}$ or the instruction does not execute and condition code C2 is set to 1. C2 is cleared to 0 if the instruction is executed.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before

ST	0.785399
ST (1)	-6.1

After

ST	0.7071...
ST (1)	-6.1

FCOS

FDECSTP

8087/80287/80387

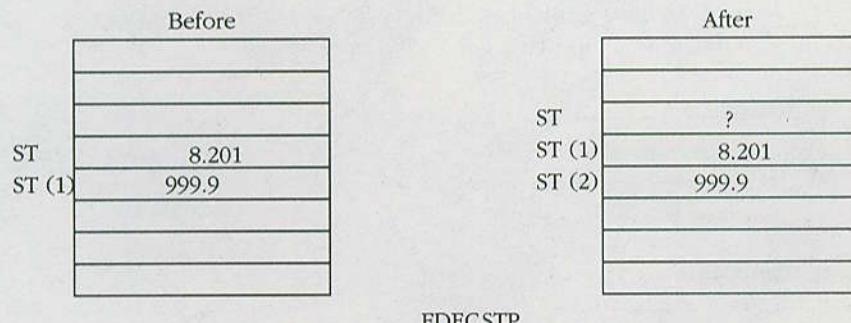
Decrement Stack Pointer**Legal Form**FDECSTP ; TOP \leftarrow (TOP - 1) & 07H**Description**

This instruction allows you to manipulate the 80387 stack pointer. Issuing FDECSTP is equivalent to pushing a new value onto the stack, but no value is supplied. The tag registers are not modified.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

FDIV

8087/80287/80387

Division**Legal Forms**

FDIV	ST(1) ← ST(1) / ST; pop();
FDIV	mem32 ST ← ST / mem32
FDIV	mem64 ST ← ST / mem64
FDIV	ST(n) ST ← ST / ST(n)
FDIV	ST, ST(n) ST ← ST / ST(n)
FDIV	ST(n), ST ST(n) ← ST(n) / ST
FDIVP	ST, ST(n) ST ← ST / ST(n); pop();
FDIVP	ST(n), ST ST(n) ← ST(n) / ST; pop();

Description

This instruction executes a divide operation with the above operands. If you specify a memory operand, it is converted to temp real (80-bit) format before the division is performed. A stack pop operation is performed if specified by the opcode.

Division by infinity results in 0. Infinity divided by a real number results in infinity. Infinity divided by infinity is not a valid operation.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Examples

Before

ST	4.0
ST (1)	0.4
ST (2)	5.0

After

ST	0.1
ST (1)	5.0

FDIV

Before		After	
ST	4.0	ST	4.0
ST (1)	0.4	ST (1)	0.4
ST (2)	5.0	ST (2)	1.25

FDIV ST(2), ST

FDIVR

8087/80287/80387

Division Reversed**Legal Forms**

FDIVR		ST(1) \leftarrow ST / ST(1); pop();
FDIVR	mem32	ST \leftarrow mem32 / ST
FDIVR	mem64	ST \leftarrow mem64 / ST
FDIVR	ST(n)	ST \leftarrow ST(n) / ST
FDIVR	ST, ST(n)	ST \leftarrow ST(n) / ST
FDIVR	ST(n), ST	ST(n) \leftarrow ST / ST(n)
FDIVRP	ST, ST(n)	ST \leftarrow ST(n) / ST; pop();
FDIVRP	ST(n), ST	ST(n) \leftarrow ST / ST(n); pop();

Description

This instruction executes a divide operation with the above operands. This instruction is equivalent to FDIV, but the divisor and dividend operands are exchanged. If you specify a memory operand, it is converted to temp real (80-bit) format before the division is performed. A stack pop operation is performed if specified by the opcode.

Division by infinity results in 0. Infinity divided by a real number results in infinity. Infinity divided by infinity is not a valid operation.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Examples

Before		After	
ST	4.0	ST	10.0
ST (1)	0.4	ST (1)	5.0
ST (2)	5.0		

FDIVR

Before		After
ST	4.0	
ST (1)	0.4	
ST (2)	5.0	

FDIVR ST(2), ST

FFREE

8087/80287/80387

Free NDP Register**Legal Form**

FFREE ST(n) ; TW(n) ← UNUSED

Description

This instruction marks the specified stack element as unused by setting the tag word for the corresponding 80387 register. The stack pointer is not modified, nor is the actual content of the NDP register.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST	190000.3	190000.3
ST (1)	-7.7	<unused>
ST (2)	0.001	0.001

FFREE ST(1)

FIADD

8087/80287/80387

Integer Addition**Legal Forms**

```
FIADD    mem16    ; ST ← ST + float(mem16)
FIADD    mem32    ; ST ← ST + float(mem32)
```

Description

This instruction converts the two's complement integer at the specified address to temp real format and adds it to the top of stack. Other than the difference in operand type, this instruction is equivalent to FADD.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST	17.6	-35.2
ST (1)	0.333	0.333

FIADD WORD PTR [ECX]

ECX points to integer -2.

FICOM

8087/80287/80387

Integer Compare**Legal Forms**

```

FICOM    mem16    ; compare (ST, mem16)
FICOM    mem32    ; compare (ST, mem32)
FICOMP   mem16    ; compare (ST, mem16); pop();
FICOMP   mem32    ; compare (ST, mem32); pop();

```

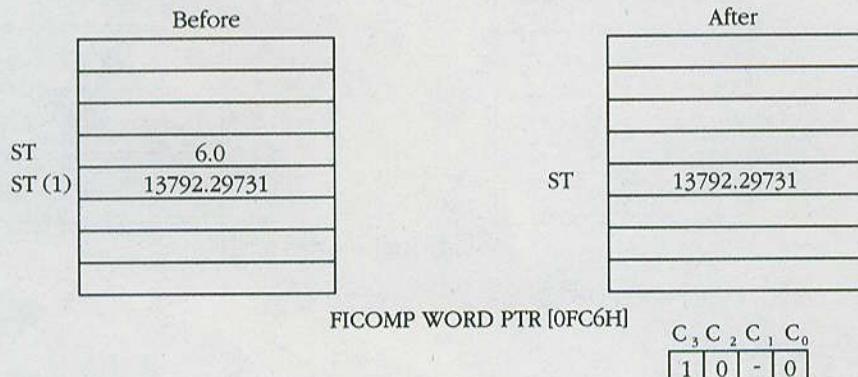
Description

The two's complement integer is converted to temp real format and compared with the top of stack. If the opcode is FICOMP, the stack is popped after the comparison.

The condition codes are set in the same manner as those for FCOM.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	-	X	X

Example

Memory pointer is integer 6.

FIDIV

8087/80287/80387

Integer Division

Legal Forms

FIDIV mem16 ; ST \leftarrow ST / real(mem16)
FIDIV mem32 ; ST \leftarrow ST / real(mem32)

Description

This instruction fetches the two's complement integer from memory, converts it to temp real format, and uses it as a divisor of the top of stack. The results generated by this instruction are the same as those generated by the FDIV instruction.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE JE

X X X X X X X

Example

	Before		After
ST	1.0	ST	-0.25
ST (1)	2.2	ST (1)	2.2

Memory pointer is integer -4.

FIDIVR

8087/80287/80387

Integer Division Reversed**Legal Forms**

```
FIDIVR mem16 ; ST ← real(mem16) / ST
FIDIVR mem32 ; ST ← real(mem32) / ST
```

Description

This instruction converts the two's complement integer at the specified memory location to temp real format and divides it by the top of stack. The results generated by this instruction are the same as those generated by the FDIVR instruction.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	X	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	1.0	ST	-4.0
ST (1)	2.2	ST (1)	2.2

FIDIVR DWORD PTR [EBP+16]

Memory pointer is integer -4.

FILD**8087/80287/80387****Integer Load****Legal Forms**

```
FILD    mem16    ; push (float (mem16))
FILD    mem32    ; push (float (mem32))
FILD    mem64    ; push (float (mem64))
```

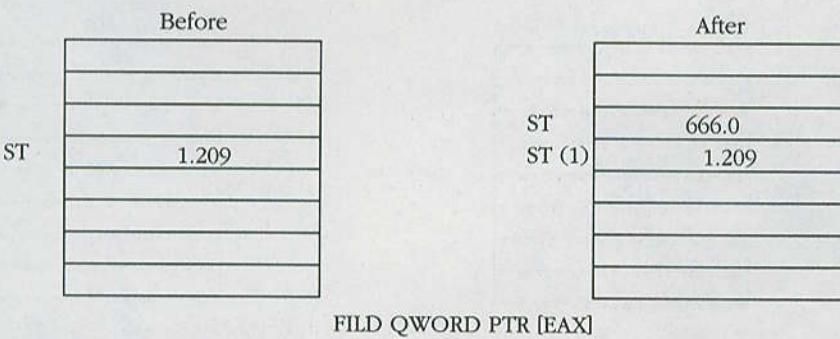
Description

This instruction converts a two's complement integer to temp real format and pushes the value onto the 80387 stack.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	-	-	-

X	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Memory pointer is integer 666.

FIMUL

8087/80287/80387

Integer Multiplication

Legal Forms

```
FIMUL    mem16    ; ST ← ST * real(mem16)
FIMUL    mem32    ; ST ← ST * real(mem32)
```

Description

This instruction converts the two's complement integer at the specified memory location to temp real format and multiplies it by the top of stack. The results of this instruction are identical to those obtained by FMUL.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

x	x	x	x	-	x	x
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST	-0.04	0.16
ST (1)	17.9	17.9

FIMUL WORD PTR [ESI+EAX]

Memory pointer is integer -4.

FINCSTP

8087/80287/80387

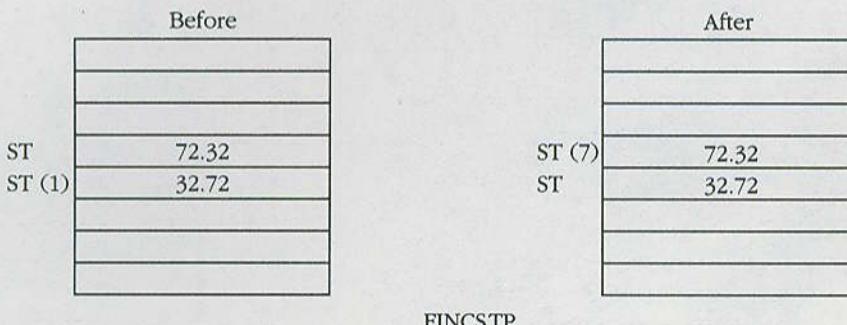
Increment Stack Pointer**Legal Form**FINCSTP ; TOP \leftarrow (TOP + 1) & 07H**Description**

This instruction increments the TOP field in the 80387 status word. The contents of the 80387 register previously at the top of stack and the register's associated tag word are not affected.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

FINIT

8087/80287/80387

Initialize NDP**Legal Forms**

FINIT	; CW ← 037FH; SW ← SW & 4700H; TW ← 0FFFFH
FNINIT	; CW ← 037FH; SW ← SW & 4700H; TW ← 0FFFFH

Description

This instruction sets the 80387 machine state to its default value. All registers are marked unused, all exceptions are masked, rounding control is set to nearest, and the operating mode is set to double-precision.

The FINIT instruction tests for any unmasked exception in the 80387 before clearing the NDP state, unlike FNINIT, which does not. Consequently, the first floating-point instruction of an application should be FNINIT.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FIST

8087/80287/80387

Integer Store

Legal Forms

```

FIST    mem16    : mem16 ← int(ST)
FIST    mem32    : mem32 ← int(ST)
FISTP   mem16    : mem16 ← int(ST); pop();
FISTP   mem32    : mem32 ← int(ST); pop();
FISTP   mem64    : mem64 ← int(ST); pop();

```

Description

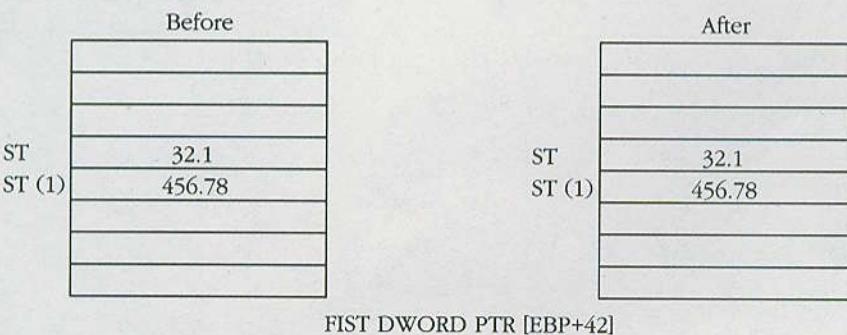
This instruction rounds the current top of stack to an integer according to the control bits and stores the value in the specified operand. If the opcode is FISTP, the stack is popped after the store operation. Note that the sign of a floating-point 0 is lost upon conversion to the two's complement integer format.

Two differences exist between FIST and FISTP. The FISTP instruction, which pops the stack after the store operation, can store a 64-bit integer; FIST cannot. The FIST instruction generates an invalid operation exception if the top of stack is a quiet NaN; FISTP does not.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	-	-	-	-	X

Example



Integer 32 stored into memory.

FISUB

8087/80287/80387

Integer Subtraction**Legal Forms**

```
FISUB    mem16    ; ST ← ST - real(mem16)
FISUB    mem32    ; ST ← ST - real(mem32)
```

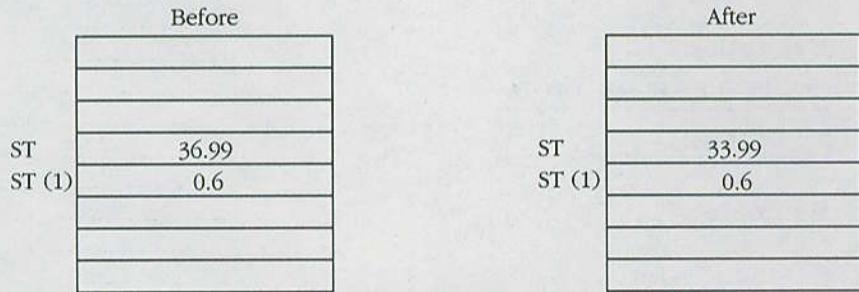
Description

This instruction converts the two's complement integer at the specified memory location to temp real format and subtracts it from the top of stack. The results of this instruction are identical to those obtained by FSUB.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

FISUB WORD PTR [A72H]

Memory pointer is integer 3.

FISUBR

8087/80287/80387

Integer Subtraction Reversed

Legal Forms

```
FISUBR mem16 ; ST ← real(mem16) - ST
FISUBR mem32 ; ST ← real(mem32) - ST
```

Description

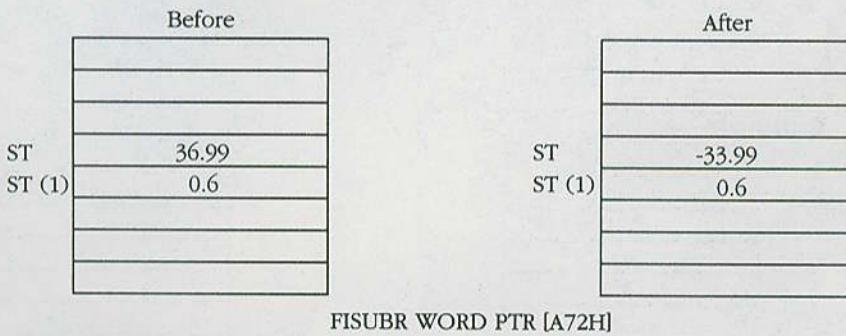
This instruction converts the two's complement integer at the specified memory location to temp real format and subtracts the top of stack from it. The results of this instruction are identical to those obtained by FSUBR.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example



Memory pointer is integer 3.

FLD

8087/80287/80387

Load Real**Legal Forms**

```

FLD      mem32    ; push(mem32)
FLD      mem64    ; push(mem64)
FLD      mem80    ; push(mem80)
FLD      ST(n)   ; push(ST(n))

```

Description

This instruction pushes a copy of the specified operand onto the 80387 stack. If you specify a 32-bit or 64-bit floating-point memory operand, it is converted to temp real format before being stored.

If the operand is a single- or double-precision value, the 80387 might generate a denormal exception. A denormal exception is not generated by a value already in temp real format.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST	19362.0	ST
ST (1)	7.11	ST (1)
		ST (2)

FLD DWORD PTR [EDX]

Memory pointer is short real 6.1.

FLDconst

8087/80287/80387

Load Constant**Legal Forms**

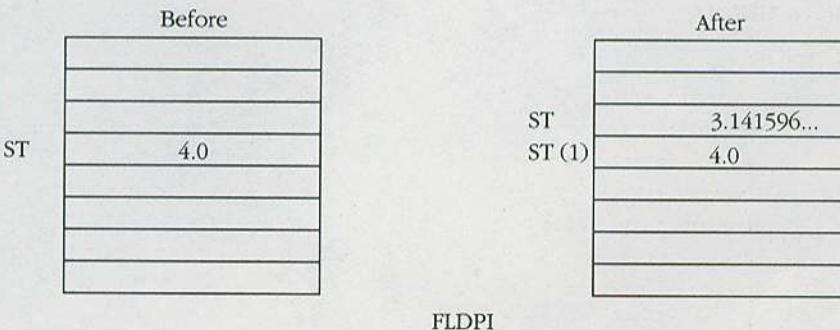
FLD1	; push(1.0)
FLDL2E	; push(log2(e))
FLDL2T	; push(log2(10))
FLDLG2	; push(log10(2))
FLDLN2	; push(ln(2))
FLDPI	; push(PI)
FLDZ	; push(+0.0)

Description

This instruction pushes the constant value specified by the opcode onto the stack. The function \ln stands for log base e .

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	-	-	-

Example

FLDCW

8087/80287/80387

Load Control Word**Legal Form**

FLDCW mem16 ; CW ← mem16

Description

This instruction loads a new value for the control word from memory. FLDCW can unmask previously masked exceptions, triggering an unmasked exception.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

x	x	x	x	x	x	x
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FLDENV

8087/80287/80387

Load Environment**Legal Form**FLDENV *memp* ; NDP \leftarrow *memp***Description**

This instruction loads the 28-byte block pointed to by *memp* into the environment registers of the 80387. The memory operand contains a new control word, status word, tag word, and error block. The memory format for the environment is shown in Figure 8-1.

31	16 15	0	Byte offset
Reserved	Control word	0	0
Reserved	Status word	4	
Reserved	Tag word	8	
	Error offset (EIP)	12	
Reserved	Error selector (CS)	16	
	Data operand offset	20	
Reserved	Data selector	24	

32-bit format

15	0	Byte offset
	Control word	0
	Status word	2
	Tag word	4
	Instruction pointer _{0..15}	6
IP _{16..19}		8
	Operand pointer _{0..15}	10
OP _{16..19}		12

16-bit format

Figure 8-1. 80387 environment.

Loading a new status word and control word can cause an unmasked exception.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	X	X	X	X

FMUL

8087/80287/80387

Multiplication**Legal Forms**

FMUL		: ST(1) \leftarrow ST(1) * ST; pop();
FMUL	mem32	: ST \leftarrow ST * mem32
FMUL	mem64	: ST \leftarrow ST * mem64
FMUL	ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST * ST(n)
FMUL	ST, ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST * ST(n)
FMUL	ST(n), ST	: ST(n) \leftarrow ST(n) * ST
FMULP	ST, ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST * ST(n); pop();
FMULP	ST(n), ST	: ST(n) \leftarrow ST(n) * ST; pop();

Description

This instruction multiplies the specified operands and stores them as indicated above. If you specify 32-bit or 64-bit memory operands, they are converted to temp real format before the multiplication takes place. If the opcode specifies, the stack is popped after the operation.

Multiplying any value other than 0 by infinity results in infinity. Multiplying 0 by infinity is an invalid operation.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
x	x	x	x	-	x	x

Examples

	Before	After
ST	2.0	
ST (1)	0.01	0.02
ST (2)	7.6	7.6

FMUL

Before		After
ST	2.0	ST
ST (1)	0.01	ST (1)
ST (2)	7.6	ST (2)

FMUL ST(1)

FNOP

8087/80287/80387

No Operation

Legal Form

FNOP

Description

FNOP is an alias for the FST ST, ST instruction. It does nothing.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Example

	Before	After
ST		
ST (1)	3.3 19.6	3.3 19.6

FNOP

FPATAN

8087/80287/80387

Partial Arctangent**Legal Form**FPATAN ; ST(1) \leftarrow atan(ST(1) / ST); pop();**Description**

This instruction computes the arctangent in radians of ST(1) ÷ ST. The mnemonic “partial arctangent” is inherited from earlier NDPs, which placed restrictions on the values of ST and ST(1). These values are not restricted on the 80387.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	-	-	X	X

Example

		Before	After
ST			
ST (1)		2.0	0.4636...
		1.0	1.0

FPATAN

FPREM

8087/80287/80387

Partial Remainder**Legal Form**FPREM ; ST \leftarrow remainder (ST / ST(1))**Description**

This instruction uses repeated subtractions to compute the remainder of ST divided by ST(1). Because this operation could require a large number of iterations (during which time the NDP would be inaccessible), the 80387 halts after producing a partial remainder. The 80387 reduces the value in ST by a factor of up to 2^{64} in a single iteration.

If the remainder is a partial value (that is, the operation does not complete), the C2 status bit is set to 1. If the remainder is less than the value of ST(1), the operation is complete and bit C2 is cleared to 0. By testing the value of C2, the FPREM instruction may be executed repeatedly until the remainder operation yields an exact result. Additionally, when the instruction is complete (C2 = 0), the three least significant bits of the quotient of ST + ST(1) can be computed by the following formula:

$$Q = C0 \times 4 + C3 \times 2 + C1$$

where C0, C1, and C3 are the remaining status bits.

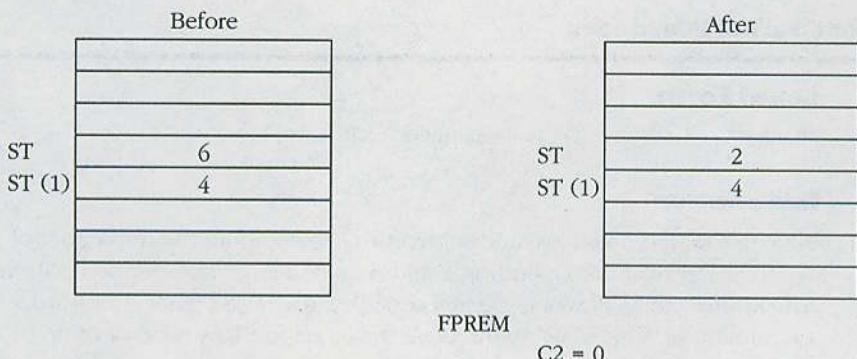
The FPREM instruction reduces operands for the transcendental functions of the 80387 to legal values. For example, the operand to F2XM1 must be $-1 \leq ST \leq 1$. FPREM produces an exact result, and the precision control and rounding control bits are ignored during execution.

The FPREM1 instruction produces the IEEE-754 standard partial remainder value, which may be different from FPREM when there are two integers equally close to ST + ST(1). FPREM rounds toward 0, and FPREM1 chooses the even value.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

FPREM1

80387

IEEE Partial Remainder**Legal Form**FPREM1 ; ST \leftarrow remainder (ST + ST(1))**Description**

This instruction uses repeated subtractions to compute the remainder of ST divided by ST(1). Because this operation could require a large number of iterations (during which time the NDP would be inaccessible), the 80387 halts after producing a partial remainder. The 80387 will reduce the value in ST by a factor of up to 2^{64} in a single iteration.

If the remainder is a partial value (that is, the operation is not complete), the C2 status bit is set to 1. If the remainder is less than the value of ST(1), the operation is complete and bit C2 is cleared to 0. By testing the value of C2, the FPREM1 instruction may be executed repeatedly until the remainder operations yield an exact result. Additionally, when the instruction is complete (C2 = 0), the three least significant bits of the quotient of ST + ST(1) can be computed by the following formula:

$$Q = C0 \times 4 + C3 \times 2 + C1$$

where C0, C1, and C3 are the remaining status bits.

The FPREM1 instruction reduces operands for the transcendental functions of the 80387 to legal values. For example, the operand to F2XM1 must be $-1 \leq ST \leq 1$. FPREM1 always produces an exact result, and the precision control and rounding control bits are ignored during execution.

The FPREM1 instruction produces the IEEE-754 standard partial remainder value, which may be different from FPREM when there are two integers equally close to ST + ST(1). FPREM always rounds toward 0, and FPREM1 always chooses the even value.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	X	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	6.0	ST	2.0
ST (1)	4.0	ST (1)	4.0

FPTAN

8087/80287/80387

Partial Tangent**Legal Form**FPTAN ; ST \leftarrow tan(ST); push(1.0);**Description**

This instruction computes the tangent of the top of stack and arranges the NDP stack such that:

$$\frac{\text{ST}(1)}{\text{ST}} = \tan(\text{original ST})$$

The denominator is always 1.0 after the FPTAN instruction.

The operand value must be a positive number that is expressed in radians less than $\text{PI} \times 2^{62}$, or no operation takes place and the C2 condition code bit is set to 1. If the input operand is legal, C2 is cleared to 0.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	-	-	X	X

Example

Before		After	
ST		ST	
ST (1)	0.78539...	ST (1)	1.0
	6.2	ST (2)	1.0
			6.2

FPTAN

FRNDINT

8087/80287/80387

Round to Integer**Legal Form**FRNDINT ; ST \leftarrow int(ST)**Description**

This instruction rounds the value at the top of stack to an integer based on the settings of the round control (RC) field in the control word. See Chapter 2 for a discussion of the 80387 rounding modes.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	-	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	1.06	ST	1.0
ST (1)	60.1	ST (1)	60.1

FRNDINT

FRSTOR

8087/80287/80387

Restore NDP State

Legal FormFRSTOR *memp* ; NDP \leftarrow *memp***Description**

This instruction loads the entire 80387 processor state from the 108-byte block of data beginning at *memp*. Use the FSAVE instruction to store the NDP state. Figure 8-2 shows the format of the state block.

	15	0	Byte offset
Environment portion	Control word		0
	Status word		2
	Tag word		4
	Instruction pointer _{0..15}		6
	IP _{16..19}		8
	Operand pointer _{0..15}		10
	OP _{16..19}		12
31			
Register portion	ST(0) _{0..31}		14
	ST(0) _{32..63}		18
	ST(1) _{0..15}	ST(0) _{64..79}	22
	ST(1) _{16..47}		26
	ST(1) _{48..79}		30
	ST(2) _{0..31}		34
	ST(2) _{32..63}		38
	ST(3) _{0..15}	ST(2) _{64..79}	42
	ST(3) _{16..47}		46
	ST(3) _{48..79}		50
	ST(4) _{0..31}		54
	ST(4) _{32..63}		58
	ST(5) _{0..15}	ST(4) _{64..79}	62
	ST(5) _{16..47}		66
	ST(5) _{48..79}		70
	ST(6) _{0..31}		74
	ST(6) _{32..63}		78
	ST(7) _{0..15}	ST(6) _{64..79}	82
	ST(7) _{16..47}		86
	ST(7) _{48..79}		90

16-bit format (real & V86 modes)

Figure 8-2. 80387 machine state.

(continued)

FIGURE 8-2. *continued*

	31	16 15	0	Byte offset
Environment portion	Reserved	Control word		0
	Reserved	Status word		4
	Reserved	Tag word		8
		Error offset (EIP)		12
	Reserved	Error selector (CS)		16
		Data operand offset		20
	Reserved	Data selector		24
Register portion		ST(0) _{0..31}		28
		ST(0) _{32..63}		32
	ST(1) _{0..15}	ST(0) _{64..79}		36
		ST(1) _{16..47}		40
		ST(1) _{48..79}		44
		ST(2) _{0..31}		48
		ST(2) _{32..63}		52
	ST(3) _{0..15}	ST(2) _{64..79}		56
		ST(3) _{16..47}		60
		ST(3) _{48..79}		64
		ST(4) _{0..31}		68
		ST(4) _{32..63}		72
	ST(5) _{0..15}	ST(4) _{64..79}		76
		ST(5) _{16..47}		80
		ST(5) _{48..79}		84
		ST(6) _{0..31}		88
		ST(6) _{32..63}		92
	ST(7) _{0..15}	ST(6) _{64..79}		96
		ST(7) _{16..47}		100
		ST(7) _{48..79}		104

32-bit format

New unmasked exceptions might be triggered because a new status word and control word are loaded.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	X	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FSAVE

8087/80287/80387

Save NDP State

Legal Forms

```
FSAVE    memp    ; memp ← NDP
FNSAVE   memp    ; memp ← NDP
```

Description

This instruction stores the complete processor state of the 80387 in memory beginning at location *memp*. Figure 8-3 shows the format of the state block.

	15	0	Byte offset
Environment portion	Control word		0
	Status word		2
	Tag word		4
	Instruction pointer _{0..15}		6
	IP _{16..19}		8
	Operand pointer _{0..15}		10
	OP _{16..19}		12
31			
Register portion	ST(0) _{0..31}		14
	ST(0) _{32..63}		18
	ST(1) _{0..15}	ST(0) _{64..79}	22
	ST(1) _{16..47}		26
	ST(1) _{48..79}		30
	ST(2) _{0..31}		34
	ST(2) _{32..63}		38
	ST(3) _{0..15}	ST(2) _{64..79}	42
	ST(3) _{16..47}		46
	ST(3) _{48..79}		50
	ST(4) _{0..31}		54
	ST(4) _{32..63}		58
	ST(5) _{0..15}	ST(4) _{64..79}	62
	ST(5) _{16..47}		66
	ST(5) _{48..79}		70
	ST(6) _{0..31}		74
	ST(6) _{32..63}		78
	ST(7) _{0..15}	ST(6) _{64..79}	82
	ST(7) _{16..47}		86
	ST(7) _{48..79}		90

16-bit format (real & V86 modes)

Figure 8-3. 80387 machine state.

(continued)

Figure 8-3. *continued*

	31	16 15	0	Byte offset
Environment portion	Reserved	Control word		0
	Reserved	Status word		4
	Reserved	Tag word		8
		Error offset (EIP)		12
	Reserved	Error selector (CS)		16
		Data operand offset		20
	Reserved	Data selector		24
		ST(0) _{0..31}		28
Register portion		ST(0) _{32..63}		32
	ST(1) _{0..15}	ST(0) _{64..79}		36
		ST(1) _{16..47}		40
		ST(1) _{48..79}		44
		ST(2) _{0..31}		48
		ST(2) _{32..63}		52
	ST(3) _{0..15}	ST(2) _{64..79}		56
		ST(3) _{16..47}		60
		ST(3) _{48..79}		64
		ST(4) _{0..31}		68
		ST(4) _{32..63}		72
	ST(5) _{0..15}	ST(4) _{64..79}		76
		ST(5) _{16..47}		80
		ST(5) _{48..79}		84
		ST(6) _{0..31}		88
32-bit format		ST(6) _{32..63}		92
	ST(7) _{0..15}	ST(6) _{64..79}		96
		ST(7) _{16..47}		100
		ST(7) _{48..79}		104

32-bit format

After the FSAVE is completed, the NDP state is set to the initialized state, as if an FNINIT instruction had been executed.

The FSAVE form of the instruction tests for any unmasked exceptions before executing the save, while FSAVE does not. If you use FSAVE, pending exceptions are reinstated when the state block is loaded by an FRSTOR instruction. FSAVE is not executed until previous floating-point instructions complete.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FSCALE

8087/80287/80387

Scale by 2^n **Legal Form**FSCALE ; ST \leftarrow ST * $2^{\text{int(ST(1))}}$ **Description**

This instruction scales the top of stack value by the power of 2 in ST(1). If the value in ST(1) is not an integer, it is "chopped" before being used as an exponent. Chopping generates the nearest integer smaller than the original value.

The 80387 does not perform a multiply operation, but it uses the identity $(x \times 2^n) (1.0 \times 2^m) = x \times 2^{n+m}$ and adds the integral portion of ST(1) to the exponent of ST.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before

ST	1.0
ST (1)	3.01
ST (2)	92.6

After

ST	8.0
ST (1)	3.01
ST (2)	92.6

FSCALE

FSETPM

80287/80387

Set Protected Mode

Legal Form

FSETPM

Description

This instruction performs no operation on the 80387. It is required on the 80287 to signal that the CPU is entering protected mode and is supported for compatibility only.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FSIN

80387

Sine

Legal FormFSIN ; ST $\leftarrow \sin(ST)$;**Description**

This instruction computes the sine of the top of stack and stores the result in ST. The value in ST is assumed to be in radians.

The input operand to FSIN must be a value such that $|ST| < 2^{63}$, or no operation takes place and the C2 condition code is set to 1. If the operand is a legal value, C2 is cleared to 0.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST	3.14159...	0.0
ST (1)	88.6	88.6

FSIN

FSINCOS

80387

Sine and Cosine**Legal Form**

```
FSINCOS      ; temp ← ST; ST ← sin(temp)
              ; push(cos(temp))
```

Description

This instruction computes both the sine and cosine of the top of stack, although the values might be less precise than those generated by FSIN and FCOS. The value in ST is assumed to be in radians.

The input operand to FSINCOS must be a value such that $|ST| < 2^{63}$ or no operation takes place and the C2 condition code is set to 1. If the operand is a legal value, C2 is cleared to 0, the top of stack is the cosine value, and ST(1) contains the sine.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	-	-	X	X

Example

Before		After	
ST	3.14159...	ST	-1.0
ST (1)	88.6	ST (1)	0.0
		ST (2)	88.6

FSINCOS

FSQRT

8087/80287/80387

Square Root**Legal Form**FSQRT ; ST \leftarrow sqrt(ST)**Description**

This instruction replaces the top of stack with the square root of the original value. Taking the square root of a negative value results in an invalid operation, except that the square root of negative zero (-0.0) is defined as -0.0 . The square root of infinity (positive) is defined to be infinity.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	2.0	ST	1.4142...
ST (1)	21.3	ST (1)	21.3

FSQRT

FST

8087/80287/80387

Store Floating Point**Legal Forms**

FST	mem32	; mem32 \leftarrow ST
FST	mem64	; mem64 \leftarrow ST
FST	ST(n)	; ST(n) \leftarrow ST
FSTP	mem32	; mem32 \leftarrow ST; pop();
FSTP	mem64	; mem64 \leftarrow ST; pop();
FSTP	mem80	; mem80 \leftarrow ST; pop();
FSTP	ST(n)	; ST(n) \leftarrow ST; pop();

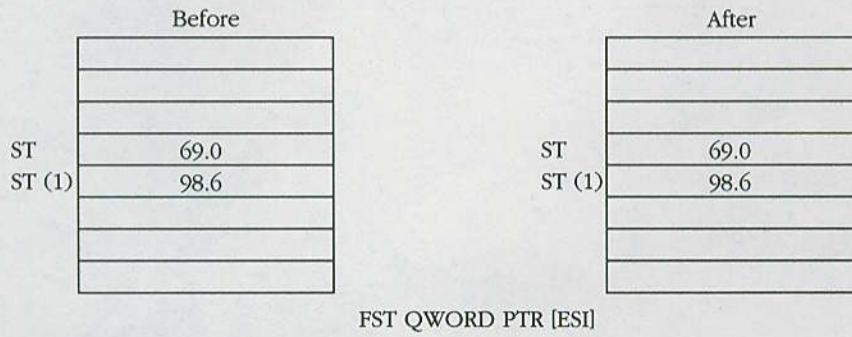
Description

This instruction stores the top of stack in the designated destination. If the opcode is FSTP, the stack top is popped (discarded) after the store operation. If the destination is a 32-bit or 64-bit real memory operand, the top of stack is rounded according to the rounding control (RC) bits of the control word.

Note that the FSTP form of this instruction can store a temp real (80-bit) value, while the FST form cannot.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
x	x	x	x	-	x	x

Example

Memory pointer is long real 69.0.

FSTCW

8087/80287/80387

Store Control Word

Legal Forms

```
FSTCW    mem16    ; mem16 ← CW
FNSTCW   mem16    ; mem16 ← CW
```

Description

This instruction stores the contents of the control word (CW) register in memory. The FSTCW form of the instruction checks for unmasked exceptions before the control word is stored, while FNSTCW does not.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FSTENV

8087/80287/80387

Store Environment

Legal Forms

```
FSTENV  memp      memp ← env(NDP)
FNSTENV memp      memp ← env(NDP)
```

Description

This instruction stores the contents of the 80387 environment registers (CW, SW, TW, and error pointers) in memory beginning at *memp*. Figure 8-4 outlines the format of the 28-byte environment block.

31	16 15	0 Byte offset
Reserved	Control word	0
Reserved	Status word	4
Reserved	Tag word	8
	Error offset (EIP)	12
Reserved	Error selector (CS)	16
	Data operand offset	20
Reserved	Data selector	24

32-bit format

15	0 Byte offset
Control word	0
Status word	2
Tag word	4
Instruction pointer _{0..15}	6
IP _{16..19}	8
Operand pointer _{0..15}	10
OP _{16..19}	12

16-bit format

Figure 8-4. 80387 environment.

The FSTENV form of the instruction checks for unmasked exceptions before the environment is stored, while FNSTENV does not. If unmasked exceptions are pending before FNSTENV is executed, they are reactivated if the environment block is loaded with FLDENV.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
-	-	-	-	-	-	-

FSTSW

Store Status Word

8087/80287/80387

Legal Forms

FSTSW	AX	AX ← SW
FSTSW	mem16	mem16 ← SW
FNSTSW	AX	AX ← SW
FNSTSW	mem16	mem16 ← SW

Description

This instruction stores the contents of the 80387 status word in memory or in the AX register of the 80386. The FSTSW form of the instruction checks for unmasked exceptions before the control word is stored, while FNSTSW does not.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FSUB**8087/80287/80387****Subtraction****Legal Forms**

FSUB		; ST(1) ← ST - ST(1); pop();
FSUB	mem32	; ST ← ST - mem32
FSUB	mem64	; ST ← ST - mem64
FSUB	ST(n)	; ST ← ST - ST(n)
FSUB	ST, ST(n)	; ST ← ST - ST(n)
FSUB	ST(n), ST	; ST(n) ← ST(n) - ST
FSUBP	ST, ST(n)	; ST ← ST - ST(n); pop();
FSUBP	ST(n), ST	; ST(n) ← ST(n) - ST; pop();

Description

This instruction subtracts the specified operands and stores the result on the 80387 stack as shown above. Optionally, the top of stack is also popped.

If you specify a 32-bit or 64-bit real memory operand, it is converted to temp real format before it is subtracted from ST.

If any real value is subtracted from infinity or infinity is subtracted from any real value, the result is infinity. Subtracting two infinities of the same sign is an invalid operation.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	X	-	X	X

Examples

Before		After	
ST	9.81	ST	3.51
ST (1)	6.3	ST (1)	72.0
ST (2)	72.0		

FSUB

Before		After	
ST	9.81	ST	7.61
ST (1)	6.3	ST (1)	6.3
ST (2)	72.0	ST (2)	72.0

FSUB DWORD PTR [ESI+4]

Memory pointer is short real 2.2.

FSUBR

8087/80287/80387

Subtraction Reversed**Legal Forms**

FSUBR		: ST(1) \leftarrow ST(1) - ST; pop();
FSUBR	mem32	: ST \leftarrow mem32 - ST
FSUBR	mem64	: ST \leftarrow mem64 - ST
FSUBR	ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST(n) - ST
FSUBR	ST, ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST(n) - ST
FSUBR	ST(n), ST	: ST(n) \leftarrow ST - ST(n)
FSUBRP	ST, ST(n)	: ST \leftarrow ST(n) - ST; pop();
FSUBRP	ST(n), ST	: ST(n) \leftarrow ST - ST(n); pop();

Description

This instruction subtracts the specified operands and stores the result on the 80387 stack as shown above. This instruction is equivalent to FSUB except that the subtrahend and minuend are exchanged. Optionally, the top of stack is also popped.

If you specify a 32-bit or 64-bit real memory operand, it is converted to temp real format before it is subtracted from ST.

If any real value is subtracted from infinity or infinity is subtracted from any real value, the result is infinity. Subtracting two infinities of the same sign is an invalid operation.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Examples

Before		After	
ST	9.81		
ST (1)	6.3		-3.51
ST (2)	72.0		72.0

FSUBR

Before		After
ST	9.81	ST
ST (1)	6.3	ST (1)
ST (2)	72.0	ST (2)

FSUB DWORD PTR [ESI+4]

Memory pointer is short real 2.2.

FTST

8087/80287/80387

Test for Zero**Legal Form**

FTST ; compare (ST, 0.0)

Description

This instruction compares the top of stack with 0.0 and sets the 80387 condition codes according to the results of the comparison.

The following table shows the condition code settings that result from the comparison function. FTST considers +0.0 and -0.0 to be equal.

Condition	C3	C2	C1	C0
ST > 0.0	0	0	-	0
ST < 0.0	0	0	-	1
ST = 0.0	1	0	-	0
ST is a NaN	1	1	-	1

The 80387 condition codes are arranged in the status word so that C3, C2, and C0 map into the same bit positions as the ZF, PF, and CF bits of the 80386 EFLAGS register. Thus, issuing the following instructions sets the 80386 flags as if the comparison had been performed on the 80386:

FTST	;	Floating-point compare
FSTSW AX	;	Store status word to AX
SAHF	;	Store AH into flags

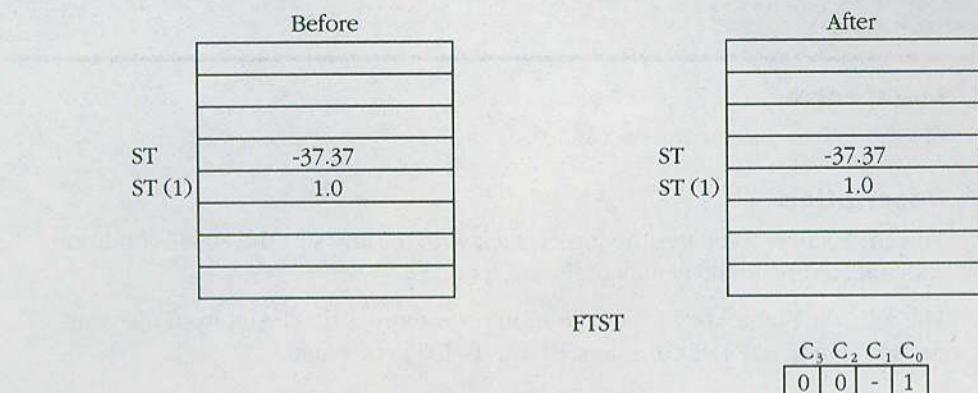
You can then use any conditional jump instruction (JE, JNE, JA, JAE, JB, or JBE) to branch on the result of the comparison. Use JP to test whether ST is a NaN.

Unlike most arithmetic operations, FTST will signal the Invalid (IE) exception if ST is a quiet NaN.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	-	X	X

Example



FUCOM

80387

Unordered Compare

Legal Forms

```

FUCOM      ; compare (ST, ST(1))
FUCOM mem32 ; compare (ST, mem32)
FUCOM mem64 ; compare (ST, mem64)
FUCOM ST(n) ; compare (ST, ST(n))
FUCOMP     ; compare (ST, ST(1)); pop()
FUCOMP mem32 ; compare (ST, mem32); pop();
FUCOMP mem64 ; compare (ST, mem64); pop();
FUCOMP ST(n) ; compare (ST, ST(n)); pop();
FUCOMPP    ; compare (ST, ST(1)); pop(); pop();

```

Description

This instruction is identical to FCOM except that no exceptions are signaled if either operand in the compare function is a quiet NaN, (the comparison is unordered). FUCOM executes the function *compare* (*op1, op2*) and sets the 80387 condition code according to the results of the comparison. The 80387 stack is optionally popped once or twice.

The following table shows the condition code settings that result from the compare function. FUCOM considers +0.0 and -0.0 to be equal.

Condition	C3	C2	C1	C0
<i>op1 > op2</i>	0	0	–	0
<i>op1 < op2</i>	0	0	–	1
<i>op1 = op2</i>	1	0	–	0
unordered (NaN compared)	1	1	–	1

The 80387 condition codes are arranged in the status word so that C3, C2, and C0 map into the same bit positions as the ZF, PF, and CF bits of the 80386 EFLAGS register. Thus, the following instructions set the 80386 flags as if the comparison had been performed on the 80386:

```

FUCOM      op          ; Floating-point compare
FSTSW     AX          ; Store status word to AX
SAHF      ; Store AH into flags

```

You can then use any conditional jump instruction (JE, JNE, JA, JAE, JB, or JBE) to branch on the result of the comparison. Use JP to test for unordered comparison.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before	After
ST		
ST (1)	-6.3	7210.0
	7210.0	0.1
	0.1	

FUCOMP ST(2)

C ₃	C ₂	C ₁	C ₀
0	0	-	1

FWAIT

8087/80287/80387

Wait Until Not Busy

Legal Form

FWAIT

Description

This is the 80386 WAIT instruction, but many assemblers allow you to encode it as FWAIT because it relates to the NDP. FWAIT places the 80386 into an idle state until the BUSY\ pin is inactive. If the BUSY\ pin is inactive when the instruction is executed, no idle occurs. The BUSY\ pin on the 80387 is held active while the NDP is performing a floating-point instruction. Execute this instruction before any 80386 instruction that will use a value stored by the coprocessor.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

FXAM

8087/80287/80387

Examine Top of Stack**Legal Form**

FXAM ; CC ← examine (ST)

Description

This instruction sets the condition code bits in the 80387 status word (SW) according to the value of the top of stack. The following table indicates the settings that can arise based on different values of ST.

ST	C3	C2	C1	C0
Unsupported*	0	0	s	0
NaN	0	0	s	1
Valid (normal)	0	1	s	0
Infinity	0	1	s	1
Zero	1	0	s	0
Unused (TW = empty)	1	0	s	1
Denormal	1	1	s	0
Unused (TW = empty)	1	1	s	1

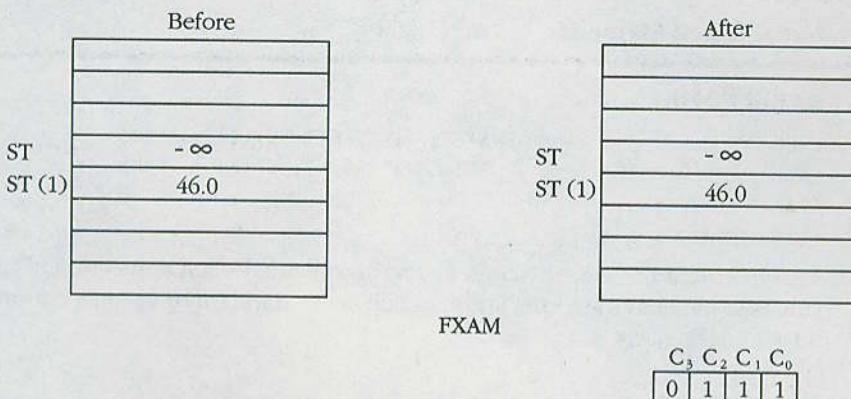
The s bit in C1 is set to the sign of the value of ST, with 0 indicating a positive value and 1 indicating a negative.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

-	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

*Unsupported values are special bit patterns that were valid for the 8087 or 80287 but are no longer supported. These include pseudo-NaN, pseudo-zero, pseudo-infinity, and unnormals.

Example

FXCH

8087/80287/80387

Exchange Stack Elements**Legal Forms**

```
FXCH      ; temp ← ST; ST ← ST(1); ST(1) ← temp
FXCH      ST(n)   ; temp ← ST; ST ← ST(n); ST(n) ← temp
```

Description

This instruction swaps the contents of the specified stack registers. This allows values to move to the top of stack, which is the standard operand location for many 80387 instructions.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	-	-	-	-	-	-
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	3.0	ST	1.0
ST (1)	2.0	ST (1)	2.0
ST (2)	1.0	ST (2)	3.0

FXCH

FXTRACT

8087/80287/80387

Extract Floating-Point Components**Legal Form**

```
FXTRACT      : temp ← ST; ST ← exponent(temp)
              : push(fraction(temp))
```

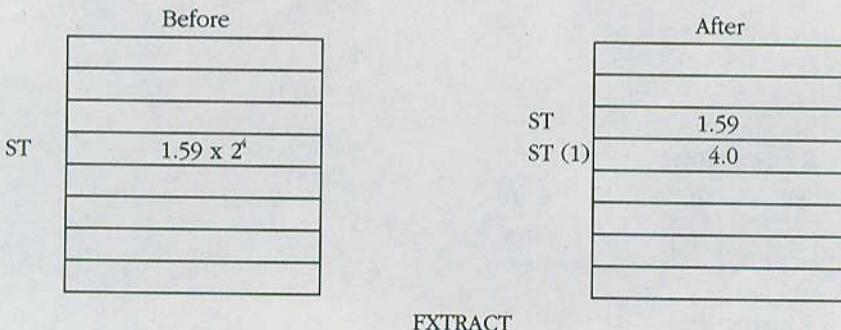
Description

This instruction breaks the top of stack into its constituent parts, the significand and the exponent. The exponent is stored as a true, unbiased value, not as just the bit pattern in the exponent field of the floating-point representation. This operation leaves the fraction or significand on the top of stack and the exponent at ST(1). The original value is destroyed.

If the original top of stack is 0, the exponent portion is set to negative infinity.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	-	-	-	X	X	X

Example

FYL2X

8087/80287/80387

Compute $Y \times \log_2 X$ **Legal Form**FYL2X ; temp $\leftarrow \log_2(\text{ST})$; pop(); ST $\leftarrow \text{ST} * \text{temp}$ **Description**

This instruction pops the top of stack, takes the base 2 logarithm, and multiplies the result by the new top of stack. Another way of expressing the function is:

$$\text{ST}(1) \times \log_2 \text{ST}$$

The initial top of stack must be a positive value, 0 through infinity. If it is not, the results of the operation are undefined.

You can also use this instruction to compute logarithms with a base other than 2, relying on the identity:

$$\log_n x = (\log_2 x) / (\log_2 n)$$

The following code fragment illustrates this computation.

FLD1	;	1.0	
FLD	n	;	n, 1.0
FYL2X		;	$\log_2 n$
FLD1		;	1.0, $\log_2 n$
FDIVP	ST(1), ST	;	$1/\log_2 n$
FLD	x	;	x, $1/\log_2 n$
FYL2X		;	$\log_2 x * 1/\log_2 n$

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	X	X	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

	Before
ST	8.0
ST (1)	0.01
ST (2)	0.333

	After
ST	0.03
ST (1)	0.333

FYL2X

FYL2XP1

8087/80287/80387

Compute $Y \times \log_2(X + 1)$

Legal Form

FYL2XP1 ; temp $\leftarrow \log_2(ST+1.0)$; pop(); ST $\leftarrow ST * temp$

Description

This instruction pops the top of stack, adds 1.0 to the value, takes the base 2 logarithm, and multiplies the result by the new top of stack. Another way of expressing the instruction is:

$$ST(1) \times \log_2 (ST + 1.0)$$

The initial top of stack must be within the range $-1 + \sqrt{2} / 2 \leq X \leq 1 - \sqrt{2} / 2$, or the result of the instruction is undefined.

This instruction is provided so that adding 1.0 to the top of stack and executing FYL2X does not result in a precision loss. Because the FYL2XP1 function is computed differently than the FYL2X instruction, a special range restriction exists. FYL2XP1 is also useful in computing the arcsinh, arccosh, and arctanh inverse hyperbolic trigonometric functions.

Exceptions

SF	PE	UE	OE	ZE	DE	IE
X	X	X	-	-	X	X

Example

Before	
ST	15.0
ST (1)	10.0
ST (2)	7.7

	After
ST	40.0
ST (1)	7.7

FYL2XP1

F2XM1

8087/80287/80387

Compute $2^x - 1$ **Legal Form**F2XM1 : ST $\leftarrow 2^{\text{ST}} - 1$ **Description**

This instruction replaces the current top of stack (ST) with the value of the function $2^{\text{ST}} - 1$. However, the initial operand value must be within the range $-0.5 \leq x \leq +0.5$ or the result of the operation is undefined.

The function $2^x - 1$, rather than the simpler 2^x , is provided on the 80387 to ensure precision when x is near 0 (for example, when computing hyperbolic trigonometric functions).

Because the range of the F2XM1 instruction is narrow, subroutines to compute 2^n must use FRNDINT and FSCALE to bring the instruction into a legal range and scale the result to a proper value.

You can compute the general function x^y by using the identity:

$$x^y = 2^y \times \log_2 x$$

and using the FYL2X and F2XM1 instructions.

Exceptions

SF PE UE OE ZE DE IE

X	X	X	-	-	X	X
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Example

Before		After	
ST	0.01	ST	0.0069
ST (1)	3.0	ST (1)	3.0

F2XM1

APPENDIXES

Appendix A

POWERS OF TWO

<i>Exponent</i>	<i>Decimal Value</i>	<i>Hex Value</i>
0	1	1
1	2	2
2	4	4
3	8	8
4	16	10
5	32	20
6	64	40
7	128	80
8	256	100
9	512	200
10	1024	400
11	2048	800
12	4096	1000
13	8192	2000
14	16384	4000
15	32768	8000
16	65536	10000
.	.	.
20	1048576	100000
.	.	.
32	4294967296	100000000

Appendix B

ASCII

CHARACTER

SET

<i>Low-Order Bits</i>	<i>High-Order Bits</i>							
	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111
0000	NUL	DLE	space	0	@	P	`	p
0001	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
0010	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r
0011	ETX	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
0100	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
0101	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u
0110	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v
0111	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w
1000	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
1001	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
1010	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
1011	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	k	[
1100	FF	FS	,	<	L	\	l	\
1101	CR	GS	-	=	M	]	m	}
1110	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~
1111	SI	US	/	?	O	-	o	RUB

Appendix C

OPCODE

TABLE*

The following opcode tables aid in interpreting 80386 object code. Use the high-order 4 bits of the opcode as an index to a row of the opcode table; use the low-order 4 bits as an index to a column of the table. If the opcode is 0FH, refer to the 2-byte opcode table, and use the second byte of the opcode to index the rows and columns of that table.

Key to Abbreviations

Operands are identified by a two-character code of the form Zz. The first character, an uppercase letter, specifies the addressing method; the second character, a lowercase letter, specifies the type of operand.

Codes for Addressing Method

A: Direct address. The instruction has no mod r/m byte; the address of the operand is encoded in the instruction; no base register, index register, or scaling factor can be applied—for example, far JMP (EA).

C: The reg field of the mod r/m byte selects a control register, for example, MOV (0FH 20H, 0FH 22H).

D: The reg field of the mod r/m byte selects a debug register, for example, MOV (0FH 21H, 0FH 23H).

E: A mod r/m byte follows the opcode and specifies the operand. The operand is either a general register or a memory address. If it is a memory address, the address is computed from a segment register and any of the following values: a base register, an index register, a scaling factor, or a displacement.

* Adapted and reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1986.

F: Flags register.

G: The reg field of the mod r/m byte selects a general register—for example, ADD (00H).

I: Immediate data. The value of the operand is encoded in subsequent bytes of the instruction.

J: The instruction contains a relative offset to be added to the instruction pointer register—for example, JMP short, LOOP.

M: The mode r/m byte may refer only to memory—for example, BOUND, LES, LDS, LSS, LFS, LGS.

O: The instruction has no mod r/m byte; the offset of the operand is coded as a word or doubleword (depending on address size attribute) in the instruction. No base register, index register, or scaling factor can be applied—for example, MOV (A0H-A3H).

R: The mod field of the mod r/m byte may refer only to a general register—for example, MOV (0FH 20H, 0FH 26H).

S: The reg field of the mod r/m byte selects a segment register—for example, MOV (8CH, 8EH).

T: The reg field of the mod r/m byte selects a test register—for example, MOV (0FH 24H).

X: Memory addressed by DS:SI—for example, MOVS, COMPS, OUTS, LODS, SCAS.

Y: Memory addressed by ES:DI—for example, MOVS, CMPS, INS, STOS.

Codes for Operand Type

a: Two single-word operands in memory or two double-word operands in memory, depending on operand size attribute (used only by BOUND).

b: Byte (regardless of operand size attribute).

c: Byte or word, depending on operand size attribute.

d: Doubleword (regardless of operand size attribute).

p: 32-bit or 48-bit pointer, depending on operand size attribute.

s: 6-byte pseudodescriptor.

v: Word or doubleword, depending on operand size attribute.

w: Word (regardless of operand size attribute).

Register Codes

When an operand is a register encoded in the opcode, the register is identified by its name, for example, AX, CL, or ESI. The name of the register indicates whether the register is 32 bits, 16 bits, or 8 bits. A register identifier of the form eXX is used when the width of the register depends on the operand size attribute; for example, eAX indicates that the AX register is used when the operand size attribute is 16 and that the EAX register is used when the operand size attribute is 32.

One-Byte Opcode Table

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	ADD Eb,Gb	ADD Ev,Gv	ADD Gb,Eb	ADD Gv,Ev	ADD AL,lb	ADD eAX,lv	PUSH ES	POP ES
1	ADC Eb,Gb	ADC Ev,Gv	ADC Gb,Eb	ADC Gv,Ev	ADC AL,lb	ADC eAX,lv	PUSH SS	POP SS
2	AND Eb,Gb	AND Ev,Gv	AND Gb,Eb	AND Gv,Ev	AND AL,lb	AND eAX,lv	ES:	DAA
3	XOR Eb,Gb	XOR Ev,Gv	XOR Gb,Eb	XOR Gv,Ev	XOR AL,lb	XOR eAX,lv	SS:	AAA
4	INC eAX	INC eCX	INC eDX	INC eBX	INC eSP	INC eBP	INC eSI	INC eDI
5	PUSH eAX	PUSH eCX	PUSH eDX	PUSH eBX	PUSH eSP	PUSH eBP	PUSH eSI	PUSH eDI
6	PUSHAD	POPAD	BOUND Gv,Ma	ARPL Ew,Rw	FS:	GS:	OPSIZE:	ADRSIZE:
7	JO Jb	JNO Jb	JB Jb	JNB Jb	JZ Jb	JNZ Jb	JBE Jb	JNBE Jb
8	Group 1 Eb,lb	Group 1 Ev,lv		Group 1 Ev,lb	TEST Eb,Gb	TEST Ev,Gv	XCHG Ev,Gb	XCHG Ev,Gv
9	NOP	XCHG eCX,eAX	XCHG eDX,eAX	XCHG eBX,eAX	XCHG eSP,eAX	XCHG eBP,eAX	XCHG ESI,eAX	XCHG eDI,eAX
A	MOV AL,Ob	MOV eAX,Ov	MOV Ob,AL	MOV Ov,eAX	MOVSB	MOVSW/D	CMPSB	CMPSW/D
B	MOV AL,lb	MOV CL,lb	MOV DL,lb	MOV BL,lb	MOV AH,lb	MOV CH,lb	MOV DH,lb	MOV BH,lb
C	Group 2 Eb,lb	Group 2 Ev,lb	RET(near) lw	RET(near)	LES Gv,mp	LDS Gv,mp	MOV Eb,lb	MOV Ev,lv
D	Group 2 Eb,1	Group 2 Ev,1	Group 2 Eb,CL	Group 2 Ev,CL	AAM	AAD		XLAT
E	LOOPNE Jb	LOOPE Jb	LOOP Jb	JCXZ Jb	IN Al,lb	IN eAX,lb	OUT Ib,AL	OUT eAX
F	LOCK		REPNE	REP REPE	HLT	CMC	Group 3 EB	Group 3 Ev

NOTE: ALL numbers are in hex.

(continued)

One-Byte Opcode Table (continued)

	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	OR Eb,Gb	OR Ev,Gv	OR Gb,Eb	OR Gv,Ev	OR AL,Ib	OR eAX,Iv	PUSH CS	2-byte escape
1	SBB Eb,Gb	SBB Ev,Gv	SBB Gb,Eb	SBB Gv,Ev	SBB AL,Ib	SBB eAX,Iv	PUSH DS	POP DS
2	SUB Eb,Gb	SUB Ev,Gv	SUB Gb,Eb	SUB Gv,Ev	SUB AL,Ib	SUB eAX,Iv	CS:	DAS
3	CMP Eb,Gb	CMP Ev,Gv	CMP Gb,Eb	CMP Gv,Ev	CMP AL,Ib	CMP eAX,Iv	DS:	AAS
4	DEC eAX	DEC eCX	DEC eDX	DEC eBX	DEC eSP	DEC eBP	DEC eSI	DEC eDI
5	POP eAX	POP eCX	POP eDX	POP eBX	POP eSP	POP eBP	POP eSI	POP eDI
6	PUSH Iv	IMUL Gv,Ev,Iv	PUSH Ib	IMUL Gv,Ev,Ib	INSB Yb,Dx	INSW/D Yv,Dx	OUTSB DX,Xb	OUTSW/D DX,Xv
7	JS Jb	JNS Jb	JP Jb	JNP Jb	JL Jb	JNL Jb	JLE Jb	JNLE Jb
8	MOV Eb,Gb	MOV Ev,Gv	MOV Gb,Eb	MOV Gv,Ev	MOV Ew,Sw	LEA Gv,M	MOV Sw,Ew	POP Ev
9	CBW	CWD	CALL Ap	WAIT	PUSHF Fv	POPF Fv	SAHF	LAHF
A	TEST AL,Ib	TEST eAX,Iv	STOSB	STOSW/D	LODSB	LODSW/D	SCASB	SCASW/D
B	MOV eAX,Iv	MOV eCX,Iv	MOV eDX,Iv	MOV eBX,Iv	MOV eSP,Iv	MOV eBP,Iv	MOV eSI,Iv	MOV eDI,Iv
C	ENTER Iw,Ib	LEAVE	RET far Iw		INT 3	INT Ib	INTO	IRET
D	ESC 0	ESC 1	ESC 2	ESC 3	ESC 4	ESC 5	ESC 6	ESC 7
E	CALL Av	JMP Jv	JMP Ap	JMP Jb	IN AL,Dx	IN eAX,Dx	OUT DX,AL	OUT DX,eAX
F	CLC	STC	CLI	STI	CLD	STD	Group 4	Group 5

Two-Byte Opcode Table (first byte is 0FH)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	Group 6	Group 7	LAR Gv,Ew	LSL Gv,Ew			CLTS	
1								
2	MOV Cd,Rd	MOV Dd,Rd	MOV Rd,Cd	MOV Rd,Dd	MOV Td,Rd		MOV Rd,Td	
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8	JO Jv	JNO Jv	JB Jv	JNB Jv	JZ Jv	JNZ Jv	JBE Jv	JNBE Jv
9	SETO Eb	SETNO Eb	SETB Eb	SETNB Eb	SETZ Eb	SETNZ Eb	SETBE Eb	SETNBE Eb
A	PUSH FS	POP FS		BT Ev,Gv	SHLD Ev,Gv,lb	SHLD Ev,Gv,cl		
B			LSS Mp	BTR Ev,Gv	LFS Mp	LGS Mp	MOVZX Gv,Eb	MOVZX Gv,Ew
C								
D								
E								
F								

Two-Byte Opcode Table (continued)

	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0								
1								
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8	JS Jv	JNS Jv	JP Jv	JNP Jv	JL Jv	JNL Jv	JLE Jv	JNLE Jv
9	SETS Eb	SETNS Eb	SETP Eb	SETNP Eb	SETL Eb	SETNL Eb	SETLE Eb	SETNLE Eb
A	PUSH GS	POP GS		BTS Ev,Gv	SHRD Ev,Gv,Ib	SHRD Ev,Gv,CL		IMUL Gv,Ev
B			Group 8 Ev,Ib	BTC Ev,Gv	BSF Gv,Ev	BSR Gv,Ev	MOVSX Gv,Eb	MOVSX Gv,Ew
C								
D								
E								
F								

Opcodes Determined by Bits 5, 4, and 3 of mod r/m Byte: mod nnn r/m

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111	
G R O U P	1	ADD	OR	ADC	SBB	AND	SUB	XOR	CMP
	2	ROL	ROR	RCL	RCR	SHL	SHR		SAR
	3	TEST Ib/Iv		NOT	NEG	MUL AL/eAX	IMUL AL/eAX	DIV AL/eAX	IDIV AL/eAX
	4	INC Eb	DEC Eb						
	5	INC Ev	DEC Ev	CALL Ev	CALL Ep	JMP Ev	JMP Ep	PUSH Ev	
	6	SLDT EW	STR EW	LLDT EW	LTR EW	VERR EW	VERW EW		
	7	SGDT Ms	SIDT Ms	LGDT Ms	LIDT Ms	SMSW Ew		LMSW Ew	
	8					BT	BTS	BTR	BTC

80387 Extensions

The following tables show the opcode map to the 80386 instruction set for the 80387 extensions. The operand abbreviations for these tables are:

Es: Effective address, short real (32-bit)

El: Effective address, long real (64-bit)

Et: Effective address, temp real (80-bit)

Ew: Effective address, word (16-bit)

Ed: Effective address, doubleword (32-bit)

Eq: Effective address, quadword (64-bit)

Eb: Effective address, BCD (80-bit)

Ea: Effective address (no operand size)

ST(i): Stack element i

ST: Stack top

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Format:	mod	nnn			r/m			

ESC 0

nnn

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
mod=01	FADD Es	FMUL Es	FCOM Es	FCOMP Es	FSUB Es	FSUBR Es	FDIV Es	FDIVR Es
	FADD ST,ST(i)	FMUL ST,ST(i)	FCOM ST,ST(i)	FCOMP ST,ST(i)	FSUB ST,ST(i)	FSUBR ST,ST(i)	FDIV ST,ST(i)	FDIVR ST,ST(i)

i=r/m

ESC 1

nnn

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
mod=01	FLD Es		FST Es	FSTP Es	FLDENV Ea	FLDCW Ew	FSTENV Ea	FSTCW Ew
	FLD ST(0)	FXCH ST(0)	FNOP		FCHS	FLD1	F2XM1	FPREM
mod=11	FLD ST(1)	FXCH ST(1)			FABS	FLDL2T	FYL2X	FYL2XP1
	FLD ST(2)	FXCH ST(2)				FLDL2E	FPTAN	FSQRT
	FLD ST(3)	FXCH (3)				FLDPI	FPATAN	FSINCOS
	FLD ST(4)	FXCH ST(4)			FTST	FLDLG2	FXTRACT	FRNDINT
	FLD ST(5)	FXCH ST(5)			FXAM	FLDLN2	FPREMI	FSCALE
	FLD ST(6)	FXCH ST(6)				FLDZ	FDECSTP	FSIN
	FLD ST(7)	FXCH ST(7)					FINCSTP	FCOS

ESC 2

		nnn							
		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
00	mod=01	FIADD Ew	FIMUL Ew	FICOM Ew	FICOMP Ew	FISUB Ew	FISUBR Ew	FIDIV Ew	FIDIVR Ew
10									
	mod=11		FUCOMPP*						

*r/m=5

ESC 3

		nnn							
		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
00	mod=01	FILD Ew		FIST Ew	FISTP Ew	FLD Et		FSTP Et	
10									
	mod=11					Group 3a			

Group 3a: mod=11, nnn=100

r/m	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
	(FEND)	(FDISI)	FCLEX	FINIT	(FSETPM)			

ESC 4

		nnn							
		000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
00	mod=01	FADD El	FMUL El	FCOM El	FCOMP El	FSUB El	FSUBR El	FDIV El	FDIVR El
10									
	mod=11	FADD ST(i),ST	FMUL ST(i),ST	FCOM ST(i),ST	FCOMP ST(i),ST	FSUB ST(i),ST	FSUBR ST(i),ST	FDIV ST(i),ST	FDIVR ST(i),ST

i=r/m

ESC 5

nnn

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
00	FLD El		FST El	FSTP El	FRSTOR Ea		FSAVE Ea	FSTSW Ew
mod=01								
10								
mod=11	FFREE ST(i)		FST ST(i)	FSTP ST(i)	FUCOM ST(i)	FUCOMP ST(i)		

i=r/m

ESC 6

nnn

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
FIADD Ed	FIMUL Ed	FICOM Ed	FICOMP Ed	FISUB Ed	FISUBR Ed	FIDIV Ed	FIDIVR Ed	
FADDP ST(i),ST	FMULP ST(i),ST		FCOMPP*	FSUBP ST(i),ST	FSUBRP ST(i),ST	FDIVP ST(i),ST	FDIVRP ST(i),ST	

*r/m=001

ESC 7

nnn

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
FILD Ed		FIST Ed	FISTP Ed	FBLD Eb	FILD Eq	FBSTP Eb	FISTP Eq	
FSTSW* AX								

*r/m=000

Appendix D

INSTRUCTION FORMAT AND TIMING*

This appendix describes the 80386 instruction set. A table lists all instructions with instruction encoding diagrams and clock counts. Details of the instruction encoding are provided in the following sections, which describe the encoding structure and the definition of fields occurring within 80386 instructions.

80386 Instruction Encoding and Clock Count Summary

To calculate elapsed time for an instruction, multiply the instruction clock count, as listed in the table on the following page, by the processor clock period (for example, 62.5 ns for an 80386-16 operating at 16 MHz (32 MHz CLK2 signal)).

For more information on the encodings of instructions, refer to "Instruction Encoding," which explains the structure of instruction encodings and defines the encodings of instruction fields.

Instruction clock count assumptions

1. The instruction has been prefetched and decoded and is ready for execution.
2. Bus cycles do not require wait states.
3. There are no local bus HOLD requests delaying processor access to the bus.
4. No exceptions are detected during instruction execution.
5. If an effective address is calculated, it does not use two general-register components. One register scaling and displacement can be used within the clock counts

* Adapted and reprinted by permission of Intel Corporation, 1986.

shown. However, if the effective address calculation uses two general-register components, add one clock to the clock count shown.

Instruction clock count notation

1. If two clock counts are given, the smaller one refers to a register operand, and the larger one refers to a memory operand.
2. n = number of times repeated.
3. m = number of components in the next instruction executed, where any displacement counts as one component, any immediate data counts as one component, and each of the other bytes of the instruction and prefix(es) counts as one component.

To compute 80286 clock counts, add one clock to each effective address calculation that uses the base + index form of addressing. To compute 8086 clock counts, add the count from the table below according to the type of address calculation used.

EA Type	Clocks
Displacement only	6
Base or index only	5
Index + displacement	9
Base + displacement	9
Base + index	7 or 8
Base + index + displacement	11 or 12

Instruction notes for Table

The following are instruction notes for the table titled "80386 Instruction Set Clock Count Summary," which begins on page 400.

Notes a through c apply to 80386 real address mode only.

- a. This is a protected-mode instruction. Trying to execute in real mode results in exception 6 (invalid opcode).
- b. Exception 13 fault (general protection) occurs in real mode if an operand reference is made that partially or fully extends beyond the maximum CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS limit, FFFFH. Exception 12 fault (stack segment limit violation or not present) occurs in real mode if an operand reference is made that partially or fully extends beyond the maximum SS limit.
- c. This instruction may be executed in real mode where it initializes the CPU for protected mode.

Notes d through g apply to 80386 real address mode and 80386 protected virtual address mode.

- d. The 80386 uses an early-out multiply algorithm. The number of clocks depends on the position of the most significant bit in the operand (multiplier).

Clock counts are minimum to maximum. To calculate actual clocks, use the following formula:

$$\text{Actual Clock} = \text{if } m < 0 \text{ then } \max(\lceil \log_2 |m| \rceil, 3) + 6 \text{ clocks:}$$

if $m = 0$ then 9 clocks (where m is the multiplier)

- e. An exception might occur, depending on the value of the operand.
- f. LOCK is asserted, regardless of the presence or absence of the LOCK prefix.
- g. LOCK is asserted during descriptor table accesses.

Notes h through r apply to 80386 protected virtual address mode only:

- h. Exception 13 fault (general protection violation) occurs if the memory operand in CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS cannot be used due to a segment limit violation or to an access rights violation. If a stack limit is violated, an exception 12 (stack segment limit violation or not present) occurs.
- i. For segment load operations, the CPL, RPL, and DPL must agree with the privilege rules to avoid an exception 13 fault (general protection violation). The segment's descriptor must indicate "present" or exception 11 (CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS not present). If the SS register is loaded and a stack segment not present is detected, an exception 12 (stack segment limit violation or not present) occurs.
- j. All segment descriptor accesses in the GDT or LDT made by this instruction assert LOCK to maintain descriptor integrity in multiprocessor environments.
- k. JMP, CALL, INT, RET, and IRET instructions referring to another code segment cause an exception 13 (general protection violation) if an applicable privilege rule is violated.
- l. An exception 13 fault occurs if CPL is greater than 0. (0 is the most privileged level.)
- m. An exception 13 fault occurs if CPL is greater than IOPL.
- n. The IF bit of the flag register is not updated if CPL is greater than IOPL. The IOPL and VM fields of the flag register are updated only if CPL is equal to 0.
- o. The PE bit of the MSW (CR0) cannot be reset by this instruction. Use MOV into CR0 to reset the PE bit.
- p. Any violation of privilege rules as applied to the selector operand does not cause a protection exception; rather, the zero flag is cleared.
- q. If the coprocessor's memory operand violates a segment limit or segment access rights, an exception 13 fault (general protection exception) occurs before the ESC instruction executes. An exception 12 fault (stack segment limit violation or not present) occurs if the stack limit is violated by the operand's starting address.
- r. The destination of a JMP, CALL, INT, RET, or IRET must be in the defined limit of a code segment or an exception 13 fault (general protection violation) occurs.

80386 Instruction Set Clock Summary

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
General Data Transfer								
MOV = Move:								
Register to register	1000100w mod reg r/m	2/2	2/2	b	b	2/3	2/3	2/8+EA
Register/memory to register	1000101w mod reg r/m	2/4	2/4	b	b	2/5	2/5	2/9+EA
Immediate to register/memory	1100011w mod 000 r/m	immediate data	2/2	2/2	b	h	2/3	2/3
Immediate to register (short form)	1011w reg immediate data	2	2			2	2	4/10+EA
Memory to accumulator (short form)	1010000w ful1 displacement	4	4	b	h	5	5	10
Accumulator to memory (short form)	1010001w ful1 displacement	2	2	b	h	3	3	10
Register/memory to segment register	1000110 mod sreg 3r/m	2/5	18/19	b	hij	2/5	17/19	2/8+EA
Segment register to register/memory	10001100 mod sreg 3r/m	2/2	2/2	b	h	2/3	2/3	2/9+EA
MOV/SX = Move with sign extension								
Register from register/memory	00001111 1011111w mod reg r/m	3/6	3/6	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A
MOVZX = Move with zero extension								
Register from register/memory	00001111 1011011w mod reg r/m	3/6	3/6	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A
PUSH = Push:								
Register/memory	11111111 mod 110 r/m	5	5	b	h	5	5	11/16+EA
Register (short form)	01010 reg	2	2	b	h	3	3	11
Segment register (ES, CS, SS, or DS) (short form)	000 sreg 2110	2	2	b	h	3	3	10
Segment register (ES, CS, SS, DS, FS, or GS)	00001111 10 sreg 3000	2	2	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A
Immediate	011010s0 immediate data	2	2	b	h	3	3	N/A
PUSHA = Pushall	01100000	18	18	b	h	17	17	N/A
POP = Pop								
Register/memory	10001111 mod 000 r/m	5	5	b	h	5	5	8/17+EA
Register (short form)	01011 reg	4	4	b	h	5	5	8
Segment register (ES, CS, SS, or DS) (short form)	000sreg2111	7	21	b	hij	5	20	8
Segment register (ES, CS, SS, DS, FS, or GS)	00001111 10 sreg 3001	7	21	b	hij	N/A	N/A	N/A

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES				80286 CLOCK COUNT			
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
General Data Transfer, continued													
POPA = Pop all	01100001												
XCHG = Exchange													
Register/memory with register	1000011W	mod reg	r/m										
Register with accumulator	10010	reg											
IN = Input from:													
Fixed port	1110010W	port number		126		6*/26**		m		5		10	
Variable port	1110010W			†27		7*/27**		m		5		8	
OUT = Output to:													
Fixed port	1110011W	port number		†24		4*/24**		m		3		10	
Variable port	1110011W			†25		5*/25**		m		3		8	
LEA = Load EA to register	10001101	mod reg	r/m		2	2				3		2+EA	
Segment Control													
LES = Load pointer to DS	11000101	mod reg	r/m		7	22	b			h,ij	7	21	16+EA
LES = Load pointer to ES	11000100	mod reg	r/m		7	22	b			h,ij	7	21	16+EA
LES = Load pointer to FS	00000111	10101000	mod reg	r/m	7	25	b			h,ij	N/A	N/A	N/A
LES = Load pointer to GS	00000111	10101010	mod reg	r/m	7	25	b			h,ij	N/A	N/A	N/A
LES = Load pointer to SS	00000111	10101000	mod reg	r/m	7	22	b			h,ij	N/A	N/A	N/A
Flag Control													
CLC = Clear carry flag	11111100				2	2					2	2	2
CLD = Clear direction flag	11111100				2	2					2	2	2
CLI = Clear interrupt enable flag	11111010				3	3				m	3	3	2
CLTS = Clear task switched flag	00000111	00000110			5	5	c	1		2	2	2	N/A
CMC = Complement carry flag	11110101				2	2					2	2	2
LAHF = Load AH into flag	10011111				2	2					2	2	4
POPF = Pop flags	10011101				5	5	b			h,n	5	5	8
PUSHF = Push flags	10011100				4	4	b			h	3	3	10

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		80386 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Flag Control, <i>continued</i>								
SAHF = Store AH in flags	10011110	3	3			2	2	4
STC = Set carry flag	11111001	2	2			2	2	2
STD = Set direction flag	11111001	2	2			2	2	2
STI = Set interrupt enable flag	11111011	3	3	m	m	2	2	2
Arithmetic								
ADD = Add								
Register to register	0000000dw	mod	reg	r/m	2	2	2	3
Register to memory	0000000dw	mod	reg	r/m	7	7	7	9+EA
Memory to register	0000001w	mod	reg	r/m	6	6	6	16+EA
Immediate to register/memory	100000sw	mod	000	r/m	1 immediate data	2/7	2/7	4/17+EA
Immediate to accumulator (short form)	0000010w	mod	000	r/m	immediate data	2	2	3
ADC = Add with carry								
Register to register	0001000dw	mod	reg	r/m	2	2	2	3
Register to memory	0001000dw	mod	reg	r/m	7	7	7	9+EA
Memory to register	0001001w	mod	reg	r/m	6	6	6	16+EA
Immediate to register/memory	100000sw	mod	010	r/m	1 immediate data	2/7	2/7	4/17+EA
Immediate to accumulator (short form)	0001010w	mod	010	r/m	immediate data	2	2	3
INC = Increment								
Register/memory	1111111w	mod	000	r/m	2/6	b	h	2/7
Register (short form)	01000	reg			2	2	2	2
SUB = Subtract								
Register from register	001010dw	mod	reg	r/m	2	2	2	3
Register from memory	0010100w	mod	reg	r/m	7	7	7	9+EA
Memory from register	0010101w	mod	reg	r/m	6	6	6	16+EA
Memory from register/memory	100000sw	mod	101	r/m	1 immediate data	2/7	2/7	4/17+EA
Immediate from accumulator (short form)	0010110w	mod	101	r/m	immediate data	2	2	4

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT			NOTES			80286 CLOCK COUNT		
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
<i>Arithmetic, continued</i>										
SBB = Subtract with borrow										
Register from register	0001100w mod reg r/m	2	2			2	2		3	
Register from memory	0001100w mod reg r/m	7	7	b	b	7	7	9+EA		
Memory from register	0001101w mod reg r/m	6	6	b	b	7	7	16+EA		
Immediate from register/memory	1000000sw mod 011 r/m immediate data	2/7	2/7	b	b	2/7	2/7	4/17+EA		
Immediate from accumulator (short form)	0001110w immediate data	2	2			2	2		4	
DEC = Decrement										
Register/memory	1111111w reg 001 r/m immediate data	2/6	2/6	b	b	2/7	2/7	3/15+EA		
Register (short form)	01001 reg	2	2			2	2		2	
CMP = Compare										
Register with register	0011100w mod reg r/m	2	2			2	2		3	
Memory with register	0011100w mod reg r/m	5	5	b	b	6	6	9+EA		
Register with memory	0011101w mod reg r/m	6	6	b	b	7	7	16+EA		
Immediate with register/memory	1000000sw mod 111 r/m immediate data	2/5	2/5	b	b	3/7	3/7	4/17+EA		
Immediate with accumulator (short form)	0011110w immediate data	2	2			3	3		4	
NEG = Change sign										
AAA = ASCII adjust for add	1111011w mod 011 r/m	2/6	2/6	b	b	2/7	2/7	3/16+EA		
AAS = ASCII adjust for subtract	00110111	4	4			3	3		4	
DAA = Decimal adjust for add	00111111	4	4			3	3		4	
DAS = Decimal adjust for subtract	00100111	4	4			3	3		4	
MUL = Multiply (unsigned)	00101111	4	4			3	3		4	
Accumulator with register/memory	1110111w mod 100 r/m									
Mulitplier—Byte										
—Word	9-14/12-17	b,d	d,h	13/16	13/16	70-83				
—Doubleword	9-22/12-25	b,d	d,h	21/24	21/24	118-139				
IMUL = Integer multiply (signed)	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A				
Accumulator with register/memory	1110111w mod 100 r/m									

(Continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES	80286 CLOCK COUNT				80386 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM		RM	PM	RM	PM	
Arithmetic, continued											
Multiplier—Byte		9-14/12-17	9-14/12-17	b,d	d,h	14/17	14/17	14/17	14/17	14/17	80-104
—Word		9-22/12-25	9-22/12-25	b,d	d,h	22/25	22/25	22/25	22/25	22/25	128-160
—Doubleword		9-38/12-41	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register with register/memory	00001111 10101111 mod reg r/m	9-22/12-25	9-22/12-25	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Word		9-38/12-41	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Doubleword		9-38/12-41	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register/memory with immediate to register	011010s1 mod reg r/m	9-22/12-25	9-22/12-25	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Word		9-38/12-41	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Doubleword		9-38/12-41	9-38/12-41	b,d	d,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
DIV = Divide (unsigned)	1111011w mod 110 r/m	14/17	14/17	b,e	e,h	14/17	14/17	14/17	14/17	14/17	80-86
Accumulator by register/memory		22/25	22/25	b,e	e,h	22/25	22/25	22/25	22/25	22/25	144-168
Divisor—Byte		38/41	38/41	b,e	e,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Word											
—Doubleword											
IDIV = Integer divide (signed)	1111011w mod 111 r/m	19/22	19/22	b,e	e,h	17/20	17/20	17/20	17/20	17/20	101-118
Accumulator by register/memory		27/30	27/30	b,e	e,h	25/28	25/28	25/28	25/28	25/28	165-190
Divisor—Byte		43/46	43/46	b,e	e,h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
—Word											
—Doubleword											
AAD = ASCII adjust for divide	11010101 00001010	19	19			16	16	16	16	16	60
AAM = ASCII adjust for multiply	11010100 00001010	17	17			14	14	14	14	14	83
CBW = Convert byte to word	10011000	3	3			2	2	2	2	2	2
CWD = Convert word to doubleword	10011001	2	2			2	2	2	2	2	5
Logic											
Shiftrotate instructions											
Nothrough carry (ROL, ROR, SAL, SAR, SHL, and SHR)											

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES				80286 CLOCK COUNT			
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
<i>Logic, continued</i>													
Register/memory by 1	1101000W mod TTT r/m	3/7	3/7	b	h	2/7	2/7					2/15+EA	
Register/memory by CL	1101001W mod TTT r/m	3/7	3/7	b	h	5+n/8+n	5+n/8+n					8+n/20+4n	
Register/memory by immediate count	1100000W mod TTT r/m immed 8-bit data	3/7	3/7	b	h	5+n/8+n	5+n/8+n					N/A	
Through carry (RCL and RCR)	1101000W mod TTT r/m	9/10	9/10	b	h	2/7	2/7					2/15+EA	
Register/memory by 1	1101001W mod TTT r/m	9/10	9/10	b	h	5+n/8+n	5+n/8+n					8+n/20+4n	
Register/memory by CL	1100000W mod TTT r/m immed 8-bit data	9/10	9/10	b	h	5+n/8+n	5+n/8+n					8+n/20+4n	
Register/memory by immediate count	TTT instruction	9/10	9/10	b	h	5+n/8+n	5+n/8+n					N/A	
	000 ROL												
	001 ROR												
	010 RCL												
	011 RCR												
	100 SHL/SAL												
	101 SHR												
	111 SAR												
SHLD = Shift left double													
Register/memory by immediate	00001111 10100100 mod reg r/m immed 8-bit data	3/7	3/7									N/A	
Register/memory by CL	00001111 10100101 mod reg r/m	3/7	3/7									N/A	
SHRD = Shift right double													
Register/memory by immediate	00001111 10101100 mod reg r/m immed 8-bit data	3/7	3/7									N/A	
Register/memory by CL	00001111 10101101 mod reg r/m	3/7	3/7									N/A	
AND = And													
Register to register	0010000dw mod reg r/m	2	2			2	2					3	
Register to memory	0010000W mod reg r/m	7	7	b	h	7	7					9+EA	
Memory to register	0010001w mod reg r/m	6	6	b	h	7	7					16+EA	
Immediate to register/memory	1000000W mod 100 r/m immediate data	2/7	2/7	b	h	3/7	3/7					4/17+EA	
Immediate to accumulator (short form)	0010010w immediate data	2	2			3	3					4	
TEST = And function to flags, no result													
Register/memory and register	1000010w mod reg r/m	2/5	2/5	b	h	2/6	2/6					3/9+EA	
Immediate data and register/memory	1110111W mod 000 r/m immediate data	2/5	2/5	b	h	3/6	3/6					4/17+EA	

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES				80286 CLOCK COUNT			
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
Logic, continued													
Immediate data and accumulator (short form)	1010100w immediate data	2	2					3	3				4
OR = Or													
Register to register	0000100w mod reg r/m	2	2					2	2				3
Register to memory	0000100w mod reg r/m	7	7	b		h		7	7				9+EA
Memory to register	0000101w mod reg r/m	5	6	b		h		7	7				16+EA
Immediate to register/memory	1000000w mod 001 r/m immediate data	2/7	2/7	b		h		3/7	3/7				4/17+EA
Immediate to accumulator (short form)	0000110w immediate data	2	2					3	3				4
XOR = Exclusive or													
Register to register	0011000w mod reg r/m	2	2					2	2				3
Register to memory	0011000w mod reg r/m	7	7	b		h		7	7				9+EA
Memory to register	0011001w mod reg r/m	6	6	b		h		7	7				16+EA
Immediate to register/memory	1000000w mod 110 r/m immediate data	2/7	2/7	b		h		3/7	3/7				4/17+EA
Immediate to accumulator (short form)	0011010w immediate data	2	2					3	3				4
NOT = Invert register/memory	1111011w mod 010 r/m	2/6	2/6	b		h		2/7	2/7				3/16+EA
String Manipulation													
CMPS = Compare byte/word/dword	1010011w	C1k Count											
INS = Input byte/word/dword from DX port	0110110w	Virtual											
LODS = Load byte/word/dword to AL/AX/EAX	1010110w	8086 Mode											
MOVs = Move byte/word/dword	1010010w	10	10	b		h		8	8				22
OUTs = Output byte/word/dword to DX port	0110111w	†29	15	9*/29*	b	h,m		5	5				N/A
SCAS = Scan byte/word/dword	1010111w	5	5	b		h		5	5				12
STOS = Store byte/word/dword from AL/AX/EAX	1010101w	†28	14	8*/28*	b	h,m		5	5				N/A
XLAT = Translate byte	11010111	7	7	b		h		7	7				18
		4	4	b		h		3	3				11
		5	5	h		h		5	5				11

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES	80286 CLOCK COUNT				8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM		RM	PM	RM	PM	
Repeated String Manipulation											
Repeated by count in CX or ECX											
REPNE CMPS = Compare string (find non-match)	11110011 1010011w	5+9n	5+9n	b	h	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	9+2n
REPNE CMPS = Compare string (find match)	11110010 1010011w	5+9n	5+9n	b	h	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	5+9n	9+2n
REP INS = Input string	11110010 0110110w	13+6n	7+6n* / 27+6n**	b	h,m	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	N/A
REP LODS = Load string	11110010 1010110w	5+6n	5+6n	b	h	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	9+13n
REP MOVS = Move string	11110010 1010010w	7+4n	7+4n	b	h	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	9+17n
REP OUTS = Output string	11110010 0110111w	12+5n	6+5n* / 26+5n**	b	h,m	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	5+4n	N/A
REPNE SCAS = Scan string (find non-AL/AX/EAX)	11110011 1010111w	5+8n	5+8n	b	h	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	9+15n
REPNE SCAS = Scan string (find AL/AX/EAX)	11110010 1010111w	5+8n	5+8n	b	h	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	5+8n	9+15n
REP STOS = Store string	11110010 1010101w	5+5n	5+5n	b	h	4+3n	4+3n	4+3n	4+3n	4+3n	9+10n
Bit Manipulation											
BSF = Bit scan forward	00001111 101111100 mod reg r/m	10+3n	10+3n	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BSR = Bit scan reverse	00001111 101111101 mod reg r/m	10+3n	10+3n	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BT = Bit test											
Register/memory, immediate											
BT = Bit test and complement											
Register/memory, immediate	00001111 10111010 mod 100 r/m immed 8-bit data	3/6	3/6	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register/memory, register	00001111 10100011 mod reg r/m	3/12	3/12	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BT = Bit test and reset											
Register/memory, immediate											
Register/memory, register	00001111 10111010 mod 111 r/m immed 8-bit data	6/8	6/8	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BT = Bit test and set											
Register/memory, immediate											
Register/memory, register	00001111 10110011 mod reg r/m	6/13	6/13	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BTR = Bit test and reset											
Register/memory, immediate											
Register/memory, register	00001111 10111010 mod 110 r/m immed 8-bit data	6/8	6/8	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
BTS = Bit test and set											
Register/memory, immediate											
Register/memory, register	00001111 10101011 mod reg r/m	6/13	6/13	b	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES				80286 CLOCK COUNT				8086 CLOCK COUNT	
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
Control Transfer															
CALL = Call	11101000 [full displacement]			7+m	7+m	b	r	7+m	7+m	7+m	7+m	7+m	7+m	19	
Direct within segment															
Register/memory	11111111 [mod 010 r/m]			7+m/10+m	7+m/10+m	b	h,r	7+m/10+m	7+m/10+m	16/21+m					
Indirect within segment				17+m	34+m	b	j,k,r	13+m	26+m	28					
Direct intersegment	10011010 [unsigned full offset, selector]														
Protected mode only (direct intersegment)															
Via call gate to same privilege level															
Via call gate to different privilege level (no parameters)															
Via call gate to different privilege level (x parameters)															
Via call gate to 286 task to 286 TSS															
From 286 task to 386 TSS															
From 286 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)															
From 386 task to 286 TSS															
From 386 task to 386 TSS															
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)															
Indirect intersegment	11111111 [mod 011 r/m]			22+m	38+m	b	h,j,k,r	16+m	29+m	37+EA					
Protected mode only (indirect intersegment)															
Via call gate to same privilege level															
Via call gate to different privilege level (no parameters)															
Via call gate to different privilege level (x parameters)															
From 286 task to 286 TSS															
From 286 task to 386 TSS															
From 286 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)															

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES	80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM		RM	PM	
Control Transfer, <i>continued</i>									
From 386 task to 286 TSS				278		h,j,k,r			N/A
From 386 task to 386 TSS				305		h,j,k,r			N/A
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)				221		h,j,k,r			N/A
JMP = Unconditional jump									
Short	11101001 8-bit displacement			7+m	7+m	r	7+m	7+m	15
Direct within segment	11101001 full displacement			7+m	7+m	r	7+m	7+m	15
Register/memory indirect within segment	11111111 mod 100 r/m			7+m/10+m	7+m/10+m	b	h,r	7+m/11+m	11/18EA
Direct intersegment	11101010 unsigned full offset, selector			12+m	27+m	j,k,r	11+m	23+m	15
Protected mode only (direct intersegment)					45+m				
Via call gate to same privilege level						h,j,k,r		38+m	
From 286 task to 286 TSS					274	h,j,k,r			175+m
From 286 task to 386 TSS					301	h,j,k,r			N/A
From 286 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)					218	h,j,k,r			N/A
From 386 task to 286 TSS					270	h,j,k,r			N/A
From 386 task to 386 TSS					303	h,j,k,r			N/A
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)					220	h,j,k,r			N/A
Indirect intersegment	11111111 mod 101 r/m			17+m	31+m	b	h,j,k,r	13+m	26+m
Protected mode only (indirect intersegment)									24EA
Via call gate to same privilege level									
From 286 task to 286 TSS					49+m	h,j,k,r		41+m	
From 286 task to 386 TSS					279	h,j,k,r		178+m	
From 286 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)					306	h,j,k,r		N/A	
From 386 task to 286 TSS					222	h,j,k,r		N/A	
From 386 task to 386 TSS					275	h,j,k,r		N/A	
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)					308	h,j,k,r		N/A	

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Control Transfer, <i>continued</i>								
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task (386 TSS)		224		h,j,k,r		N/A		
RET = Return from CALL:								
Within segment	11000011	10+m	10+r	b	g,h,r	11+m	11+m	8
Within segment adding immediate to SP	11000010 16-bit disp1	10+m	10+r	b	g,h,r	11+m	11+m	12
Intersegment	11001011	18+m	32+r	b	g,h,j,k,r	15+m	25+m	18
Intersegment adding immediate to SP	11001010 16-bit disp1	18+m	32+r	b	g,h,j,k,r	15+m	25+m	17
Protected mode only (RET) to: Different privilege level								
Intersegment								
Intersegment adding immediate to SP								
Conditional Jumps								
NOTE: Times are jump "taken or not taken"								
JO = jump on overflow								
8-bit displacement	01110000 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4	
Full displacement	00001111 10000000 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNO = jump on not overflow								
8-bit displacement	01110001 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4	
Full displacement	00001111 10000001 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JB/JNAE = Jump on below/not above or equal								
8-bit displacement	01110100 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4	
Full displacement	00001111 10000010 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNB/JAE = Jump on not below/above or equal								
8-bit displacement	01110011 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4	
Full displacement	00001111 10000011 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Conditional Jumps, continued								
JE/JZ = Jump on equal/zero								
8-bit displacement	01110100 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10000100 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNE/JNZ = Jump on not equal/not zero								
8-bit displacement	01110101 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10000101 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JBE/JNA = Jump on below or equal/not above								
8-bit displacement	01110110 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10000110 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNBE/JNA = Jump on not below or equal/above								
8-bit displacement	01110111 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10000111 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JS = Jump on sign								
8-bit displacement	01111000 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10001000 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNS = Jump on not sign								
8-bit displacement	01111001 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10001001 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JP/JPO = Jump on parity/parity even								
8-bit displacement	01111010 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10001011 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JNP/JPO = Jump on not parity/parity odd								
8-bit displacement	01111011 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10001011 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	
JL/JNGE = Jump on less/not greater or equal								
8-bit displacement	01111100 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	16 or 4
Full displacement	00001111 10001100 full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT	
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
Conditional Jumps, continued									
JNL/JGE = Jump on not less/greater or equal									
8-bit displacement	01111101 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	N/A
Full displacement	00001111 10001101	full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
JLE/JNG = Jump on less or equal/not greater									
8-bit displacement	01111110 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	N/A
Full displacement	00001111 10001110	full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
JNLE/JG = Jump on not less or equal/greater									
8-bit displacement	01111111 8-bit disp1	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	r	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	N/A
Full displacement	00001111 10001111	full displacement	7+m or 3	7+m or 3	r	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
JCXZ = Jump on CX zero									
JECXZ = Jump on ECX zero	11100011 8-bit disp1	9+m or 5	9+m or 5	r	r	8+m or 4	8+m or 4	8+m or 4	18 or 6
(Address size prefix differentiates JCXZ from JECXZ)						N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
LOOP = Loop CX times	11100010 8-bit disp1	11+r	11+r	r	r	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	17 or 5
LOOPZ/LOOPE = Loop with zero/equal	11100001 8-bit disp1	11+r	11+r	r	r	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	18 or 6
LOOPNZ/LOOPNE = Loop while not zero	11100000 8-bit disp1	11+r	11+r	r	r	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	8+r or 4	18 or 6
Conditional Byte Set									
NOTE: Times are register/memory.									
SETO = Setbyte on overflow									
To register/memory	00001111 10010000 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNO = Setbyte on not overflow									
To register/memory	00001111 10010001 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETB/SETNAE = Setbyte on below/not above or equal									
To register/memory	00001111 10010010 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Conditional Byte Set, continued								
SETNB = Set byte on not below/above or equal								
To register/memory	00001111 10010011 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETE/SETZ = Set byte on equal/zero	00001111 10010100 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10010101 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNE/SETNZ = Set byte on not equal/not zero	00001111 10010110 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10010111 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETBE/SETNA = Set byte on below or equal/not above	00001111 10010110 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10010111 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNB/SETA = Set byte on not below or equal/above	00001111 10010100 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011000 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETS = Set byte on sign	00001111 10011001 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011010 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNS = Set byte on not sign	00001111 10011011 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011100 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETP/SETPE = Set byte on parity/parity even	00001111 10011101 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011100 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNP/SETP0 = Set byte on not parity/parity odd	00001111 10011011 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011100 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETL/SETNGE = Set byte on less/not greater or equal	00001111 10011101 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 01111101 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
SETNL/SETGE = Set byte on not less/greater or equal	00001111 10011110 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
To register/memory	00001111 10011111 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT	
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM
Conditional Byte Set, continued							
SETNIE/SETG = set byte on not less or equal/greater							
To register/memory	00001111 10011111 mod 000 r/m	4/5	4/5	h	N/A	N/A	N/A
ENTER = Enter procedure	11001000 16-bit displacement, 8-bit level						
L=0		10	10	b	b	11	11
L=1		12	12	b	b	15	15
L>1		15+4(n-1)	15+4(n-1)	b	b	16+4(n-1)	16+4(n-1)
LEAVE = Leave procedure	11001001	4	4	b	b	5	5
Interrupt Instructions							
INT = Interrupt:							
Type specified	11001101 type	37	b	-	-	23+m	51
Type3	11001100	33	b	-	-	23+m	52
INTO = Interrupt 4 if overflow flag set	11001110						
If OF=1		35	b,e	-	-	24+m	53
If OF=0		3	b,e	-	-	3	3
Bound = Interrupt 5 if detect value Out of range	01100010 mod reg r/m					36+m	N/A
If out of range		44	b,e	e,g,h,j,k,r	-	13	13
Protected mode only (INT)		10	b,e	e,g,h,j,k,r	-	-	N/A
INT:Type specified							
Via interrupt or trap gate to same privilege level		59	g,j,k,r	-	-	40-m	
Via interrupt or trap gate to different privilege level		99	g,j,k,r	-	-	78-m	
From 286 task to 286 TSS via task gate		282	g,j,k,r	-	-	167+m	
From 286 task to 386 TSS via task gate		309	g,j,k,r	-	-	N/A	
From 286 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		226	g,j,k,r	-	-	N/A	
From 386 task to 286 TSS via task gate		284	g,j,k,r	-	-	N/A	
From 386 task to 386 TSS via task gate		311	g,j,k,r	-	-	N/A	

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Interrupt Instructions, continued								
From 386 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		228		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 286 TSS via task gate		289		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 386 TSS via task gate		316		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to privilege level 0 via trap gate or interrupt gate		119						N/A
INT: Type 3								
Via interrupt or trap gate to same privilege level		59		g _j ,k,r		40+m		
Via interrupt or trap gate to different privilege level		99		g _j ,k,r		78+m		
From 286 task to 286 TSS via task gate		278		g _j ,k,r		167+m		
From 286 task to 386 TSS via task gate		305		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 286 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		222		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to 286 TSS via task gate		280		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to 386 TSS via task gate		307		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		224		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 286 TSS via task gate		285		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 386 TSS via task gate		312		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to privilege level 0 via trap gate or interrupt gate		119						N/A
INTO:								
Via interrupt or trap gate to same privilege level		59		g _j ,k,r		40+m		
Via interrupt or trap gate to different privilege level		99		g _j ,k,r		78+m		
From 286 task to 286 TSS via task gate		280		g _j ,k,r		167+m		
From 286 task to 386 TSS via task gate		307		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 286 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		224		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to 286 TSS via task gate		282		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to 386 TSS via task gate		309		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From 386 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate		226		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 286 TSS via task gate		287		g _j ,k,r				N/A
From virtual 8086 mode to 386 TSS via task gate		314		g _j ,k,r				N/A

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES	80286 CLOCK COUNT			8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM		RM	PM	PM	
Interrupt Instructions, <i>continued</i>										
From virtual 8086 mode to privilege level 0 via trap gate or interrupt gate										
BOUND:										
Via interrupt or trap gate to same privilege level										
Via interrupt or trap gate to different privilege level										
From 286 task to 286 TSS via task gate										
From 286 task to 386 TSS via task gate										
From 286 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate										
From 386 task to 286 TSS via task gate										
From 386 task to 386 TSS via task gate										
From 386 task to virtual 8086 mode via task gate										
From virtual 8086 mode to 286 TSS via task gate										
From virtual 8086 mode to 386 TSS via task gate										
From virtual 8086 mode to privilege level 0 via trap gate or interrupt gate										
Interrupt Return										
IRET = Interrupt return	11001111									
Protected mode only (IRET)										
To same privilege level (within task)										
To different privilege level (within task)										
From 286 task to 286 TSS										
From 286 task to virtual 8086 task										
From 286 task to virtual 8086 mode (within task)										
From 386 task to 286 TSS										
From 386 task to 386 TSS										
From 386 task to virtual 8086 task										
From 386 task to virtual 8086 mode (within task)										

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT		NOTES		80286 CLOCK COUNT		8086 CLOCK COUNT
		RM	PM	RM	PM	RM	PM	
Processor Control								
HLT = Halt		5	5	1	1	2	2	2
MOV = Move to and from control/debug/test registers	11110100							
CR0/CR2/CR3 from register	00001111 00100010 11eeereg	10/4/5	10/4/5	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register from CR0-3	00001111 00100000 11eeereg	6	6	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
DR0-3 from register	00001111 00100011 11eeereg	22	22	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
DR6-7 from register	00001111 00100011 11eeereg	16	16	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register from DR6-7	00001111 00100001 11eeereg	14	14	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register from DR0-3	00001111 00100001 11eeereg	22	22	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
TR0-7 from register	00001111 00100110 11eeereg	12	12	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
Register from TR6-7	00001111 00100100 11eeereg	12	12	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
NOP = No operation	10010000	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
WAIT = Wait until BUSY\pin is negated	10011011	6	6	3	3	3	3	3
Processor Extension Instructions								
Processor extension escape	11011111 mod1LL r/m	See Pg 430.		h				
		TTT and LLL bits are opcode information for coprocessor.						
Prefix Bytes								
Address size prefix (ADRSIZ)	01100111	0	0	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A
LOCK = Bus lock prefix	11110000	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
Operand size prefix (OPSIZE)	01100110	0	0	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A
Segment override prefix								
CS:	00100110	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
DS:	00111110	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
ES:	00100110	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
FS:	01100100	0	0	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A
GS:	01100101	0	0	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A
SS:	00110110	0	0	-	-	0	0	2

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	FORMAT	CLOCK COUNT				NOTES	80286 CLOCK COUNT			
		RM	PM	RM	PM		RM	PM	RM	PM
Protection Control										
ARPL = Adjust requested privilege level from register/memory	01100011 Mod reg r/m	N/A	20/21	a	h				10/11	
LAR = Load access rights from register/memory	00001111 00000010 mod reg r/m	N/A	15/16	a	g,h,j,p				14/16	
LGDT = Load global descriptor table register	00001111 00000001 mod 010 r/m	11	11	b,c	h,l				11	
LDIDT = Load interrupt descriptor table register	00001111 00000001 mod 011 r/m	11	11	b,c	h,l				12	
LLDT = Load local descriptor table register to register/memory	00001111 00000000 mod 010 r/m	N/A	20/24	a	g,h,j,l				17/19	
LMSW = Load machine status word from register/memory	00001111 00000001 mod 110 r/m	10/13	10/13	b,c	h,l				3/6	
LSL = Load segment limit from register/memory	00001111 00000011 mod reg r/m	N/A	20/21	a	g,h,j,p				14/16	
Page-granular limit		N/A	25/26	a	g,h,j,p				N/A	
LTR = Load task register from register/memory	00000111 00000000 mod 001 r/m	N/A	23/27	a	g,h,j,l				17/19	
SGDT = Store global descriptor table register	00000111 00000001 mod 000 r/m	9	9	b,c	h				11	
SIDT = Store interrupt descriptor table register	00000111 00000001 mod 001 r/m	9	9	b,c	h				12	
SLDT = Store local descriptor table register to register/memory	00000111 00000000 mod 000 r/m	N/A	2/2	a	h				2/3	
SMSW = Store machine status word	00000111 00000001 mod 100 r/m	10/13	10/13	b,c	h,l				2/3	
STR = Store task register to register/memory	00000111 00000000 mod 001 r/m	N/A	2/2	a	h				2/3	
VERR = Verify read access register/memory	00000111 00000000 mod 100 r/m	N/A	10/11	a	g,h,j,p				14/16	
VERW = Verify write access	00000111 00000000 mod 101 r/m	N/A	15/16	a	g,h,j,p				14/16	

*If CPL ≤ IOPL

**If CPL > IOPL

†Clock count shown applies if I/O permission allows I/O to the port in virtual 8086 mode.

If I/O bitmap denies permission, exception 13 fault occurs; refer to clock counts for INT3 instruction.

Instruction Encoding

All instruction encodings are subsets of the general instruction format shown in Figure D-1. Instructions consist of one or two primary opcode bytes, possibly an address specifier consisting of the mod r/m byte and scaled index byte, a displacement if required, and an immediate data field if required.

Within the primary opcode or opcodes, smaller encoding fields can be defined. These fields vary according to the class of operation. The fields define information such as direction of the operation, size of the displacements, register encoding, and sign extension.

Almost all instructions that refer to an operand in memory have an addressing mode byte following the primary opcode byte(s). This byte, the *mod r/m* byte, specifies the address mode to be used. Certain encodings of the mod r/m byte indicate a second addressing byte, the scale-index-base byte, which fully specifies the addressing mode.

Addressing modes can include a displacement immediately following the mod r/m byte or the scaled index byte. If a displacement is present, the possible sizes are 8, 16, and 32 bits.

If the instruction specifies an immediate operand, the immediate operand follows any displacement bytes. The immediate operand is always the last field of the instruction.

Figure D-1 illustrates some of the fields that can appear in an instruction, such as the mod field and the r/m field. Several smaller fields also appear in certain instructions, sometimes within the opcode bytes. The following table is a complete list of all fields appearing in the 80386 instruction set. Detailed tables for each field appear later in this appendix.

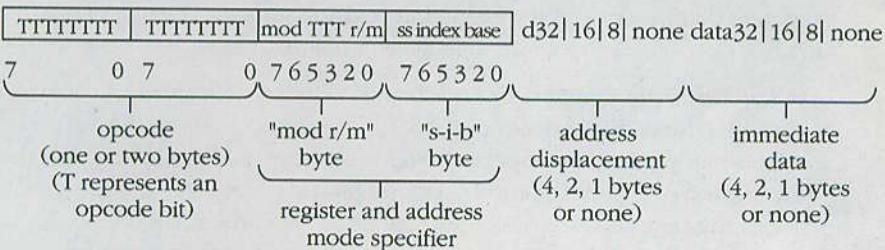


Figure D-1. General instruction format.

Fields within 80386 Instructions

Field Name	Description	Number of Bits
w	Specifies whether data is byte size or full size (full size is either 16 or 32 bits)	1
d	Specifies direction of data operation	1
s	Specifies whether an immediate data field must be sign-extended	1
reg	General register specifier	3
mod r/m	Address mode specifier (effective address can be a general register)	2 for mod; 3 for r/m
ss	Scale factor for scaled index address mode	2
index	General register to be used as index register	3
base	General register to be used as base register	3
sreg2	Segment register specifier for CS, SS, DS, ES	2
sreg3	Segment register specifier for CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, GS	3
tttn	For conditional instructions, specifies a condition asserted or a condition negated	4

NOTE: Figure D-1 shows encoding of individual instructions.

32-bit extensions of the instruction set

With the 80386, the 8086/80186/80286 instruction set is extended in two orthogonal directions: 32-bit forms of all 16-bit instructions support the 32-bit data types, and 32-bit addressing modes are available for all instructions referring to memory. This orthogonal instruction set extension is accomplished by having a default (D) bit in the code segment descriptor and by having two prefixes to the instruction set.

Whether the instruction defaults to operations of 16 bits or 32 bits depends on the setting of the D bit in the code segment descriptor. The D bit specifies the default length (either 16 bits or 32 bits) for both operands and effective addresses when executing that code segment. Real address mode and virtual 8086 mode use no code segment descriptors, but the 80386 internally assumes a D value of 0 when operating in those modes (for 16-bit default sizes compatible with the 8086/80186/80286).

Two prefixes, the operand size prefix and the effective address size prefix, allow overriding the default selection of operand size and effective address size. These prefixes can precede any opcode bytes and affect only the instruction they precede. If necessary, one or both prefixes can be placed before the opcode bytes. The presence of the operand size prefix and the effective address prefix toggles the operand size or the effective address size to the value opposite from that of the default setting. For example, if the default operand size is for 32-bit data operations, the presence of the operand size prefix toggles the instruction to 16-bit data operation. If the default effective address size is 16 bits, the presence of the effective address size prefix toggles the instruction to use 32-bit effective address computations.

These 32-bit extensions are available in all 80386 modes, including real address mode or virtual 8086 mode. In these modes the default is always 16 bits, so prefixes are needed to specify 32-bit operands or addresses.

Unless specified, instructions with 8-bit and 16-bit operands do not affect the contents of the high-order bits of the extended registers.

Encoding of instruction fields

Several fields indicate register selection, addressing mode, and so on within the instruction. The encodings of these fields are defined in the following tables.

Encoding of the operand length (w) field

For any given instruction performing a data operation, the instruction executes as a 32-bit operation or a 16-bit operation. Within the constraints of the operation size, the w field encodes the operand size as either 1 byte or the full operation size, as shown in the table below.

Operand Length Encoding

w Field	Operand Size During 16-Bit Data Operations	Operand Size During 32-Bit Data Operations
0	8 bits	8 bits
1	16 bits	32 bits

Encoding of the general register (reg) field

The general register is specified by the reg field, which can appear in the primary opcode bytes or as the reg field of the mod r/m byte, or as the r/m field of the mod r/m byte. The following tables illustrate reg field encoding.

Encoding of reg Field When w Field Is Not Present in Instruction

reg Field	Register Selected During 16-Bit Data Operations	Register Selected During 32-Bit Data Operations
000	AX	EAX
001	CX	ECX
010	DX	EDX
011	BX	EBX
100	SP	ESP
101	BP	EBP
101	SI	ESI
101	DI	EDI

Encoding of reg Field When w Field Is Present in Instruction

<i>Register Specified by reg Field During 16-Bit Data Operations</i>		
<i>reg Field</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
000	AL	AX
001	CL	CX
010	DL	DX
011	BL	BX
100	AH	SP
101	CH	BP
110	DH	SI
111	BH	DI

Encoding of reg Field When w Field Is Present in Instruction

<i>Register Specified by reg Field During 32-Bit Data Operations</i>		
<i>reg Field</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
000	AL	EAX
001	CL	ECX
010	DL	EDX
011	BL	EBX
100	AH	ESP
101	CH	EBP
110	DH	ESI
111	BH	EDI

Encoding of the segment register (sreg) field

The sreg field in certain instructions is a 2-bit field that allows one of the four 80286 segment registers to be specified. The sreg field in other instructions is a 3-bit field that allows the 80386 FS and GS segment registers to be specified. The following two tables show the selected segment registers.

2-Bit sreg2 Field

<i>2-Bit sreg2 Field</i>	<i>Segment Register Selected</i>
00	ES
01	CS
10	SS
11	DS

3-Bit sreg3 Field

3-Bit sreg3 Field	Segment Register Selected
000	ES
001	CS
010	SS
011	DS
100	FS
101	GS
110	Do not use
111	Do not use

Encoding of address mode

Except for special instructions such as PUSH and POP, where the addressing mode is predetermined, the addressing mode for the current instruction is specified by addressing bytes following the primary opcode. The primary addressing byte is the mod r/m byte, and a second byte of addressing information, the s-i-b (scale-index-base) byte, can be specified.

The s-i-b byte is specified when using 32-bit addressing mode and the mod r/m byte has r/m = 100 and mod = 00, 01, or 10. When the s-i-b byte is present, the 32-bit addressing mode is a function of the mod, ss, index, and base fields.

The primary addressing byte, the mod r/m byte, also contains 3 bits (shown as TTT in Figure D-1) sometimes used as an extension of the primary opcode. The 3 bits, however, can also be used as a register field (reg).

When calculating an effective address, either 16-bit addressing or 32-bit addressing is used. 16-bit addressing uses 16-bit address components to calculate the effective address, while 32-bit addressing uses 32-bit address components to calculate the effective address. When 16-bit addressing is used, the mod r/m byte is interpreted as a 16-bit addressing mode specifier. When 32-bit addressing is used, the mod r/m byte is interpreted as a 32-bit addressing mode specifier.

The following tables define all encodings of all 16-bit addressing modes and 32-bit addressing modes.

**Encoding of 32-Bit Address Mode with mod r/m Byte
(no s-i-b Byte Present)**

<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Effective Address</i>
00 000	DS:[EAX]
00 001	DS:[ECX]
00 010	DS:[EDX]
00 011	DS:[EBX]
00 100	s-i-b is present
00 101	DS:d32
00 110	DS:[ESI]
00 111	DS:[EDI]
01 000	DS:[EAX+d8]
01 001	DS:[ECX+d8]
01 010	DS:[EDX+d8]
01 011	DS:[EBX+d8]
01 100	s-i-b is present
01 101	SS:[EBP+d8]
01 110	DS:[ESI+d8]
01 111	DS:[EDI+d8]
10 000	DS:[EAX+d32]
10 001	DS:[ECX+d32]
10 010	DS:[EDX+d32]
10 011	DS:[EBX+d32]
10 100	s-i-b is present
10 101	SS:[EBP+d32]
10 110	DS:[ESI+d32]
10 111	DS:[EDI+d32]
11 000	register—see below
11 001	register—see below
11 010	register—see below
11 011	register—see below
11 100	register—see below
11 101	register—see below
11 110	register—see below
11 111	register—see below

Register Specified by reg or r/m During 16-Bit Data Operations

<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
11 000	AL	AX
11 001	CL	CX
11 010	DL	DX
11 011	BL	BX
11 100	AH	SP
11 101	CH	BP
11 110	DH	SI
11 111	BH	DI

**Encoding of 32-Bit Address Mode with mod r/m Byte
(no s-i-b Byte Present)**

<i>Register Specified by reg or r/m During 32-Bit Data Operations</i>		
<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
11 000	AL	EAX
11 001	CL	ECX
11 010	DL	EDX
11 011	BL	EBX
11 100	AH	ESP
11 101	CH	EBP
11 110	DH	ESI
11 111	BH	EDI

Encoding of 32-Bit Address Mode (mod r/m Byte and s-i-b Byte Present)

<i>Mod Base</i>	<i>Effective Address</i>
00 000	DS:[EAX+(scaled index)]
00 001	DS:[ECX+(scaled index)]
00 010	DS:[EDX+(scaled index)]
00 011	DS:[EBX+(scaled index)]
00 100	DS:[ESP+(scaled index)]
00 101	DS:[d32+(scaled index)]
00 110	DS:[ESI+(scaled index)]
00 111	DS:[EDI+(scaled index)]
01 000	DS:[EAX+(scaled index)+d8]
01 001	DS:[ECX+(scaled index)+d8]
01 010	DS:[EDX+(scaled index)+d8]
01 011	DS:[EBX+(scaled index)+d8]
01 100	SS:[ESP+(scaled index)+d8]
01 101	SS:[EBP+(scaled index)+d8]
01 110	DS:[ESI+(scaled index)+d8]
01 111	DS:[EDI+(scaled index)+d8]
10 000	DS:[EAX+(scaled index)+d32]
10 001	DS:[ECX+(scaled index)+d32]
10 010	DS:[EDX+(scaled index)+d32]
10 011	DS:[EBX+(scaled index)+d32]
10 100	SS:[ESP+(scaled index)+d32]
10 101	SS:[EBP+(scaled index)+d32]
10 110	DS:[ESI+(scaled index)+d32]
10 111	DS:[EDI+(scaled index)+d32]

NOTE: Mod field in mod r/m byte; ss, index, base fields in s-i-b byte.

<i>ss</i>	<i>Scale Factor</i>
00	x1
01	x2
10	x4
11	x8

<i>Index</i>	<i>Index Register</i>
000	EAX
001	ECX
010	EDX
011	EBX
100	no index reg*
101	EBP
110	ESI
111	EDI

* When index field is 100, indicating no index register, ss field must equal 00. If index is 100 and ss does not equal 00, the effective address is undefined.

Encoding of 16-bit Address Mode with mod r/m Byte

<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Effective Address</i>
00 000	DS:[BX+SI]
00 001	DS:[BX+DI]
00 010	SS:[BP+SI]
00 011	SS:[BP+DI]
00 100	DS:[SI]
00 101	DS:[DI]
00 110	DS:[d16]
00 111	DS:[BX]
01 000	DS:[BX+SI+d8]
01 001	DS:[BX+DI+d8]
01 010	SS:[BP+SI+d8]
01 011	SS:[BP+DI+d8]
01 100	DS:[SI+d8]
01 101	DS:[DI+d8]
01 110	SS:[BP+d8]
01 111	DS:[BX+d8]
10 000	DS:[BX+SI+d16]
10 001	DS:[BX+DI+d16]
10 010	SS:[BP+SI+d16]
10 011	SS:[BP+DI+d16]
10 100	DS:[SI+d16]
10 101	DS:[DI+d16]
10 110	SS:[BP+d16]
10 111	DS:[BX+d16]
11 000	register—see page 427
11 001	register—see page 427
11 010	register—see page 427
11 011	register—see page 427
11 100	register—see page 427
11 101	register—see page 427
11 110	register—see page 427
11 111	register—see page 427

Encoding of 16-bit Address Mode with mod r/m Byte

<i>Register Specified by r/m During 16-Bit Data Operations</i>		
<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
11 000	AL	AX
11 001	CL	CX
11 010	DL	DX
11 011	BL	BX
11 100	AH	SP
11 101	CH	BP
11 110	DH	SI
11 111	BH	DI

Encoding of 16-bit Address Mode with mod r/m Byte

<i>Register Specified by r/m During 32-Bit Data Operations</i>		
<i>mod r/m</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 0</i>	<i>Function of w Field When w = 1</i>
11 000	AL	EAX
11 001	CL	ECX
11 010	DL	EDX
11 011	BL	EBX
11 100	AH	ESP
11 101	CH	EBP
11 110	DH	ESI
11 111	BH	EDI

Encoding of operation direction (d) field

In many 2-operand instructions the d field indicates which operand is the source and which is the destination, as shown in the following table.

Operation Direction Encoding

<i>d</i>	<i>Direction of Operation</i>
0	Register/Memory \leftarrow Register reg field indicates source operand; mod r/m or mod ss index base indicates destination operand
1	Register \leftarrow Register/Memory reg field indicates destination operand; mod r/m or mod ss index base indicates source operand

Encoding of sign extend (s) field

The s field occurs in instructions with immediate data fields. The s field has an effect only if the size of the immediate data is 8 bits and is being placed in a 16-bit or 32-bit destination. The following table shows s field encoding.

Sign Extend Encoding

<i>s</i>	<i>Effect on Immediate Data 8</i>	<i>Effect on Immediate Data 16/32</i>
0	None	None
1	Sign extend data 8 to fill 16-bit or 32-bit destination	None

Encoding of conditional test (tttn) field

For the conditional instructions (conditional jumps and set on condition), tttn is encoded with n indicating to use the condition (n = 0) or its negation (n = 1) and ttt giving the condition to test. The following table shows encoding of the tttn field.

Conditional Test Encoding

<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Condition</i>	<i>tttn</i>
O	Overflow	0000
NO	No overflow	0001
B/NAE	Below/not above or equal	0010
NB/AE	Not below/above or equal	0011
E/Z	Equal/zero	0100
NE/NZ	Not equal/not zero	0101
BE/NA	Below or equal/not above	0110
NBE/A	Not below or equal/above	0111
S	Sign	1000
NS	Not sign	1001
P/PE	Parity/parity even	1010
NP/PO	Not parity/parity odd	1011
L/NGE	Less than/not greater or equal	1100
NL/GE	Not less than/greater or equal	1101
LE/NG	Less than or equal/greater than	1110
NLE/G	Not less or equal/greater than	1111

Encoding of control, debug, and test registers (eee) field

The eee field loads and stores the control, debug, and test registers.

Encoding of eee When Interpreted as Control Register Field

<i>eee Code</i>	<i>Reg Name</i>
000	CR0
010	CR2
011	CR3
Do not use any other encoding.	

Encoding of *eee* When Interpreted as Debug Register Field

<i>eee</i> Code	Reg Name
000	DR0
001	DR1
010	DR2
011	DR3
110	DR6
111	DR7
Do not use any other encoding.	

Encoding of *eee* When Interpreted as Test Register Field

<i>eee</i> Code	Reg Name
110	TR6
111	TR7
Do not use any other encoding.	

80387 Extensions

The table beginning on the following page shows 80387 extensions to the 80386 instruction set.

Instruction Encoding/Timing

INSTRUCTION	ENCODING			CLOCK COUNT RANGE			
	Byte 0	Byte 1	Optional Bytes 2-6	32 Bit Real	32 Bit Integer	64 Bit Real	16-Bit Integer
Data Transfer							
FLD = Load ^a							
Integer/real memory to ST(0)	ESC MF 1	MOD 000 R/M	SIB/DISP	20	45-52	25	61-65
Long integer memory to ST(0)	ESC 111	MOD 101 R/M	SIB/DISP		56-67		
Extended real memory to ST(0)	ESC 011	MOD 101 R/M	SIB/DISP		44		
BCD memory to ST(0)	ESC 111	MOD 100 R/M	SIB/DISP		266-275		
ST(i) to ST(0)	ESC 001	11000 ST(1)			14		
FST = Store							
ST(0) to integer/real memory	ESC MF 1	MOD 010 R/M	SIB/DISP	44	79-93	45	82-95
ST(0) to ST(i)	ESC 101	11010 ST(1)			11		
FSTP = Store and pop							
ST(0) to integer/real memory	ESC MF 1	MOD 011 R/M	SIB/DISP	44	79-93	45	82-95
ST(0) to long integer memory	ESC 111	MOD 111 R/M	SIB/DISP		80-97		
ST(0) to extended real	ESC 011	MOD 111 R/M	SIB/DISP		53		
ST(0) to BCD memory	ESC 111	MOD 110 R/M	SIB/DISP		512-534		
ST(0) to ST(i)	ESC 101	11001 ST(1)			12		
FXCH = Exchange							
ST(i) and ST(0)	ESC 001	11001 ST(1)			18		
Comparison							
FCOM = Compare							
Integer/real memory to ST(0)	ESC MF 0	MOD 010 R/M	SIB/DISP	26	56-63	31	71-75
ST(i) to ST(0)	ESC 000	11010 ST(1)			24		
FCOMP = Compare and pop							
Integer/real memory to ST	ESC MF 0	MOD 011 R/M	SIB/DISP	26	56-63	31	71-75
ST(i) to ST(0)	ESC 000	11011 ST(1)			26		
FCOMPP = Compare and pop twice							
ST(i) to ST(0)	ESC 110	11011001			26		
FTST = Test ST(0)	ESC 001	11100100			28		
FUCOM = Unordered compare	ESC 101	11100 ST(1)			24		
FUCOMP = Unordered compare and pop	ESC 101	11101 ST(1)			26		
FUCOMPP = Unordered compare and pop twice	ESC 010	11101001			26		
FXAM = Examine ST(0)	ESC 001	11100101		30-38	Constants		

(continued)

Instruction Encoding/Timing, *continued*

INSTRUCTION	ENCODING			CLOCK COUNT RANGE			
	Byte 0	Byte 1	Optional Bytes 2-6	32 Bit Real	32 Bit Integer	64 Bit Real	16-Bit Integer
Constants							
FLDZ = Load + 0.0 into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101110				20	
FLD1 = Load + 1.0 into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101000				24	
FLDP1 = Load pi into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101011				40	
FLDL2T = Load $\log_2(10)$ into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101001				40	
FLDL2E = Load $\log_2(e)$ into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101010				40	
FLDLG2 = Load $\log_{10}(2)$ into ST(0)	ESC 001	11101100				41	
FLDLN2 = Load $\log_e(2)$	ESC 001	11101101				41	
Arithmetic							
FADD = Add							
Integer/real memory with ST(0)	ESC MF 0	MOD 000 R/M	SIB/DISP			24-32	57-72
ST(i) and ST(0)	ESC d P 0	11000 ST(1)					29-37
							71-85
FSUB = Subtract							
Integer/real memory with ST(0)	ESC MF 0	MOD 10 R/M	SIB/DISP			24-32	57-82
ST(i) and ST(0)	ESC d P 0	1110 R R/M					26-34 ^d
							71-83 ^c
FMUL = Multiply							
Integer/real memory with ST(0)	ESC MF 0	MOD 001 R/M	SIB/DISP			27-35	61-82
ST(i) and ST(0)	ESC d P 0	11001R/M					32-57
							76-87
FDIV = Divide							
Integer/real memory with ST(0)	ESC MF 0	MOD 11R R/M	SIB/DISP			89	120-127 ^f
ST(i) and ST(0)	ESC d P 0	1111 R R/M					94
							136-140 ^g
							88 ^b
FSQRT ¹ = Square root							
FSCALE = Scale ST(0) by ST(1)	ESC 001	11111101					122-129
PPREM = Partial remainder	ESC 001	11111100					67-86
PPREM1 = Partial remainder (IEEE)	ESC 001	11110101					74-155
FRNDINT = Round ST(0) to integer	ESC 001	111111100					95-185
FXTRACT = Extract components of ST(0)	ESC 001	11110100					66-80
FABS = Absolute value of ST(0)	ESC 001	11100001					70-76
FCHS = Change sign of ST(0)	ESC 001	11100000					22
							24-25

(continued)

INSTRUCTION	ENCODING			CLOCK COUNT RANGE
	Byte 0	Byte 1	Optional Bytes 2-6	
Transcendental				
FCOS ^k = Cosine of ST(0)	ESC 001	11111111		123-772 ¹
FPTAN ^k = Partial tangent of ST(0)	ESC 001	11110010		191-497 ¹
FPATAN = Partial arctangent	ESC 001	11110011		314-487
FSIN ^k = Sine of ST(0)	ESC 001	11111110		122-771 ¹
FSINCOS ^k = Sine and cosine of ST(0)	ESC 001	11111011		194-809 ¹
F2X ^M = 2 ^{ST(0)} - 1	ESC 001	11110000		211-476
FYL2X ^M = ST(1) * log ₂ (ST(0))	ESC 001	11110001		120-538
FYL2XP ^M = ST(1) * log ₂ (ST(0) + 1.0)	ESC 001	11111001		257-547
Processor Control				
FINIT = Initialize NPX	ESC 011	11100011		33
FSTSW AX = Store status word	ESC 111	11100000		13
FLDCW = Load control word	ESC 001	MOD 101 R/M	SIB/DISP	19
FSTCW = Store control word	ESC 101	MOD 111 R/M	SIB/DISP	15
FSTSW = Store status word	ESC 101	MOD 111 R/M	SIB/DISP	15
FCLEX = Clear exceptions	ESC 011	11100010		11
FSTENV = Store environment	ESC 001	MOD 110 R/M	SIB/DISP	103-104
FLDENV = Load environment	ESC 001	MOD 100 R/M	SIB/DISP	71
FSAVE = Save state	ESC 101	MOD 110 R/M	SIB/DISP	375-376
FRSTOR = Restore state	ESC 101	MOD 100 R/M	SIB/DISP	308
FINCSTP = Increment stack pointer	ESC 001	11110111		21
FDECSTP = Decrement stack pointer	ESC 001	11110110		22
FFREE = Free ST(0)	ESC 101	1100 ST(1)		18
FNOP = No operation	ESC 001	11010000		12

Shaded areas indicate instructions that are not available in 8087/80287.

NOTES:

- When loading single-precision or double-precision 0 from memory, add 5 clocks.
- Add 3 clocks to the range when d = 1.
- Add 1 clock to each range when R = 1.
- Add 3 clocks to the range when d = 0.
- Typical = 52. (When d = 0, 46-54, typical = 49.)
- Add 1 clock to the range when R = 1.
- 135-141 when R = 1.
- Add 3 clocks to the range when d = 1.
- $-0 \leq ST(0) \leq +\infty$.
- These timings hold for operands in the range $|x| < \pi/4$. For operands not in this range, up to 76 additional clocks might be needed to reduce the operand.
- $0 \leq |ST(0)| < 2^{63}$.
- $-1.0 \leq ST(0) \leq 1.0$.
- $0 \leq ST(0) < \infty, -\infty < ST(1) < +\infty$.
- $0 \leq |ST(0)| < (2 - SQRT(2))/2, -\infty < ST(1) < +\infty$.

Appendix E

INSTRUCTION

DISASSEMBLY

TABLE

The table in this appendix allows you to decode 80386 instructions. It presents the same information as the opcode table in Appendix C but is easier to use.

The table has the following format:

[required byte(s)] [operand byte(s)] [instruction]

At least one of the required bytes is an 8-bit hexadecimal value, and additional bytes may follow. The operand bytes have one of the following forms:

ea: The source and destination operands are encoded in the standard mod reg r/m format described in Appendix D.

ea/N: The destination operand is encoded in the mod r/m portion of the ea field, and the reg bits are set to /N.

dataN: N bytes of immediate data follow the instruction.

—/n/reg: The standard mod reg r/m encoding is interpreted so that the mod bits are ignored, the reg bits specify register *n* of a group (such as CR3), and the r/m bits select a general 32-bit register.

dispN: A signed displacement (N bits in length) from the current instruction pointer (EIP) follows the instruction.

The abbreviations Ea, Eb, Ew, and Ed stand for the effective address, byte, word, and doubleword indicated by the ea bits in the instruction.

Instructions preceded by an asterisk (*) are 32-bit instructions that operate on 16-bit quantities when preceded with the OPSIZ: instruction prefix. For real mode, V86 mode, and 286-compatible code segments, the behavior is reversed; that is, the instructions operate on 16-bit operands unless preceded with the OPSIZ: prefix.

Instruction Disassembly Table

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
00 ea	ADD Eb, reg8	*0F 8C disp32	JL disp32 (JL/JNGE)
*01 ea	ADD Ed, reg32	*0F 8D disp32	JNL disp32 (JNL/JGE)
02 ea	ADD reg8, Eb	*0F 8E disp32	JLE disp32 (JLE/JNG)
*03 ea	ADD reg32, Ed	*0F 8F disp32	JNLE disp32 (JNLE/JGE)
04 data8	ADD AL, data8	0F 90 ea	SETO Eb
*05 data32	ADD EAX, data32	0F 91 ea	SETNO Eb
*06	PUSH ES	0F 92 ea	SETB Eb (SETB/SETNAE)
*07	POP ES	0F 93 ea	SETNB Eb (SETNB/SETAE)
08 ea	OR Eb, reg8	0F 94 ea	SETZ Eb (SETZ/SETE)
*09 ea	OR Ed, reg32	0F 95 ea	SETNZ Eb (SETNZ/SETNE)
0A ea	OR reg8, Eb	0F 96 ea	SETBE Eb (SETBE/SETNA)
*0B ea	OR reg32, Ed	0F 97 ea	SETNBE Eb (SETNBE/SETA)
0C data8	OR AL, data8	0F 98 ea	SETS Eb
*0D data32	OR EAX, data32	0F 99 ea	SETNS Eb
*0E	PUSH CS	0F 9A ea	SETP Eb (SETP/SETPE)
0F 00 ea/0	SLDT Ew	0F 9B ea	SETNP Eb (SETNP/SETPO)
0F 00 ea/1	STR Ew	0F 9C ea	SETL Eb (SETL/SETNGE)
0F 00 ea/2	LLDT Ew	0F 9D ea	SETNL Eb (SETNL/SETGE)
0F 00 ea/3	LTR Ew	0F 9E ea	SETLE Eb (SETLE/SETNG)
0F 00 ea/4	VERR Ew	0F 9F ea	SETNLE Eb (SETNLE/SETGE)
0F 00 ea/5	VERW Ew		
0F 01 ea/0	SGDT Ea	*0F A0	PUSH FS
0F 01 ea/1	SIDT Ea	*0F A1	POP FS
0F 01 ea/2	LGDT Ea	*0F A3 ea	BT Ed, reg32
0F 01 ea/3	LIDT Ea	*0F A4 ea data8	SHLD Ed, reg32, data8
0F 01 ea/4	SMSW Ew	*0F A5 ea	SHLD Ed, reg32, CL
0F 01 ea/6	LMSW Ew	*0F A8	PUSH GS
*0F 02 ea	LAR reg32, Ew	*0F A9	POP GS
*0F 03 ea	LSL reg32, Ew	*0F AB ea	BTS Ed, reg32
0F 06	CLTS	*0F AC ea data8	SHRD Ed, reg32, data8
0F 20 —/n/reg	MOV CRn, reg32	*0F AD ea	SHRD Ed, reg32, CL
0F 21 —/n/reg	MOV DRn, reg32	*0F AF ea	IMUL reg32, Ed
0F 22 —/n/reg	MOV reg32, CRn	*0F B2 ea	LSS reg32, Ea
0F 23 —/n/reg	MOV reg32, DRn	*0F B3 ea	BTR Ed, reg32
0F 24 —/n/reg	MOV TRn, reg32	*0F B4 ea	LFS reg32, Ea
0F 26 —/n/reg	MOV reg32, TRn	*0F B5 ea	LGS reg32, Ea
*0F 80 disp32	JO disp32	*0F B6 ea	MOVZX reg32, Eb
*0F 81 disp32	JNO disp32	*0F B7 ea	MOVZX reg32, Ew
*0F 82 disp32	JB disp32 (JB/JNAE)	*0F BA ea/4 data8	BT Ed, data8
*0F 83 disp32	JNB disp32 (JNB/JAE)	*0F BA ea/5 data8	BTS Ed, data8
*0F 84 disp32	JZ disp32 (JZ/JE)	*0F BA ea/6 data8	BTR Ed, data8
*0F 85 disp32	JNZ disp32 (JNZ/JNE)	*0F BA ea/7 data8	BTC Ed, data8
*0F 86 disp32	JBE disp32 (JBE/JNA)	*0F BB ea	BTC Ed, reg32
*0F 87 disp32	JNBE disp32 (JNBE/ JA)	*0F BC ea	BSF reg32, Ed
*0F 88 disp32	JS disp32	*0F BD ea	BSR reg32, Ed
*0F 89 disp32	JNS disp32	*0F BE ea	MOVSX reg32, Eb
*0F 8A disp32	JP disp32 (JP/JPE)	10 ea	MOVSX reg32, Ew
*0F 8B disp32	JNP disp32 (JNP/JPO)	*11 ea	ADC Eb, reg8
			ADC Ed, reg32

(continued)

Instruction Disassembly Table. *continued*

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
12 ea	ADC reg8, Eb	*41	INC ECX
*13 ea	ADC reg32, Ed	*42	INC EDX
14 data8	ADC AL, data8	*43	INC EBX
*15 data32	ADC EAX, data32	*44	INC ESP
*16	PUSH SS	*45	INC EBP
*17	POP SS	*46	INC ESI
18 ea	SBB Eb, reg8	*47	INC EDI
*19 ea	SBB Ed, reg32	*48	DEC EAX
1A ea	SBB reg8, Eb	*49	DEC ECX
*1B ea	SBB reg32, Ed	*4A	DEC EDX
1C data8	SBB AL, data8	*4B	DEC EBX
*1D data32	SBB EAX, data32	*4C	DEC ESP
*1E	PUSH DS	*4D	DEC EBP
*1F	POP DS	*4E	DEC ESI
20 ea	AND Eb, reg8	*4F	DEC EDI
*21 ea	AND Ed, reg32	*50	PUSH EAX
22 ea	AND reg8, Eb	*51	PUSH ECX
*23 ea	AND reg32, Ed	*52	PUSH EDX
24 data8	AND AL, data8	*53	PUSH EBX
*25 data32	AND EAX, data32	*54	PUSH ESP
26	ES:	*55	PUSH EBP
27	DAA	*56	PUSH ESI
28 ea	SUB Eb, reg8	*57	PUSH EDI
*29 ea	SUB Ed, reg32	*58	POP EAX
2A ea	SUB reg8, Eb	*59	POP ECX
*2B ea	SUB reg32, Ed	*5A	POP EDX
2C data8	SUB AL, data8	*5B	POP EBX
*2D data32	SUB EAX, data32	*5C	POP ESP
2E	CS:	*5D	POP EBP
2F	DAS	*5E	POP ESI
30 ea	XOR Eb, reg8	*5F	POP EDI
*31 ea	XOR Ed, reg32	*60	PUSHAD
32 ea	XOR reg8, Eb	*61	POPAD
*33 ea	XOR reg32, Ed	*62 ea	BOUND reg32, Ea
34 data8	XOR AL, data8	63 ea	ARPL Ew, reg16
*35 data32	XOR EAX, data32	64	FS:
36	SS:	65	GS:
37	AAA	66	OPSIZE:
38 ea	CMP Eb, reg8	67	ADRSIZE:
*39 ea	CMP Ed, reg32	*68 data 32	PUSH data32
3A ea	CMP reg8, Eb	*69 ea data32	IMUL reg32, Ed, data32
*3B ea	CMP reg32, Ed	6A data8	PUSH data8
3C data8	CMP AL, data8	*6B ea data8	IMUL reg32, Ed, data8
*3D data32	CMP EAX, data32	6C	INSB
3E	DS:	*6D	INSD
3F	AAS	6E	OUTSB
*40	INC EAX	*6F	OUTSD

(continued)

Instruction Disassembly Table. *continued*

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
70 disp8	JO disp8	*8B ea	MOV reg32, Ed
71 disp8	JNO disp8	8C ea/s	MOV Ew, sreg
72 disp8	JB disp8 (JB/JNAE)	*8D ea	LEA reg32, Ea
73 disp8	JNB disp8 (JNB/JAE)	8E ea/s	MOV sreg, Ew
74 disp8	JZ disp8 (JZ/JE)	*8F ea	POP Ed
75 disp8	JNZ disp8 (JNZ/JNE)	90	NOP
76 disp8	JBE disp8 (JBE/JNA)	*91	XCHG EAX, ECX
77 disp8	JNBE disp8 (JNBE/JA)	*92	XCHG EAX, EDX
78 disp8	JS disp8	*93	XCHG EAX, EBX
79 disp8	JNS disp8	*94	XCHG EAX, ESP
7A disp8	JP disp8 (JP/JPE)	*95	XCHG EAX, EBP
7B disp8	JNP disp8 (JNP/JPO)	*96	XCHG EAX, ESI
7C disp8	JL disp8 (JL/JNGE)	*97	XCHG EAX, EDI
7D disp8	JNL disp8 (JNL/JGE)	*98	CBW / CWDE
7E disp8	JLE disp8 (JLE/JNG)	99	CWD
7F disp8	JNLE disp8 (JNLE/JGE)	9A offset32	CALL offset32
80 ea/0 data8	ADD Eb, data8	9B	WAIT
80 ea/1 data8	OR Eb, data8	*9C	PUSHFD
80 ea/2 data8	ADC Eb, data8	*9D	POPFD
80 ea/3 data8	SBB Eb, data8	9E	SAHF
80 ea/4 data8	AND Eb, data8	9F	LAHF
80 ea/5 data8	SUB Eb, data8	A0 disp	MOV AL, [disp]
80 ea/6 data8	XOR Eb, data8	*A1 disp	MOV EAX, [disp]
80 ea/7 data8	CMP Eb, data8	A2 disp	MOV [disp], AL
*81 ea/0 data32	ADD Ed, data32	*A3 disp	MOV [disp], EAX
*81 ea/1 data32	OR Ed, data32	A4	MOVSB
*81 ea/2 data32	ADC Ed, data32	*A5	MOVSD
*81 ea/3 data32	SBB Ed, data32	A6	CMPSB
*81 ea/4 data32	AND Ed, data32	*A7	CMPSD
*81 ea/5 data32	SUB Ed, data32	A8 data8	TEST AL, data8
*81 ea/6 data32	XOR Ed, data32	*A9 data32	TEST EAX, data32
*81 ea/7 data32	CMP Ed, data32	AA	STOSB
*83 ea/0 data8	ADD Ed, data8	*AB	STOSD
*83 ea/1 data8	OR Ed, data8	AC	LODSB
*83 ea/2 data8	ADC Ed, data8	*AD	LODSD
*83 ea/3 data8	SBB Ed, data8	AE	SCASB
*83 ea/4 data8	AND Ed, data8	*AF	SCASD
*83 ea/5 data8	SUB Ed, data8	B0 data8	MOV AL, data8
*83 ea/6 data8	XOR Ed, data8	B1 data8	MOV CL, data8
*83 ea/7 data8	CMP Ed, data8	B2 data8	MOV DL, data8
84 ea	TEST Eb, reg8	B3 data8	MOV BL, data8
*85 ea	TEST Ed, reg32	B4 data8	MOV AH, data8
86 ea	XCHG Eb, reg8	B5 data8	MOV CH, data8
*87 ea	XCHG Ed, reg32	B6 data8	MOV DH, data8
88 ea	MOV Eb, reg8	B7 data8	MOV BH, data8
*89 ea	MOV Ed, reg32	*B8 data32	MOV EAX, data32
8A ea	MOV reg8, Eb	*B9 data32	MOV ECX, data32

(continued)

Instruction Disassembly Table. *continued*

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
*BA data32	MOV EDX, data32	*D1 ea/7	SAR Ed, 1
*BB data32	MOV EBX, data32	D2 ea/0	ROL Eb, CL
*BC data32	MOV ESP, data32	D2 ea/1	ROR Eb, CL
*BD data32	MOV EBP, data32	D2 ea/2	RCL Eb, CL
*BE data32	MOV ESI, data32	D2 ea/3	RCR Eb, CL
*BF data32	MOV EDI, data32	D2 ea/4	SHL Eb, CL
C0 ea/0 data8	ROL Eb, data8	D2 ea/5	SHR Eb, CL
C0 ea/1 data8	ROR Eb, data8	D2 ea/7	SAR Eb, CL
C0 ea/2 data8	RCL Eb, data8	*D3 ea/0	ROL Ed, CL
C0 ea/3 data8	RCR Eb, data8	*D3 ea/1	ROR Ed, CL
C0 ea/4 data8	SHL Eb, data8	*D3 ea/2	RCL Ed, CL
C0 ea/5 data8	SHR Eb, data8	*D3 ea/3	RCR Ed, CL
C0 ea/7 data8	SAR Eb, data8	*D3 ea/4	SHL Ed, CL
*C1 ea/0 data8	ROL Ed, data8	*D3 ea/5	SHR Ed, CL
*C1 ea/1 data8	ROR Ed, data8	*D3 ea/7	SAR Ed, CL
*C1 ea/2 data8	RCL Ed, data8	D4	AAM
*C1 ea/3 data8	RCR Ed, data8	D5	AAD
*C1 ea/4 data8	SHL Ed, data8	D7	XLAT
*C1 ea/5 data8	SHR Ed, data8	D8	ESC 0 (NDP)
*C1 ea/7 data8	SAR Ed, data8	D9	ESC 1 (NDP)
C2 data16	RET data16	DA	ESC 2 (NDP)
C3	RET	DB	ESC 3 (NDP)
*C4 ea	LES reg32, Ed	DC	ESC 4 (NDP)
*C5 ea	LDS reg32, Ed	DD	ESC 5 (NDP)
C6 ea data8	MOV reg8, data8	DE	ESC 6 (NDP)
*C7 ea data32	MOV reg32, data32	DF	ESC 7 (NDP)
C8 data16 data8	ENTER data16, data8	E0 disp8	LOOPNE disp8 (LOOPNE/LOOPNZ)
C9	LEAVE		
CA data16	RETF data16	E1 disp8	LOOPE disp8 (LOOPE/LOOPZ)
CB	RETF		
CC	INT 3	E2 disp8	LOOP disp8
CD data8	INT data8	E3 disp8	JCXZ disp8
CE	INTO	E4 data8	IN AL, data8
CF	IRET	*E5 data8	IN EAX, data8
D0 ea/0	ROL Eb, 1	E6 data8	OUT data8, AL
D0 ea/1	ROR Eb, 1	*E7 data8	OUT data8, EAX
D0 ea/2	RCL Eb, 1	*E8 ea32	CALL ea32
D0 ea/3	RCR Eb, 1	E9 disp32	JMP disp32
D0 ea/4	SHL Eb, 1	*EA ea48	JMP FAR ea48
D0 ea/5	SHR Eb, 1	EB disp8	JMP disp8
D0 ea/7	SAR Eb, 1	EC	IN AL, DX
*D1 ea/0	ROL Ed, 1	*ED	IN EAX, DX
*D1 ea/1	ROR Ed, 1	EE	OUT DX, AL
*D1 ea/2	RCL Ed, 1	*EF	OUT DX, EAX
*D1 ea/3	RCR Ed, 1	F0	LOCK
*D1 ea/4	SHL Ed, 1	F2	REPNE/REPZ
*D1 ea/5	SHR Ed, 1	F3	REP/REPE/REPZ

(continued)

Instruction Disassembly Table. *continued*

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
F4	HLT	F8	CLC
F5	CMC	F9	STC
F6 ea/0 data8	TEST Eb, data8	FA	CLI
F6 ea/2	NOT Eb	FB	STI
F6 ea/3	NEG Eb	FC	CLD
F6 ea/4	MUL AL, Eb	FD	STD
F6 ea/5	IMUL AL, Eb	FE ea/0	INC Eb
F6 ea/6	DIV AL, Eb	FE ea/1	DEC Eb
F6 ea/7	IDIV AL, Eb	*FF ea/0	INC Ed
*F7 ea/0 data32	TEST Ed, data32	*FF ea/1	DEC Ed
*F7 ea/2	NOT Ed	*FF ea/2	CALL Ed
*F7 ea/3	NEG Ed	*FF ea/3	CALL FAR ea
*F7 ea/4	MUL EAX, Ed	FF ea/4	JMP Ed
*F7 ea/5	IMUL EAX, Ed	*FF ea/5	JMP FAR ea
*F7 ea/6	DIV EAX, Ed	*FF ea/6	PUSH Ed
*F7 ea/7	IDIV EAX, Ed		

80387 Extensions (NDP Escapes)

Instruction Bytes	Operation	Instruction Bytes	Operation
D8 ea/0	FADD Real32	D9 D0	FNOP
D8 ea/1	FMUL Real32	D9 E0	FCHS
D8 ea/2	FCOM Real32	D9 E1	FABS
D8 ea/3	FCOMP Real32	D9 E4	FTST
D8 ea/4	FSUB Real32	D9 E5	FXAM
D8 ea/5	FSUBR Real32	D9 E8	FLD1
D8 ea/6	FDIV Real32	D9 E9	FLDL2T
D8 ea/7	FDIVR Real32	D9 EA	FLDL2E
D8 C0+i	FADD ST, ST(i)	D9 EB	FLDPI
D8 C8+i	FMUL ST, ST(i)	D9 EC	FLDG2
D8 D0+i	FCOM ST, ST(i)	D9 ED	FLDN2
D8 D8+i	FCOMP ST, ST(i)	D9 EE	FLDZ
D8 E0+i	FSUB ST, ST(i)	D9 F0	F2XM1
D8 E8+i	FSUBR ST, ST(i)	D9 F1	FYL2X
D8 F0+i	FDIV ST, ST(i)	D9 F2	FPTAN
D8 F8+i	FDIVR ST, ST(i)	D9 F3	FPATAN
D9 ea/0	FLD Real32	D9 F4	FXTRACT
D9 ea/2	FST Real32	D9 F5	FPREM1
D9 ea/3	FSTP Real32	D9 F6	FDECSTP
D9 ea/4	FLDENV Ea	D9 F7	FINCSTP
D9 ea/5	FLDCW Ew	D9 F8	FPREM
D9 ea/6	FSTENV Ea	D9 F9	FYL2XP1
D9 ea/7	FSTCW Ew	D9 FA	FSQRT
D9 C0+i	FLD ST(i)	D9 FB	FSINCOS
D9 C8+i	FXCH ST(i)	D9 FC	FRNDINT

(continued)

80387 Extensions (NDP Escapes). *continued*

<i>Instruction Bytes</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Instruction Bytes</i>	<i>Operation</i>
D9 FD	FSCALE	DD ea/2	FST Real64
D9 FE	FSIN	DD ea/3	FSTP Real64
D9 FF	FCOS	DD ea/4	FRSTOR Ea
DA ea/0	FIADD Int16	DD ea/6	FSAVE Ea
DA ea/1	FIMUL Int16	DD ea/7	FSTSW Ew
DA ea/2	FICOM Int16	DD C0+i	FFREE ST(i)
DA ea/3	FICOMP Int16	DD D0+i	FST ST(i)
DA ea/4	FISUB Int16	DD D8+i	FSTP ST(i)
DA ea/5	FISUBR Int16	DD E0+i	FUCOM ST(i)
DA ea/6	FIDIV Int16	DD E8+i	FUCOMP ST(i)
DA ea/7	FIDIVR Int16	DE ea/0	FIADD Int32
DA E9	FUCOMPP	DE ea/1	FIMUL Int32
DB ea/0	FILD Int16	DE ea/2	FICOM Int32
DB ea/2	FIST Int16	DE ea/3	FICOMP Int32
DB ea/3	FISTP Int16	DE ea/4	FISUB Int32
DB ea/4	FLD Real80	DE ea/5	FISUBR Int32
DB ea/6	FSTP Real80	DE ea/6	FIDIV Int32
DB E2	FCLEX	DE ea/7	FIDIVR Int32
DB E3	FINIT	DE C0+i	FADDP ST(i), ST
DC ea/0	FADD Real64	DE C8+i	FMULP ST(i), ST
DC ea/1	FMUL Real64	DE D9	FCOMPP
DC ea/2	FCOM Real64	DE E0+i	FSUBRP ST(i), ST
DC ea/3	FCOMP Real64	DE E8+i	FSUBP ST(i), ST
DC ea/4	FSUB Real64	DE F0+i	FDIVRP ST(i), ST
DC ea/5	FSUBR Real64	DE F8+i	FDIVP ST(i), ST
DC ea/6	FDIV Real64	DF ea/0	FILD Int32
DC ea/7	FIDIVR Real64	DF ea/2	FIST Int32
DC C0+i	FADD ST(i), ST	DF ea/3	FISTP Int32
DC C8+i	FMUL ST(i), ST	DF ea/4	FBLD Bcd80
DC E0+i	FSUBR ST(i), ST	DF ea/5	FILD Int64
DC E8+i	FSUB ST(i), ST	DF ea/6	FBSTP Bcd80
DC F0+i	FIDIVR ST(i), ST	DF ea/7	FISTP Int64
DC F8+i	FDIV ST(i), ST	DF E0	FSTSW AX
DD ea/0	FLD Real64		

Appendix F

8086-FAMILY PROCESSOR DIFFERENCES

Although the 8086, 80286, and 80386 are object-code compatible, minor differences have arisen during the evolution of this microprocessor family. This appendix describes these differences.

Real-Mode Differences Between the 8086 and the 80386

The 8086 processor does not generate exceptions 6, 8–13, and 16.

Instructions execute more rapidly on the 80386; in most cases, address decode time does not exist.

On the 80386, the divide fault (INT 0) leaves the saved CS:EIP pointing to the faulting instruction. On the 8086, the value of CS:IP on the stack points to the instruction after the one that caused the fault.

Opcodes that were not explicitly defined on the 8086 are interpreted as new instructions or cause the undefined opcode fault (INT 6) when executed on the 80386.

When the PUSH SP instruction is executed, the value on the stack of the 80386 is the preincremented value, where the value pushed on the 8086 is the postincremented value of SP. If it is necessary to recreate the same stack value, use the following sequence of instructions on the 80386 in place of PUSH SP.

```
PUSH    BP
MOV     BP, SP
XCHG   BP, [BP]
```

The count value for shift and rotate instructions is taken modulo 32 in the 80386. The full value (up to 255) is used on the 8086, which can result in long instruction execution times.

An instruction (including prefixes) cannot exceed 15 bytes on the 80386. If it does, a general protection fault occurs. This does not occur under normal circumstances but might occur if you use multiple redundant prefixes. The 8086 has no such restrictions.

Operands cannot extend across the segment bounds on the 80386. If, for example, an instruction refers to a 16-bit operand at offset 65535, a general protection fault occurs. If the stack pointer is set to low memory (offset 2) and a 32-bit value is pushed, a stack fault occurs. In the 8086, addresses wrap around the segment boundary and are continuous from 65535 to 0. Instruction execution behaves like an operand fetch.

On the 80386, you can use the LOCK instruction only with certain instructions; otherwise, an undefined opcode fault occurs. See Chapter 8 for a list of the legal instructions. The 8086 has no such restrictions.

Sometimes the 8086 hangs while single-stepping. The 80386 does not hang because the interrupt priorities on the 80386 are slightly different. This prevents a single-step trap from occurring until the handler returns if a hardware interrupt is invoked.

The 8086 generates a divide fault if the quotient of an IDIV instruction is the largest possible negative number. The 80386 generates the correct result. See the earlier discussion of the divide fault in this appendix.

When the content of the FLAGS register is pushed onto the stack, bits 12–15 are always 1s on the 8086. These bits represent new flags on the 80386.

The NMI interrupt masks all subsequent NMIs on the 80386 until an IRET is executed. NMIs are not masked on the 8086.

The 80386 uses INT 16 as the coprocessor error vector. On the 8086, the system hardware must be programmed to generate an interrupt vector, and it can be any vector.

When an NDP exception occurs on an 80386, the saved CS:EIP points to the faulting instruction, including any prefixes that might be part of the instruction. On the 8086, the saved CS:IP points only to the ESC portion of the faulting NDP instruction.

Additional interrupts can occur on the 80386 if the program contains undetected bugs, such as the use of unimplemented opcodes or addressing beyond segment boundaries.

The 8086 is limited to 1 MB of address space by having 20 physical hardware address lines. Using selectors such as FFFFH can result in linear addresses beyond 1 MB, but because there are only 20 address lines, the addresses wrap around to 0.

Because there are 32 address lines on the 80386, addresses greater than 1 MB can be generated in real mode (up to 10FFEFH). If system software depends on the ability to wrap around to 0 after 1 MB, hardware must be added to the system to force address line 21 to 0 in real mode.

Virtual 8086-Mode Differences Between the 8086 and the 80386

All the previously listed differences also apply to V86 mode on the 80386 in comparison to real mode on the 8086. Following are some additional differences.

I/O instructions in V86 mode are allowed only if the I/O permission bitmap for the V86 mode task is set up.

All exceptions (hardware and software interrupts) vector to the protected-mode IDT entries rather than through the real-mode interrupt mechanism. The protected-mode handlers must simulate the real-mode vector process when appropriate.

Differences Between the 80286 and the 80386

As implemented on the 80286, the LOCK prefix caused memory to be locked during the prefixed instruction. On the 80386, only the memory accessed by the prefixed instruction is locked.

On RESET, any of the registers which contained undefined values on the 80286 may contain different values on the 80386.

Differences Between the 8087 and the 80387

Errors are signalled via a dedicated hardware pin on the 80387 instead of the standard CPU interrupt mechanism. The 80386 responds to coprocessor errors via interrupts 7, 9, and 16 instead of an external hardware interrupt.

The format of the error information in the 80387 environment varies depending on whether the processor is in real mode or in protected mode. The 8087 only supports real-mode information.

The instructions FENI/FDISI are no-ops on the 80387.

The 8087 does not perform automatic normalization of denormalized reals. Instead, it signals a denormal exception and relies on the application to perform this operation. The 80387 will normalize these values and might execute faster if the denormal exception is masked when running 8087 programs.

The 8087 requires explicit WAIT instructions before each floating-point instruction to synchronize with the 8086. The 80386 and the 80387 perform automatic synchronization. The WAIT instructions are unnecessary, but they will not cause the program to operate incorrectly.

Differences Between the 80287 and the 80387

The FSETPM instruction is treated as a no-op on the 80387.

The 80287 supports both affine and projective closure. Only affine closure is supported on the 80387. Programs that rely on projective closure may generate different results on the 80387 than they did on the 80287.

Index

A

AAA (ASCII Adjust After Addition) 149
AAD (ASCII Adjust Before Division) 150
AAM (ASCII Adjust After Multiplication) 151
AAS (ASCII Adjust After Subtraction) 152
abort (exception class)
 coprocessor segment overrun (INT 9) 116
 defined 111–12
 double fault (INT 8) 115
accessed (A) bit 52
access rights 51–52, 87, 137
accumulator 2, 66, 75, 83
ADC (Add with Carry) 153
ADD (Integer Addition) 154
addresses
 effective 71, 83
 physical 18, 45, 125–27, 129, 132, 137
 segment/offset 46–47
 virtual 45–47, 102, 125–27
addressing modes. *See* instruction operands
address translation
 virtual to linear 46–47
 virtual to physical 125–26
affine closure 39
AH register 22
alias segments 103, 121
AL register 22
AND (Boolean AND) 155
architecture
 evolution of 1–11
 microarchitecture 16–18
arithmetic instructions
 floating-point 89–90
 integer 74–75
arithmetic shifts 78
ARPL (Adjust RPL) 156–57
array indexing. *See* scaling
ASCII instructions 76
ASCII numeric format 21
ASCII table 383
auxiliary carry flag (AF) 25
available (AVL) bit 52
AX register 22

B

back link. *See* link field
base address
 of the GDT 27
 of the IDT 27
 of a segment 46–49, 53, 98–99, 136
based addressing
 alone 68–69
 plus displacement 69
 plus displacement plus index 71
base pointer (EBP) register 3–4, 69
base registers 68–71
BCD instructions
 floating-point 89
 integer 76
BCD numeric format 21, 30, 34
BH register 22
bias, floating-point exponent 31–33
big (B) bit 52
binary fractions 31–33, 38
bit instructions 76–77
bit strings 18–19, 76–77
BL register 22
Boolean instructions 76
BOUND (Check Array Boundaries) 158
bounds check fault (INT 5) 111, 114
BP register 3–4, 22
branch instructions 81–83
breakpoint registers 121–24
breakpoint trap 114
BSF (Bit Scan Forward) 160–61
BSR (Bit Scan Reverse) 162
BT (Bit Test) 164–65
BTC (Bit Test and Complement) 166–67
BTR (Bit Test and Reset) 168–69
BTS (Bit Test and Set) 170–71
Bus Interface Unit (BIU) 17
bus lock (LOCK) 79, 86, 130
busy (B) bit 106
busy TSS 104, 108
BX register 22

C

cache, page table 18, 129–30
CALL (Procedure Calls) 172–74
call gate 96–97, 104, 121
carry flag (CF) 26
CBW (Convert Byte to Word) 175
CDQ (Convert Doubleword to Quadword) 176
CH register 22
CLC (Clear Carry Flag) 177
CLD (Clear Direction Flag) 178
CLI (Clear Interrupt Flag) 179
CL register 22
CLTS (Clear Task Switched Bit) 180
CMC (Complement Carry Flag) 181
CMP (Compare Integers) 182–83
CMPS (Compare String) 184–85
code segments 51–52
compatibility with 8086 441–43
compatibility with 80286 443
condition codes 80387 38–40
EFLAGS register 23–26, 80, 82
Jcc (Jump if *Condition*) 82
SETcc (Set Byte on *Condition*) 79–80
conforming segments 51
control instructions 92
control registers (CR0–CR3) 27–29, 79, 107, 118, 128
control transfer instructions 81–82
control word (CW) register 39
coprocessor
 emulation of 28
 environment 91
 instructions 88–92
 introduction of 6–7
 numeric formats 30–34
 registers 35
coprocessor error fault (INT 16) 119
coprocessor not available fault (INT 7) 115
coprocessor segment overrun (INT 9) 116

CS segment register 5, 26, 45, 51, 94, 136–37
 current privilege level (CPL) 24, 51, 94–95, 130
 CWD (Convert Word to Doubleword) 186
 CWDE (Convert Word to Doubleword Extended) 187
 CX register 4, 22

D
 DAA (Decimal Adjust AL After Addition) 188
 DAS (Decimal Adjust AL After Subtraction) 189
 data segments 51–52
 data transfer instructions 79–80
 data types
 ASCII 21
 BCD 21, 34
 bit strings 18–19
 bytes 19
 doublewords (dwords) 20
 integers 19–20
 long reals (double-precision) 31–34
 quadwords (qwords) 20
 short reals (single-precision) 31–32
 temp reals (extended-precision) 31, 33
 words 20
 debug breakpoints 114, 120–24
 debug exception (INT 1) 109, 114
 debug registers 29, 121–24
 DEC (Decrement) 190
 decimal instructions 76
 default (D) bit 52, 137–38
 denormal exception 38
 denormal floating-point numbers 33
 denormal operand mask (DM) bit 40
 descriptor cache 18, 26, 36. *See also* shadow registers
 descriptor formats 46–54, 104–5
 descriptor privilege level (DPL) 94–95
 descriptor tables 54, 100–102
 descriptor type (TYPE) field 51, 104
 DH register 22
 direct addressing 67–68
 direction flag (DF) 65, 83

directory, page table 118, 127–31
 DI register 22
 dirty (D) bit 127
 disable interrupts (CLI) 25, 143–44
 displacement 64, 67, 69
 DIV (Unsigned Division) 191
 divide fault
 80386 (INT 0) 114
 80387 (ZE exception) 38
 DL register 22
 double fault (INT 8) 111, 115
 double-precision format (long real) 31–34
 double shift 78
 doublewords (dwords) 20
 DS segment register 5, 45, 83
 dword count field 97
 dwords 20
 DX register 22

E
 EAX register 22
 EBP register 22, 68, 71
 EBX register 22
 ECX register 22, 82, 83, 85
 EDI register 22, 83
 EDX register 22
 EFLAGS register 23–26, 82
 emulate math coprocessor (EM) bit 28, 115
 enable interrupts (STI) 25, 143–44
 ENTER (Enter New Stack Frame) 193
 equal (branch condition) 82
 error codes 113–19
 ERROR\ pin 119
 error pointer registers 41–42, 91
 error summary (ES) bit 37
 ES register 5, 83
 ESI register 22, 83
 ESP register 22, 68
 exception masks 37–38, 40
 exceptions
 80386
 aborts 111
 protected-mode handling 110–20
 real-mode handling 138–39
 traps 110–11
 virtual 8086-mode (V86-mode) handling 145–46
 80387
 conditions 38–40
 mask bits 37–38, 40

execute-only segments 51–52
 execution unit 17
 expand-down segments 51–53
 exponent, floating-point 31–33
 extended-precision floating point (temp real) 31, 33, 38–39
 extension type (ET) bit 28

F
 FABS (Absolute Value) 309
 FADD (Addition) 310
 FAR CALLS and JMPs 107, 117, 121, 140
 faults. *See* exceptions
 FBBLD (BCD Load) 312
 FBSTP (BCD Store and Pop) 313
 FCHS (Change Sign) 314
 FCLEX (Clear Exceptions) 315
 FCOM (Compare) 316–17
 FCOS (Cosine) 318
 FDECSTP (Decrement Stack Pointer) 319
 FDIV (Division) 320–21
 FDIVR (Division Reversed) 322–23
 FFREE (Free NDP Register) 324
 FIADD (Integer Addition) 325
 FICOM (Integer Compare) 326
 FIDIV (Integer Division) 327
 FIDIVR (Integer Division Reversed) 328
 FILD (Integer Load) 329
 FIMUL (Integer Multiplication) 330
 FINCSTP (Increment Stack Pointer) 331
 FINIT (Initialize NDP) 332
 FIST (Integer Store) 333
 FISUB (Integer Subtraction) 334
 FISUBR (Integer Subtraction Reversed) 335
 flag register (EFLAGS) 23–26, 82
 FLD (Load Real) 336
 FLD *const* (Load Constant) 337
 FLDCW (Load Control Word) 338
 FLDENV (Load Environment) 339
 floating-point condition codes 38–40
 floating-point environment 91
 floating-point exceptions 37–40, 115, 119
 floating-point formats 31–33
 floating-point instruction set 308
 FMUL (Multiplication) 340–41
 FNOP (No Operation) 342

FPATAN (Partial Arctangent) 343
 FPREM (Partial Remainder) 344–45
 FPREM1 (IEEE Partial Remainder) 346–47
 FPTAN (Partial Tangent) 348
 fraction, binary 31–33, 38
 fragmentation 58, 126
 frame pointer. *See* stack frame
 FRNDINT (Round to Integer) 349
 FRSTOR (Restore NDP State) 350–51
 FSAVE (Save NDP state) 352–53
 FSCALE (Scale by 2^n) 354
 FSETPM (Set Protected Mode) 355
 FSIN (Sine) 356
 FSINCOS (Sine and Cosine) 357
 FSQRT (Square Root) 358
 FS segment register 26, 45, 85
 FST (Store Floating Point) 359
 FSTCW (Store Control Word) 360
 FSTENV (Store Environment) 361
 FSTSW (Store Status Word) 362
 FSUB (Subtraction) 363–64
 FSUBR (Subtraction Reversed) 365–66
 FTST (Test for Zero) 367–68
 FUCOM (Unordered Compare) 369–70
 FWAIT (Wait Until Not BUSY) 371
 FXAM (Examine Top of Stack) 372–73
 FXCH (Exchange Stack Elements) 374
 FXTRACT (Extract Floating-Point Components) 375
 FYL2X (Compute $Y \times \log_2 X$) 376
 FYL2XP1 (Compute $Y \times \log_2 (X+1)$) 377
 F2XM1 (Compute $2^x - 1$) 378

G–I

gates 94, 96–98, 104–5, 112–13, 117
 GDTR register 27, 54, 99, 141
 general protection fault (INT 13) 47, 84, 111, 118, 143
 Global Descriptor Table (GDT) 27, 54, 87, 98–103, 114
 global enable (G0–G3) bits 123
 granularity (G) bit 49, 131, 142
 greater than (branch condition) 82
 GS segment register 26, 45, 85
 HLT (Halt) 87, 195

IDIV (Integer (Signed) Division) 196–97
 IDTR register 27, 54, 98, 136, 138, 145
 IEEE-754 floating-point format 7, 31
 immediate operands 66
 implicit operands 65
 IMUL (Integer (Signed) Multiplication) 198
 IN (Input from I/O Port) 199–200
 INC (Increment) 201
 index addressing
 with base plus displacement 71
 plus displacement 69–71
 index field 99, 101
 infinity 33, 39
 infinity control bit 39
 initial processor state 135–36
 input
 instruction 66–67, 85
 protection checks 109, 143
 INS (Input String from I/O Port) 202–3
 instruction decode unit 17
 instruction disassembly table 433–38
 instruction formats and timings 64, 397
 instruction operands
 immediate 66
 implicit 65
 I/O 66–67
 memory reference (*see* memory reference)
 operands
 register 65
 instruction prefetch queue 17
 instruction prefetch unit 17
 INT (Software Interrupt) 204–5
 integer data format
 80386 19–20
 80387 30
 Interrupt Descriptor Table (IDT) 110–13, 130, 141, 145
 interrupt enable flag (IF) 25
 interrupt gate 96
 interrupts
 disabling/enabling 25, 118, 143–44
 exceptions, faults, and traps 110–21
 gates for 104–5
 hardware 25, 110, 111
 masking 119–20
 in real mode 138–39

Interrupts *continued*
 software 25, 81, 111, 121, 145
 in virtual 8086 mode 145–46
 INTO (Interrupt on Overflow) 206
 invalid opcode fault (INT 6) 114–15
 invalid operation exception (IE) bit 39
 invalid TSS fault (INT 10) 116–17
 I/O
 instructions 66–67, 85
 operands 66–67
 permission bitmap 109–10, 143
 permission checks 109, 143
 in protected mode 109
 in virtual 8086 mode 143
 I/O privilege level (IOPL) 24, 84, 109, 143–45
 IRET (Interrupt Return) 207

J–M

Jcc (Jump if Condition) 208–9
 JMP (Near, Far Jump) 210–11
 LAHF (Load AH with Flags) 212
 LAR (Load Access Rights) 213–14
 LCS (Load CS) 229
 LDS (Load DS) 229
 LDTR register 27, 107, 109, 117
 LEA (Load Effective Address) 215
 LEAVE (Leave Current Stack Frame) 216
 LES (Load ES) 229
 less than (branch condition) 82
 LFS (Load FS) 229
 LGDT (Load GDT Register) 217
 LGS (Load GS) 229
 LIDT (Load IDT Register) 218
 limit 49–50, 136
 linear addresses 18, 27, 44–47, 121, 127–29
 link field 107, 108
 LLDT (Load LDT Register) 219
 LMSW (Load Machine Status Word) 220
 local descriptor table (LDT) 98, 101–4
 local enable (L0–L3) bits 123
 LOCK (Bus Assert Hardware LOCK\Signal Prefix) 221–22
 LODS (Load String) 223–24
 logical shifts 77–78
 long real format (double-precision) 31–34

LOOPcc (Loop Decrement ECX and Branch) 225–26
 Lseg (Load Segment Register) 229
 LSL (Load Segment Limit) 227–28
 LSS (Load SS) 229
 LTR (Load Task Register) 230
 machine status word (MSW) 28, 141
 mask bits 37–38
 math present (MP) bit 28, 115
 memory read/write breakpoints 120–24
 memory reference operands based 68–69
 based plus displacement 69
 based plus index plus displacement 71
 direct 67–68
 index plus displacement 69–71
 stack 72–74
 memory segments 5–6, 43–53
 microarchitecture 16–18
 modes protected 7–8, 28, 93–124, 140–41
 real 7, 135–39, 142
 transitions between 28, 142
 virtual 8086 10, 131–32, 142–46
 MOV (Move Data/Selector/Special) 231–33
 MOVS (Move String) 234–35
 MOVSS (Move with Sign Extension) 236
 MOVZX (Move with Zero Extension) 237
 MUL (Unsigned Multiplication) 238–39
 multitasking support 28, 44, 55, 98, 105–9

N–P

NaN (Not a Number) 33–34
 native mode 86, 135, 138
 NEG (Negate Integer) 240
 negative number formats floating-point 31
 integer 19–20
 nested task (NT) flag 24, 108
 Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) 25, 110, 120, 144
 NOP (No Operation) 241

NOT (Boolean Complement) 242
 not present fault (INT 11) 117
 null selector 101–2, 146
 numeric formats BCD 21, 30, 34
 floating-point 31–33
 integer 19–20
 offset 46–47
 opcodes, table of 385–92
 OR (Boolean OR) 243
 OUT (Output to Port) 244–45
 output instruction 66–67, 85
 privilege checking 109, 143
 OUTS (Output String) 246–47
 overflow exception (OE) bit 38
 overflow flag (OF) 24, 80, 82, 111, 114
 overflow trap (INT 4) 111, 114
 override prefixes address 85–86, 137–38
 operand size 86, 137–39
 segment 45, 67, 85–86, 117–18
 Page Directory Entry (PDE) 128, 130
 page enable (PG) bit 28, 127, 142
 page fault (INT 14) 118–19, 127, 131
 page granularity (G) bit 49–50
 Page Table Entry (PTE) 127–31
 paging 125–31, 143
 paging unit 18
 parity flag (PF) 26, 80, 82
 permission checks I/O 109, 143
 between privilege rings 96–101
 segment access 93–96
 physical addresses 18, 45, 125–27, 129, 132, 137
 pointer registers 3, 52, 67–73
 pointers 60, 83–84
 POP (Pop Segment Register/Value Off Stack) 248–49
 POPA (Pop All General Registers 16-bit) 250
 POPAD (Pop All General Registers 32-bit) 251
 POPF (Pop Stack into FLAGS) 252
 POPFD (Pop Stack into EFLAGS) 253
 precision, floating-point 31–33
 precision control (PC) field 39
 precision exception (PE) bit 38
 prefix instructions ADRSIZ 86–87, 137, 138
 LOCK 86, 130, 141
 OPSIZ 86, 137, 138
 repeat 83, 85
 segment override 45, 67, 85–86, 117–18
 present (P) bit in descriptor 51, 117, 137
 in page table 119
 privilege levels current (CPL) 24, 51, 94–95, 130
 descriptor (DPL) 94–95
 paging and privilege 130–31
 rings 94–96
 transitions between 96–101
 projective closure 39
 protected mode introduction to 7–8
 mechanism, 80386 93–124
 switching into/away from 140–42
 protect enable (PE) bit 28, 142
 protection of pages 118–19, 130–31
 of segments 93–96
 PUSH (Push Value onto Stack) 254–55
 PUSHA (Push 16-Bit General Registers) 256
 PUSHAD (Push 32-Bit General Registers) 257
 PUSHF (Push 16-Bit EFLAGS Register) 258
 PUSHFD (Push EFLAGS Register) 259

Q–R

quadwords 20
 quiet NaN 34
 RCL (Rotate Through Carry Left) 260–61
 RCR (Rotate Through Carry Right) 262–63
 readable code segments 51
 read-only data segments 51, 58
 read/write (R/W) bit for debugging 123
 for paging 127, 130
 READY\ 88
 real mode 7, 135–39
 real number formats 31–33

registers
 breakpoint 121–24
 control 27–29, 79, 107, 118, 128
 debug and test 29, 121–24
 floating-point 35
 general 22
 protection 27
 segmentation (*see* segment registers)
 REP/REPE/REPZ/REPNE/REPNZ (Repeat String Prefix) 264
 requested privilege level (RPL) 54, 99–102, 108, 117
 RESET 135–37
 resume flag (RF) 24, 120
 RET (Near Return from Subroutine) 265
 RETF (Far Return from Subroutine) 266
 return
 from interrupt 113, 146
 from subroutine 73
 from task switch 108, 113
 rings, protection 8, 94–96
 ROL (Rotate Left) 267–68
 ROR (Rotate Right) 269–70
 rotate instructions 78
 rounding control (RC) 39–40

S
 SAHF (Store AH in EFLAGS) 271
 SAL (Shift Left Arithmetic) 272–73
 SAR (Shift Right Arithmetic) 274–75
 SBB (Subtraction with Borrow) 276
 scaling 71, 87
 SCAS (Scan String) 277–78
 seg (Segment Override Prefix) 279
 segmentation
 address translation in 43–47
 introduction of 5–6
 protection in 48–53
 segmentation unit 18
 segment override prefix 45, 67, 85–86, 117–18
 segment registers
 description of 26–27
 initialization of 136
 introduction of 5–6
 loading and storing 79, 101, 107, 117, 146
 in virtual addressing 46, 60

selector 46–47, 54–55, 93–94, 100–102, 107
 SETcc (Set Byte on *Condition*) 280–81
 SGDT (Store GDT Register) 282
 shadow registers 108–9, 136–37. *See also* descriptor cache
 shared segments 58–59, 131
 SHL (Shift Left Logical) 283–84
 SHLD (Shift Left Double) 285
 short real (single-precision) format 31–32
 SHR (Shift Right Logical) 286–87
 SHRD (Shift Right Double) 288
 shutdown 116, 144
 SIDT (Store IDT Register) 289
 sign flag (SF) 25, 80, 82
 significand 31–33
 single-precision (short real) format 31–32
 single stepping 120–22, 138
 SI register 22
 SLDT (Store LDT Register) 290
 SMSW (Store Machine Status Word) 291
 software breakpoints 114
 software interrupts 25, 81, 111, 121, 145
 SP register 3–4, 22
 SS segment register 26, 45, 72, 98, 145
 stack fault (INT 12) 52–53, 72, 117–18
 stack fault (SF) bit 37
 stack frame 8, 69, 73
 stack pointer (ESP) register 22, 68
 status word (SW) register 35, 37–39
 STC (Set Carry Flag) 292
 STD (Set Direction Flag) 293
 STI (Set Interrupt Flag) 294
 STOS (Store String) 295–96
 STR (Store Task Register) 297
 string instructions 25, 83, 85
 SUB (Subtraction) 298
 subroutine call 4, 73, 81
 supervisor pages 130–31
 swapping
 pages 126–28, 133–34
 segments 52, 56–60, 117

T–Z
 table indicator (TI) bit 54, 99, 101, 114
 tag word (TW) register 35, 41
 task gate 96, 105, 112–13, 117
 task (TR) register 27, 98, 107
 Task State Segment (TSS) 27, 98–100, 103–10, 116, 117, 121
 task switched (TS) bit 28, 115
 task switching 107–10
 task switch trap (T) bit 121, 123
 temp real (extended-precision) format 31, 33, 38–39
 TEST (Test Bits) 299
 test registers 29, 99
 top-of-stack (TOP) field 37
 translation lookaside buffer (TLB) 18, 108, 129–30, 142
 trap flag (TF) 25, 120–21, 138
 trap gates 96, 104, 112, 117
 traps 110–11, 114, 120–21
 type (TYPE) field 51, 104–6
 undefined opcode fault (INT 6) 114–15
 underflow exception (UE) bit 37, 38
 unmasked exceptions 38
 unsigned comparisons 80, 82
 user-level pages 130–31
 user/supervisor (U/S) bit 119, 130–31
 V86 mode. *See* virtual 8086 mode
 vector table 111, 138–39
 VERR (Verify Read Access) 300–301
 VERW (Verify Write Access) 302–3
 virtual 8086 mode 10, 23, 142–46
 virtual addresses 45–47, 102, 125–27
 virtual memory 45–47, 51, 55–60, 125–27
 virtual mode (VM) bit 23, 143, 146
 WAIT (Wait Until Not Busy) 304
 word count field. *See* dword count field
 words 20
 writable data segments 51
 XCHG (Exchange) 305
 XLATB (Translate Byte) 306
 XOR (Boolean Exclusive OR) 307
 zero divide exception (ZE) bit 38
 zero divide fault (INT 0) 114
 zero flag (ZF) 26, 80, 82

ROSS P. NELSON

Ross Nelson has several years of programming experience, all with Intel microprocessors. After earning his B.S. in computer science from Montana State University, he joined Intel Corporation in 1979. There he worked on the development of the 80286 and was an adviser in the early stages of the 80386 chip's development. He is currently the manager of software engineering at Answer Software, which produces software development tools for the PC and a database line for the Macintosh.

Nelson has written for *Byte* and *Dr. Dobb's Journal*. His article on programming the 80386 was chosen as the lead feature for *Dr. Dobb's Journal* in 1986.

The manuscript for this book was prepared and submitted to Microsoft Press in electronic form. Text files were processed and formatted using Microsoft Word.

Cover design by Hornall Anderson Design Works

Interior text design by Darcie S. Furlan

Illustrations by Becky Geisler-Johnson

Principal typography by Lisa G. Iversen

Text composition by Microsoft Press in Garamond with display in Helvetica Black, using the Magna composition system and the Linotronic 300 laser imagesetter.

By Ross P. Nelson

Here is a clear, comprehensive, and authoritative introduction to the chip that is the foundation of today's popular, high-powered microcomputers. Written for every serious programmer, THE 80386 BOOK includes scores of superb assembly-language examples along with a detailed analysis of the chip itself. Ross Nelson, a former Intel programmer, covers:

- the **CPU**: its organization, registers, and 80287 and 80387 math coprocessors
- the **memory architecture**: linear vs segmented addressing, virtual address space, segment descriptors, selectors, and virtual memory
- the **instruction sets** of the 80386 microprocessor and the 80387 math coprocessor
- the 80386 **protection scheme**: global descriptor and interrupt descriptor tables; selectors; segment and system descriptors; interrupts, traps, and faults; and debug support
- the implementation of a **virtual memory system** through paging
- **compatibility** with previous generations of Intel® microprocessors

Of special importance is the comprehensive, clearly organized instruction set reference that will be a valuable resource for 80386 programmers.

Every assembly-language programmer, microprocessor design engineer, and student of computer architecture will find THE 80386 BOOK an excellent reference.

ISBN 1-55615-138-1



52495

U.S.A.

\$24.95

U.K.

£22 .95

Austral.

\$37.95

[recommended]